ivanti

Neurons for Zero Trust Access Tenant Admin Guide

Copyright Notice

This document is provided strictly as a guide. No guarantees can be provided or expected. This document contains the confidential information and/or proprietary property of Ivanti, Inc. and its affiliates (referred to collectively as "Ivanti") and may not be disclosed or copied without prior written consent of Ivanti.

Ivanti retains the right to make changes to this document or related product specifications and descriptions, at any time, without notice. Ivanti makes no warranty for the use of this document and assumes no responsibility for any errors that can appear in the document nor does it make a commitment to update the information contained herein. For the most current product information, please visit www.lvanti.com.

Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All rights reserved.

Protected by patents, see https://www.ivanti.com/patents.

Contents

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT	. 7
Preface	8
Document conventions	8
Revision History	. 10
About This Guide	.11
What's New	.12
Version 22.7R1.6	12
Version 22.7R1.4	12
Version 22.7R1.3	12
Version 22.7R1.2	13
Version 22.7R1	. 13
Version 22.6R1.2	14
Version 22.6R1	. 15
Version 22.5R1.2	16
Version 22.5R1	. 16
Version 22.4R3	. 17
Version 22.4R1	. 18
Overview of Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access	. 20
Securing a Diverse Application Infrastructure	.21
Hyper-Converged Zero-Trust Access	.22
An Overview of Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access	.23
Deploying and Using nZTA	. 24
Using a Custom Domain	. 26
Deploying Gateways	.27
Using Gateway Groups for High Availability	. 28
Using Controller for Gateway Selection	. 29
Using an Administrator-Deployed Load-Balancer	. 30
Using Gateway Groups in your Secure Access Policies	. 32
Using Network Load Balancer for High Availability in AWS	33
Defining User Authentication	34
Creating User Authentication Methods	35
Using User Authentication Policies	37
Adding Custom Authentication Policies	38
Defining User Authentication Rules and Groups	. 40
Publishing Applications	. 42
Defining Applications and Application Groups	. 43
Defining User Rules and User Rule Groups	45
Creating Device Policies and Device Policy Rules	. 45
Enrolling a User Device	. 50
Existing ICS Users	. 50
First Time Users	. 51
Existing nZTA Users	51
Summary of Steps to Configure Your nZTA Deployment	. 53
Logging in as a Tenant Administrator	. 54

Preparing to Login	55
Logging into the Controller as a Tenant Admin	
Working with the Onboarding Wizard	
Viewing the nZTA Network Overview	60
Changing the UI Theme	61
Setting the Timezone	64
Configuring Session Timeouts	66
Resetting All Filters and Selections	67
Logging out of the Controller	69
Specifying a Custom Domain	70
Introduction	70
Configuring a Custom Domain	72
Checking the Configured Domain	
Using the Insights Menu to Monitor User Activity and Service Usage	80
Introduction	80
Consolidated Landing Page	83
Reviewing Your Network Activity	86
Reviewing User Activity	119
Showing Activity for a Specific User	128
Reviewing Application Usage	139
Showing Usage Data for a Specific Application	155
Viewing Currently Enrolled User Devices	161
Monitoring nZTA Gateway Activity	166
Reviewing Policy Failures	172
Checking the Logs	177
Actionable Insights	192
Reports	195
Viewing Alerts and Notifications	206
Setting Up Secure Access	209
Working with Gateways	210
Introduction	210
Configuring Networks in your Gateway Datacenter	213
Using Dynamic IP Addressing to Profile Client Traffic	215
White-listing Required IP Addresses for your Services	216
Viewing and Monitoring Gateways in the Controller	217
Viewing Gateway Logs	221
Viewing Gateway Tasks	225
Editing Gateway Configuration	226
Troubleshooting Gateway Issues	228
Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability	237
Creating Gateway Selectors	238
Workflow: Creating a Gateway in VMware vSphere	241
Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Amazon Web Services	252
Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Microsoft Azure	263
Workflow: Creating a Gateway in KVM/OpenStack	276
Creating the KVM Gateway Virtual Machine Instance in OpenStack	284

Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Google Cloud Platform	
Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Oracle Cloud Platform	
Upgrading Gateways	414
Checking a Current Gateway Version and Applying an Individual Update	
Rolling Back a Gateway to a Previous Version	
Configuring a Default Gateway for Application Discovery	
Configuring nZTA Gateway Connection Control for Trusted Networks	424
Working with User Authentication	
Introduction	427
Viewing User Authentication Methods	
Viewing User Authentication Policies	
Creating User Rules and User Groups	431
Role-based Access Control for Admin Users	
Workflow: Creating a Local Authentication Policy	
Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy With Azure AD	456
Workflow: Creating an Authentication Policy for On-Premises ICS SAML	
Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy for Okta	
Defining and Applying Okta Authentication in nZTA	512
Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy for Ping Identity	
Workflow: Adding TOTP to an Authentication Policy	
Unlocking Locked User Accounts	553
Working with Applications and Application Groups	554
Introduction	
Adding Applications to the Controller	
Editing and Deleting Applications	564
Adding Application Groups to the Controller	
Workflow: Publishing Applications to nZTA Gateways	
Selecting Applications for Publication	571
Selecting Device Policies for Applications	572
Selecting User Rules for Applications	573
Selecting an nZTA Gateway for your Applications	575
Confirming the Create Secure Access Policy Workflow	575
Creating Device Policies and Device Policy Rules	
Introduction	576
Viewing Device Policies and Rules	576
Creating Device Policies	578
Configuring Default Device Policy for Users	583
Creating Device Policy Rules	586
Setting Global Device Preferences	604
Creating/Editing Secure Access Policies	612
Introduction	
Viewing your Secure Access Policies	614
Creating a Secure Access Policy	617
Editing a Secure Access Policy	620
Setting Up Secure Access Client	
Enrolling Ivanti Secure Access Client	

Introduction	622
Enrolling a Windows Device	624
Enrolling a macOS Device	631
Enrolling a Linux Device	637
Enrolling an iOS Device	653
Enrolling an Android Device	665
Using Ivanti Secure Access Client with nZTA	676
Introduction	677
On-Demand and Simultaneous Connection Handling	678
Resource Precedence Over Simultaneous Connections	681
Using SAML Single Logout to Force User Authentication	684
Disabling the nZTA Connection	687
Dynamic Policy Update and CARTA	691
Using an Existing Enterprise PKI	694
Upgrading Ivanti Secure Access Client	695
Introduction	696
Working with Client Packages	697
Upgrading Ivanti Secure Access Client Automatically	697
Enabling Manual Update of Ivanti Secure Access Client	698
Enabling Minimum Supported Client Version	699
Working with ESAP Packages	702
Updating ESAP Definitions on Clients Automatically	702
Enabling Manual Update of ESAP Definitions on Clients	703
nZTA Administration	704
Viewing Licensing/Subscription Usage	704
Creating Admin Roles	705
Associating Geographical Locations to IP Addresses	705
Synchronizing the Configuration	706
Integrating nZTA	
Configuring CASB/SWG	709
Integrating Ivanti Neurons for MDM with nZTA	711
Introduction	711
Configuring Ivanti NMDM Cloud	711
Integrating Ivanti NMDM with nZTA	718
End User Experience	723
Using Enterprise Integration to Export Your Logs for External Analysis	726
Introduction and Prerequisites	727
Importing a Trusted Server CA Certificate	729
Adding a Client Certificate to the Controller	731
Adding a Public Syslog Server to the Controller	734
Adding an On-Prem Syslog Server for nZTA Gateways	738
Setting a Custom Syslog Filter	741
Frequently Asked Questions	744
APPENDIX: Applications Supported by nSA	745

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

The Ivanti product that is the subject of this technical documentation consists of (or is intended for use with) Ivanti software. Use of such software is subject to the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement ("EULA") posted at https://www.ivanti.com/company/legal/eula. By downloading, installing or using such software, you agree to the terms and conditions of that EULA.

Preface

Document conventions

The document conventions describe text formatting conventions, command syntax conventions, and important notice formats used in Ivanti technical documentation.

Text formatting conventions

Text formatting conventions such as boldface, italic, or Courier font may be used in the flow of the text to highlight specific words or phrases.

Format	Description
bold text	Identifies command names
	Identifies keywords and operands
	Identifies the names of user-manipulated GUI elements
	Identifies text to enter at the GUI
italic text	Identifies emphasis
	Identifies variables
	Identifies document titles
Courier Font	Identifies command output
	Identifies command syntax examples

Command syntax conventions

Bold and italic text identify command syntax components. Delimiters and operators define groupings of parameters and their logical relationships.

Convention	Description
bold text	Identifies command names, keywords, and command options.
italic text	Identifies a variable.

Convention	Description
[]	Syntax components displayed within square brackets are optional. Default responses to system prompts are enclosed in square brackets.
{ x y z }	A choice of required parameters is enclosed in curly brackets separated by vertical bars. You must select one of the options.
x y	A vertical bar separates mutually exclusive elements.
< >	Non-printing characters, for example, passwords, are enclosed in angle brackets.
	Repeat the previous element, for example, member[member].
\	Indicates a "soft" line break in command examples. If a backslash separates two lines of a command input, enter the entire command at the prompt without the backslash.
bold text	Identifies command names, keywords, and command options.

Code Block

Following is an example of Python based code block in the html documentation:

```
def some_function():
interesting = False
print 'This line is highlighted.'
print 'This one is not...'
print '...but this one is.'
```

Notes and Warnings

Note, Attention, and Caution statements might be used in this document.



A Note provides a tip, guidance, or advice, emphasizes important information, or provides a reference to related information.

An Attention statement indicates a stronger note, for example, to alert you when traffic might be interrupted or the device might reboot.

A Caution statement alerts you to situations that can be potentially hazardous to you or cause damage to hardware, firmware, software, or data.

Revision History

The following table lists the revision history for this document:

Document Revision	Date	Description
1.0	January, 2025	nSA/ZTA Release 22.8R1

About This Guide



To see an overview of the software and workflows needed to get started quickly, read the *Neurons for Zero Trust Access: Getting Started Guide*.

This guide takes you through the configuration and use of your Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access (nZTA) service.

It covers the following subject areas:

- An overview of nZTA network architecture and concepts. See <u>Overview of Ivanti Neurons for Zero</u>
 <u>Trust Access</u>.
- Logging into the nZTA Controller as a Tenant Admin. See Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- Setting up one or more Gateways. See <u>Working with Gateways</u>.
- Defining user authentication methods and policies, see Working with User Authentication.
- Creating device policies. See Creating Device Policies and Device Policy Rules.
- Adding applications to your Gateways. See Working with Applications and Application Groups.
- Configuring secure access policies. See Creating/Editing Secure Access Policies.
- Enrolling desktop and mobile devices with the nZTA Controller. See <u>Enrolling Ivanti Secure</u> Access Client.
- Updating the client software and ESAP definition on Ivanti Secure Access Client, see <u>Upgrading</u> <u>Ivanti Secure Access Client</u>.
- Using analytics to monitor your nZTA platform and services. See <u>Using the Insights Menu to</u> Monitor User Activity and Service Usage.

What's New

Version 22.7R1.6

Admin experience enhancements

• "Group by" option is added in the Gateway List page to filter the list based on Gateway Type, Connection status, Version or Region.

Version 22.7R1.4

Admin UI user experience enhancements

Column reordering is newly added in the Users L3 and L4 pages. To move a column, a user can click the header and drag to its new position.

For more details, see "Using the Insights Menu to Monitor User Activity and Service Usage" on page 80.

Version 22.7R1.3

Consolidated landing page

Drill down support for the Sankey chart is newly added on the consolidated landing page. With each chart, the View All link provides a page with detailed log records for that category. For more details, see "Consolidated Landing Page" on page 83.

All Gateways counter

All Gateways counter is newly added on ZTA and nSA specific analytics landing page. For more details, see "Reviewing Your Network Activity" on page 86.

FAQs section

Added "Frequently Asked Questions" section. For more details, see "Frequently Asked Questions" on page 744.

Version 22.7R1.2

(Preview) Consolidated landing page

A new unified landing page allows tenant admin to examine the shared Analytics tables and charts for nZTA and ICS Gateways. For more details, see "Consolidated Landing Page" on page 83.

Admin UI user experience enhancements

Improvements to the admin experience (Modernize the table view for session management and log view). Advanced filter on the page for managed users. For more details, see:

- "Checking the Logs" on page 177
- "Viewing Gateway Logs" on page 221
- "Viewing and Terminating User Sessions" on page 136

Sync Now

A new Sync Now page allows tenant admin to implement changes made and correct any configuration problems based on the alerts. For more details, see "Using the Insights Menu to Monitor User Activity and Service Usage" on page 80.

Version 22.7R1

Configurable MTU size for gateways

Tenant admin can now define MTU size for ZTA gateways depending on their requirements and underlying network infrastructure.

For details, see:

- "Adding a VMware vSphere Gateway" on page 243
- "Adding an Amazon Web Services Gateway" on page 253
- "Adding an Azure Gateway" on page 265
- "Adding a KVM Gateway" on page 277

- "Adding a GCP Gateway" on page 294
- "Adding an Oracle Gateway" on page 316

Password Strengthening for Local Authentication Server

The local authentication server has stronger password restrictions.

For details, see "Workflow: Creating a Local Authentication Policy" on page 444.

Renewed ZTA IDP metadata in release 22.7R1

To ensure continued compatibility, download the renewed ZTA IDP metadata from the ZTA tenant application configuration page and subsequently apply the updated information to the SaaS SAML SSO configurations.

Version 22.6R1.2

iOS supporting Ivanti NMDM integration with nZTA

Ivanti Neurons for MDM provides compliance check and simplified onboarding experience for nZTA end users connecting via mobile. For details, see "Integrating Ivanti Neurons for MDM with nZTA" on page 711.

Hardened custom sign-in policies and login URLs

As part of hardening custom sign-in policies and login URLs, the following changes are implemented:

- Instead of requiring administrators to configure enrollment policies, administrators will only need to configure user policies. As a default, all configured user policies support enrollment.
- Single SAML authentication server for user authentication and enrollment.

For details, see:

- "Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy With Azure AD" on page 456
- "Workflow: Creating an Authentication Policy for On-Premises ICS SAML" on page 488
- "Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy for Okta" on page 507

- "Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy for Ping Identity" on page 525
- "Workflow: Creating a Local Authentication Policy" on page 444

Version 22.6R1

Oracle Cloud Platform support for nZTA Gateway

nZTA Gateway now supports deployment on Oralce Cloud Platform (OCI). For details see "Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Oracle Cloud Platform" on page 315.

Launching the Windows Edge/Webview2 browser

In a typical enrollment, upon successful authentication to the Controller, Ivanti Secure Access Client automatically shows the end-user portal applications page through a Windows Edge/Webview2 browser. This feature is supported with ISAC client version 22.6R1. For details. see "Enrolling a Windows Device" on page 624.

Reusable custom icon to associate with application

The create application page provides an option to upload your own icon, which can be re-used to associate with more than one application. For details. see "Working with Applications and Application Groups" on page 554.

Admin experience enhancements to L4, Gateway Logs, and Logs Tables in terms of selection and resizing, pagination, text copy/paste, confirmation actions across all pages.

The following list shows the enhancements to L4, Gateway Logs, and Logs Tables.

- Column resizing across nZTA pages
- Cell content copy text from Table
- Pagination across nZTA pages
- Minimum number of columns in all the tables in L4 dashboards
- Enhancement to Advanced Filter

For details. see "Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart" on page 111, and "Filtering the Logs" on page 184.

Simplifying Devices section and better correlation of data for Device Rules and Policies and Device Insights with a new workflow

Admin experience is enhanced by simplifying the device rules and policies, and global device preferences. For details, see "Creating Device Policies" on page 578, "Setting Global Device Preferences" on page 604, and "Viewing Currently Enrolled User Devices" on page 161.

Version 22.5R1.2

Suppress EUP Auto Launch

Allows Admin to suppress the auto launch of the End User portal. This option is enabled by default and works with ISAC 22.5R1 and later. For details, see "Enrolling Ivanti Secure Access Client" on page 622.

Version 22.5R1

Admin Access Control Based on Location, Host Checker, and Network

Checks the Admin's device geographic location/network/host checker compliance for admin sign-in policy before providing access to admin login. For details, see "Configuring Default Device Policy for Users" on page 583.

Enhancements to Anomalies and Non-compliance L4 Drill Down logs

The Anomalies L4 table now includes MAC Address and Source IP Address columns.

The Non-compliances L4 table now includes Acknowledged, Non-compliant Policy Type, Noncompliance Policy reason, MAC Address and Source IP Address columns.

For details, see "Using the Active Anomaly, Connected Clients Version, and Non-Compliance Charts" on page 107.

Log export options to the admin from Gateway and L4 (drill-down view) logs

In any of the L4 pages, export the displayed log as a CSV or JSON text file, or create schedules to set up log export jobs. For details, see "Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart" on page 111.

Exporting logs from L4 (drill-down view) logs and Gateway logs

For details, see "Exporting Logs" on page 185.

Gateway Creation Config UI Simplification

Create nZTA Gateway and Create nZTA Gateway Group options are grouped under Create. For details, see "Adding a VMware vSphere Gateway" on page 243.

Acknowledge non-compliance in the non-compliance info panel

Acknowledge individual non-compliances and remove them from the active total. Filter on acknowledged, unacknowledged (active), or all non-compliances. For details, see "Using the Summary Ribbon" on page 91.

Create another application option in Applications page

On Create Application page, admin can choose to continue to create one more application. For details, see "Working with Applications and Application Groups" on page 554.

Version 22.4R3

Role Based Access Control for Admin Users

With Role-based access control (RBAC), organizations can easily add admins and assign them specific roles, with differing levels of access to the nSA Admin Portal. In addition to an existing set of default roles, Administrators can now create custom granular roles for specific functions within the nSA admin portal.

For details, see "Role-based Access Control for Admin Users" on page 440

HTTP Proxy Support

Support Proxy configuration in gateway to connect to nZTA.

For details, see:

"Adding a VMware vSphere Gateway" on page 243

"Adding an Amazon Web Services Gateway" on page 253

"Adding an Azure Gateway" on page 265

"Adding a KVM Gateway" on page 277

"Adding a GCP Gateway" on page 294

Version 22.4R1

Applications and Application Groups UI change

Group together multiple applications for which a single secure access policy is required, For details, see "Working with Applications and Application Groups" on page 554 and "Adding Application Groups to the Controller" on page 565.

nZTA Gateway Connection Control for Trusted Networks

nZTA Gateway can sometimes be bypassed so that users can connect directly to specific applications. For example, you might want users to bypass nZTA for a specific application if they are connected directly to your trusted corporate network. nZTA Gateway tunnel creation will be bypassed on the endpoint since resource access will go through the physical interface.

For details, see "Configuring nZTA Gateway Connection Control for Trusted Networks" on page 424

Gateway Re-registration

nZTA Gateway can now be re-registered in case if the Gateway Registration was not successful and can edit gateway configuration parameters. On registration failures, admin can trigger the registration manually along with the current debugging options such as networking tools, reboot etc. You can also regenerate and download the gateway init config from the controller admin interface as when required. The Admin can also use Registration error report, which provides insight about the registration failure and suggest solutions to overcome it.

Limitation: Azure and KVM does not allow the user to update configuration after the gateway is deployed. So, if any config update is needed in Azure or KVM Gateways (nZTA) ,we need to redeploy the nZTA Gateway.

For details, see "Re-registering a VMware vSphere Gateway" on page 250, "Re-registering an Amazon Web Services Gateway" on page 262 and "Re-registering a GCP Gateway" on page 297.

Location/Network rule support in default device policy

Location/Network policy based enforcement can be applied for any user policy. For details about enforcing the policy on default device, see "Configuring Default Device Policy for Users" on page 583.

For details about creating these policies, see "Options for Location Rules" on page 595 and "Options for Network Rules" on page 597.

Overview of *Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access*

- Securing a Diverse Application Infrastructure
- Hyper-Converged Zero-Trust Access
- An Overview of Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access
- Deploying and Using nZTA
- Using a Custom Domain
- Deploying Gateways
- Defining User Authentication
- Publishing Applications
- Enrolling a User Device
- Summary of Steps to Configure Your nZTA Deployment

Securing a Diverse Application Infrastructure

To enhance an enterprise's ability to protect its systems, services, and data, IT teams can adopt a *zero-trust* network security architecture. The zero-trust model works on the principle that no single client entity is automatically trusted, regardless of whether they are inside or outside the organizational network perimeter. Each client connection must have its identity verified by a trusted service or policy before access is granted.

As organizations move away from traditional application deployment models and begin to adopt hybrid and multi-cloud service-based infrastructures, the notion of zero-trust must be a extended to encompass the means to centrally manage application access and security for all users across the enterprise, regardless of device type and location.

For example, an enterprise with SaaS, 3rd-party cloud, and on-premise applications might need to define end-to-end secure access policies through a combination of:

- User authentication method (Active Directory, LDAP, local authentication)
- Device compliance policy (operating system, antivirus definition, root access)
- Infrastructure type (AWS/Azure, on-premise vSphere, KVM)
- Application type (SaaS applications such as O365/SFDC, Cloud apps, on-premise apps)
- Additional security postures (such as location, time, usage patterns)

In addition, this model gives rise to complex requirements for visibility and compliance reporting. At any time, an organization might need to see the following types of information:

- The current number of compliant users or devices
- Application usage levels both in the cloud and on-premise
- Visibility of any abnormal or compliance issues

Hyper-Converged Zero-Trust Access

Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access (nZTA) addresses the requirement for an enterprise-level zero-trust secure access management platform. It offers the following features and benefits:

- True zero-trust access as a service for hybrid and multi-cloud
 - Authentication and authorization before any access
- Separation of control and data planes
 - All user data goes through only the relevant *nZTA Gateway* deployed in the organization's datacenter or virtual private cloud
- Dark cloud to reduce the attack surface
 - *nZTA Gateways* are not accessible by the client end-point until authorized to do so by the *Controller*
 - Client end-points never access the applications directly; only through an encrypted data tunnel via the *nZTA Gateway*
- Smooth migration
 - Users continue to use existing VPN connection profiles through *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, while incorporating new *nZTA* profiles to access your managed application infrastructure

An Overview of *Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access*

Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access (nZTA) is a cloud-based SaaS (software as a service) application that forms part of the *Ivanti Neurons for Secure Access* family. It provides fully-managed zero-trust authentication and access control for an organization's application infrastructure.

nZTA is developed according to the principle of SDP (Software Defined Perimeter). Where traditional network-based security architectures use firewalls at the network perimeter to limit access to resources, SDP is based on a need-to-know policy-driven model. Client devices are verified and authorized before access to applications is granted. Application infrastructure cannot be detected remotely, and has no visible DNS information or exposed IP addresses. This protects networked resources from many common network-based attacks.

nZTA enables system administrators to define end-to-end authorization and authentication policies that control application visibility, access, and security for all users and their devices. Administrators can deploy applications of any type in a variety of hybrid cloud and on-premise datacenter environments, with *nZTA* providing users seamless secure access to only those applications for which they are authorized to use, regardless of geographic location and client device platform.

nZTA facilitates authorization policy enactment for any combination of users, devices, applications, and infrastructure.



Four-dimensional authentication policy control

Deploying and Using nZTA

A *nZTA* deployment consists of a *Controller* service and one or more application *Gateways* positioned at each location an organization hosts its resources and applications. This might be in a public or private cloud, within a datacenter, or inside a virtual host environment.



The topology of a *nZTA* deployment

End users use *Ivanti Secure Access Client* to authenticate with the *Controller*, which runs an Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA) Service. The *Controller* then enables direct and encrypted communication between the user and the *nZTA Gateways* that protect the user's authorized resources. This mechanism avoids the general exposure of public IP addresses, and separates the control plane from the data plane.

To learn more about using *Ivanti Secure Access Client* with *nZTA*, see Enrolling Mobile/Desktop Clients and Using Ivanti Secure Access Client with nZTA.

After you have defined your secure access policy, or policies, the *Controller* automatically synchronizes the configuration out to your *nZTA Gateways*.

System administrators use the *Controller* to configure, provision, and monitor an enterprise's application infrastructure. To achieve this, *Ivanti* provides a *Tenant Admin Portal* on the *Controller*. This portal facilitates the following actions:

- Configure a custom domain at which your *nZTA* service is reached
- Define and deploy *nZTA Gateways*
- Register authentication services and policies
- Publish resources and applications
- Create authorization rules and policies for users and devices
- Enroll users
- Perform management and real-time analysis of traffic flow and application access across the enterprise
- Manage your Tenant Admin Portal settings

To login to the Tenant Admin Portal, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.

Using a Custom Domain

Your *nZTA* tenant subscription is deployed, by default, as a unique endpoint at a domain provided by *Ivanti*. Enrollment and sign-in endpoints are then configured at this FQDN through *user authentication policies*.

Should you require it, you can provision a custom domain to be used in place of the *lvanti*-provided domain.

IMPORTANT: It is essential to determine whether a custom domain is required at the outset of your subscription, and particularly before you have deployed any Gateways or enrolled any users.

To learn more, see "Specifying a Custom Domain" on page 70.

Deploying Gateways

nZTA requires you to set up Gateways to manage access to your applications and resources. You deploy one or more Gateway instances at each location your applications are hosted, whether at a physical datacenter, a private or public cloud-based service, or some hybrid combination. Each Gateway communicates with the *Controller* to ensure that access requests are authorized.

nZTA supports two main Gateway types, depending on your subscription:

- nZTA Gateways
- Ivanti Connect Secure (ICS) Gateways

This guide describes how to install and configure *nZTA Gateways*. For details pertaining to an ICS Gateway, refer instead to the "ICS Gateway Onboarding Guide" in the *nSA* documentation portal.

A *nZTA Gateway* is a virtual machine that operates as a headless instance at the perimeter of the logical network used by your datacenter or cloud. A *nZTA Gateway* must be contactable by the *Controller*, other *nZTA Gateway* instances at the same location, and the applications that reside there. *nZTA* supports *nZTA Gateway*s running on Microsoft Azure, Amazon Web Services (AWS), and VMware vSphere. *Ivanti* provides template images for each environment.



Deploying nZTA Gateways to your cloud and datacenter locations

The process of registering a *nZTA Gateway* identity with the *Controller* produces a package of settings known as a *Gateway definition* that you apply to the Gateway virtual machine during deployment. These settings enable the *nZTA Gateway* to establish secure communication with the *Controller*.



To register a new *nZTA Gateway* with the *Controller*, use the Tenant Admin Portal. The *Controller* provides a step-by-step workflow to define your *nZTA Gateways*, requiring basic identification and networking details. After you complete this process, you can download the definition file ready for insertion into your *nZTA Gateway* virtual machine at deploy time.

A Gateway definition file is valid for 24 hours. If this period expires, you must replace the *nZTA Gateway* to generate a new definition file.

Then, when you create the *nZTA Gateway* virtual machine instance in your cloud or on-premise management console, you apply the definition file when requested by the template. A newly launched *nZTA Gateway* instance registers itself with the *Controller*, and any subsequent policy changes made on the *Controller* are automatically synchronized out to all *nZTA Gateway*s.

To learn more about the process of creating and managing your *nZTA Gateways*, including network interface and subnet requirements, see <u>Working with Gateways</u>.

Using Gateway Groups for High Availability

nZTA provides the ability to enhance your application delivery by allowing the deployment of a group of two or more *nZTA Gateway* instances in front of the same applications. Depending on the approach taken, this can provide improvements for:

- **Availability**: If one Gateway becomes overloaded or unresponsive, traffic is routed to another Gateway in the group.
- **Throughput**: Balancing the load between all Gateways in the group to take full advantage of their capacity.
- **Load partitioning**: A non-balancing approach to distributing traffic between Gateways in the group.
- Latency reduction: Routing an end user's traffic to the Gateway nearest to them.

A nZTA deployment provides two methods to control how traffic is routed:

- 1. The Controller chooses which Gateway to use, see Using Controller for Gateway Selection.
- 2. You deploy a load-balancer to route traffic to the Gateways, see <u>Using an Administrator</u>-<u>Deployed Load-Balancer</u>.

The *Controller* uses the concept of *Gateway Groups* to manage each of these deployment models. A Gateway Group contains Gateways that are considered part of a single high-availability group, see Using Gateway Groups in your Secure Access Policies.



To use active/standby and geo-proximity traffic distribution features with your *nZTA* deployment, your end-users must be running *Ivanti Secure Access Client* versions supported for use with *nZTA* version 21.3.2 or later. To learn more about supported client versions, see the *Release Notes*.

Using Controller for Gateway Selection

To allow the *Controller* to select a Gateway, make sure your Gateway Group has no load-balancer defined as part of its configuration.



In this scenario, no additional infrastructure is required.

When Gateways in the group are deployed across different locations, the *Controller* selects the Gateway that is geographically closest to the end-user, based on the end-user's IP address. When Gateways in the group are configured with the same location, the end-user is directed to the Gateway that is alphabetically first by name. If a gateway fails, the end-user is automatically directed to use the next available Gateway in the group by the same criteria.

This mode provides improved availability over a standalone Gateway. In addition, when Gateways are deployed across multiple locations, it can partition load and reduce latency for end-users.



Using Controller Gateway Selection with Gateways over multiple locations

Using an Administrator-Deployed Load-Balancer

An administrator can deploy a load-balancer to distribute traffic between the Gateways in the group through the following scenarios:

 As an *in-path* load-balancer to provide more rapid failure detection, and to load-balance traffic across Gateways when they are deployed in the same location to maximize throughput. An inpath load-balancer does not provide for latency reduction as all the Gateways in the group are deployed in the same location.

For on-premise Gateway deployments, *Ivanti* recommends **Pulse Secure Virtual Traffic Manager (vTM)**. For cloud-based Gateway deployments, you can again use vTM or the built-in load balancing capabilities of AWS or Azure. To learn more about vTM, contact *Ivanti* Technical Support or visit www.ivanti.com. For more details on available load balancers in AWS or Azure, see the relevant product documentation.

When using vTM for load-balancing, *Ivanti* recommends you configure the following settings in the vTM Admin UI to ensure proper fail-over functionality:

- Click Services > Virtual servers and edit your designated HTTPS virtual server. In the virtual server configuration, click Protocol Settings > TCP Connection Settings and enable close_with_rst. This setting closes connections from clients with a RST packet rather than a FIN packet and avoids the TIME_WAIT state.
- Click Services > Pools and edit your designated HTTPS pool. In the pool configuration, enable the following settings:
 - Click Protocol Settings > TCP Pool Settings and enable node_ connclose. This setting closes all connections to a node if vTM detects that the node has failed.
 - Click Protocol Settings > TCP Protocol Options and enable node_ close_with_rst. This setting closes connections from clients with a RST packet rather than a FIN packet and avoids the TIME_WAIT state.

You deploy an in-path load-balancer in front of your Gateway instances and raise a public IP address on its front-end interface. You then configure the load balancer with a pool of nodes representing the external IP addresses of your Gateway instances. End users connect to the load-balancer, which in turn forwards on the connection to one of the available Gateways based on the load balancing algorithm you choose (such as round-robin). The load balancer can be configured with a health monitor to perform connectivity checks with your Gateways.

To use an in-path load-balancer, enter the IP address or FQDN of the load-balancer's public interface in the **load-balancer** field of the Gateway Group configuration (see <u>Working with</u> Gateways).



nZTA supports Gateway health monitoring using TCP port 443.



Deploying a pair of Gateways for high availability



This diagram demonstrates high availability based on a pair of Gateways. You can add further Gateway instances according to the expected load on the applications at that location.

• As a *global* load-balancer to distribute traffic between Gateway instances based on client proximity to the Gateway.

The global load-balancer should be configured to manage an FQDN and resolve it to the public IP address of the optimal Gateway instance. To use the global load-balancer, add the FQDN managed by the global load-balancer to the **load-balancer** field of your Gateway Group configuration.

Using Gateway Groups in your Secure Access Policies

To implement high availability, you configure a *Secure Access Policy* to use a Gateway Group rather than an individual Gateway. For all policy updates, the *Controller* automatically synchronizes changes with all Gateways in the group.

Note the following when using Gateway Groups:

- A Gateway is available to be assigned to a Secure Access Policy as part of a Group, or as an individual instance, but not both. That is, a Gateway that is added to a Gateway Group is no longer available to be assigned to a Secure Access Policy by itself.
- A Gateway must be registered and connected before it is available to be added to a Gateway Group.
- Where the *Controller* is used for Gateway selection, all Gateways in an affected group must have a public IP address configured.
- Gateway instances use different certificates for mTLS communication when part of a Gateway Group. When you add a Gateway to a Gateway Group, this triggers a task to renew the Gateway certificate to match that used by the Group. Conversely, if you remove a Gateway from a Gateway Group, this again triggers a task to renew the Gateway certificate to ensure validity as an individual instance.
- A removed Gateway does not retain any user or device policies previous synchronized to it by the *Controller*.

To learn more about configuring a Gateway Group, see Working with Gateways.

Using Network Load Balancer for High Availability in AWS

If you plan to use Network Load Balancer (NLB) to implement high availability for a group of Gateways deployed in AWS, *Ivanti* recommends you configure a **Target Group** with a *Target Type* of "IP":

Create target group		×
Your load balancer routes requests	to the targets in a target group using the target group settings that you specify, and performs health checks on the targets using the health check settings that you specify	у.
Target group name (j)		
Target type	 Instance IP Lambda function 	
Protocol (j)	(HTTP v)	
Port (j	80	
VPC ()	vpc-03c552558062/6fae (10.25.0.0/16) pcs: •	

Setting Target Type in a Target Group

Defining User Authentication

nZTA provides user authentication through **authentication policies**. Policies cover the primary scenarios of user enrollment, user sign-in, and administrator sign-in, and the *Controller* includes built-in policy definitions for all three. *nZTA* additionally allows you to define your own custom enrollment and sign-in policies to facilitate specific authentication paths for different groups of users or parts of your organization.

An authentication policy defines the application of an **authentication method** for a specified access URL. You create methods based on your user authentication requirements and assign them to the appropriate policies. As a user connects to the access URL defined in a policy, the associated method is employed to authenticate the user device.

nZTA facilitates *Multi-Factor Authentication* (MFA) through the configuration of an optional secondary authentication method in a policy. When MFA is deployed, a connecting user would need to satisfy the requirements of both primary and secondary authentication methods before access is granted. *nZTA* allows the use of *Local authentication* and *Time-based One Time Password (TOTP)* as secondary methods.

nZTA also provides for the definition of **user rules** and **user groups**. User rules act as filters and define the basic criteria by which users' credentials must match in order for authentication to proceed. User groups encapsulate an authentication policy with one or more user rules to provide a complete user authentication definition for your *Secure Access Policy*.



The relationship between user groups, rules, authentication policies and methods

Ivanti recommends you define your authentication methods and user rules first. Then, create or update authentication policies for user enrollment and sign-in based on the authentication methods that you want to apply in that scenario. Finally, create a user group based on your policy and add any applicable user rules.

- To read more about authentication methods, see Creating User Authentication Methods.
- To read more about authentication policies, see Using User Authentication Policies.
- To read more about user rules and groups, see <u>Defining User Authentication Rules and Groups</u>.

Creating User Authentication Methods

nZTA supports user authentication through the following methods:

- local authentication
- SAML authentication (through Azure AD or a custom defined service)
- Time-based One Time Password (TOTP) authentication

Local Authentication

nZTA can operate a local authentication policy based on a defined list of users held internally in the *Controller*. User authentication requests are compared against this list to determine access rights. You create and manage this list manually through the Tenant Admin Portal.



nZTA supports the use of Local Authentication as a *primary* or *secondary* authentication mechanism.

To learn more about defining local authenticators in *nZTA*, see <u>Workflow: Creating a Local</u> Authentication Policy.

SAML Authentication

SAML (Security Assertion Markup Language) is an open-standard XML-based message framework, used to exchange information concerning the authentication and authorization of user agents attempting to access an organization's web services. SAML is often used for web browser single sign-on (SSO) services.

SAML deployments typically involve two participant types:

- Service Provider (SP): provides the resources to be protected
- Identity Provider (IdP): performs the authentication and authorization checks required by your resources

nZTA can function as a SAML SP to control user access to your application infrastructure, using an externally-defined service (for example, Azure AD) as the IdP. Access is permitted only when a valid SAML token is presented by the requesting user agent, who has in turn obtained the token from the IdP.



nZTA supports the use of SAML in Multi-Factor Authentication as a *primary* authentication mechanism only.

To configure *nZTA* to use a SAML authenticator, you must establish a trusted SAML connection between *nZTA* and a suitable identity provider. To create the connection, *nZTA* and the identity provider must both be configured with authentication data identifying each other.

In other words, when you configure an identity provider application to operate as a SAML IdP, you obtain an *IdP metadata* package file containing configuration details suitable for uploading to *nZTA* (as the SP). After you upload the IdP metadata to *nZTA*, *nZTA* in return generates its own *SP configuration metadata* package file for uploading back to the IdP.



Configuring nZTA with a SAML authentication method

This process of authentication metadata-sharing establishes the IdP as a trusted authenticator within *nZTA*. The IdP, in turn, acknowledges *nZTA* as a trusted SP.



This guide provides information on configuring trusted connections to supported SAML authenticators. For more detailed instructions, or for deployment scenarios not covered by this guide, refer to the documentation provided by your IdP vendor.
nZTA uses independent authentication policies to handle *user enrollment* and *user sign-in* processes. When configuring SAML authentication, you typically create two separate SAML applications in the IdP to handle each process individually. This means that for each authentication policy you must configure a separate *nZTA* authentication method and, for each method, perform the IdP/SP metadata handshake to establish a trusted connection with the associated SAML application. *Ivanti* recommends you configure your IdP SAML applications and obtain the corresponding metadata files before you configure your *nZTA* authentication methods.

To learn more about configuring SAML authenticators in *nZTA*, see Working with User Authentication.

TOTP Authentication

Time-based One Time Password (TOTP) is defined in RFC6238 as an authentication mechanism where a one-time password (also known as a token) is generated by an authentication server and client from a shared secret key and the current time. This is implemented in *nZTA* with the *Controller* acting as the TOTP authentication server.

Any third-party TOTP applications (for example, Google Authenticator, Microsoft Authenticator, and so on) available on the mobile and desktop client platforms generate TOTP tokens.

0

nZTA supports the use of TOTP in Multi-Factor Authentication as a *secondary* authentication mechanism only.

To learn more about defining TOTP authenticators for use in *nZTA*, see <u>Workflow: Adding TOTP to an</u> Authentication Policy.

Using User Authentication Policies

Users trigger authentication by connecting to the access URL defined in your *authentication policies*. These policies reference *authentication methods*, as described in <u>Creating User Authentication Methods</u>, and cover the primary scenarios for authenticating user connections:

- User enrollment
- User sign-in
- Administrator sign-in



nZTA supports Multi-Factor Authentication for User sign-in and Administrator sign-in type policies only.

nZTA is pre-configured with built-in "default" policies for each of these scenarios.

User Policies ④								
You can no USER PC 3 AUTHENT	ow create a new polic DLICIES FICATION POLICIES	y or go to Crea	ate Secure Acco	ess Policy.	ADD	EDIT	DELETE	:=
	NAME 🛧	DEFAULT 个	POLICY USER	ACCESS URL	SERVER	SERVER TYPE 1	DOWNLOADS	
	Admin Sig	~	admin	*/login/a	Admin Auth	Local		
	Enrollmen	\checkmark	enroll	*/login/e	User Auth	Local		
	User Sign	~	user	*/login/	User Auth	Local		

Viewing the default user authentication policies provided by the *Controller*

The access URL defined in each policy is appended to the tenant FQDN and serves as a complete endpoint for that activity. For example, if your tenant FQDN is "example.company.com", the default sign-in endpoint for your end-users is *https://example.company.com/login/* and the default enrollment endpoint is *https://example.company.com/login/enroll/*.

The specific access URL to which you connect for enrollment depends on the *lvanti Secure Access Client* version installed on the device:

- For *Ivanti Secure Access Client* versions defined as recommended for *nZTA* 21.9.2 or later, or for browser-based enrollment, you enroll a device by connecting directly to the access URL in a **user sign-in** policy. You do not connect to the **enrollment** policy directly (enrollment policies are linked to sign-in policies to handle the case where a connecting device is not yet enrolled).
- For *Ivanti Secure Access Client* versions earlier than those recommended for *nZTA* 21.9.2, you enroll a device by connecting to the access URL in an **enrollment** policy. Thereafter, enrolled devices connect to the access URL in your default **user sign-in** policy.



For details of recommended and supported *Ivanti Secure Access Client* versions, see the *Release Notes*.

The built-in default policies cannot be replaced or deleted, yet can be edited to update the authentication methods used in each case. For standard deployments involving a single authentication workflow for all enterprise users, these policies should be sufficient.

To establish additional authentication endpoints for specific user groups, you can add *custom* authentication policies. To learn more, see Adding Custom Authentication Policies.

Adding Custom Authentication Policies

In addition to the built-in authentication policies, you can add custom policies to enable further groupspecific login scenarios. You can add, edit, and delete custom authentication policies as required. In other words, where you only require a single policy for all enterprise users containing an authentication method suitable for everyone, the built-in default policies are likely suitable for your needs. However, you might want to authenticate certain groups of users against a different authentication method. In this scenario, you can set up custom policies, each containing a separate authentication method suitable for your specific group of users (for example, one policy/method for Sales staff versus another for non-Sales staff).

In a custom authentication policy, you define a unique *Access URL* for the activity (for example, "*/login/saleslogin/" or "*/login/salesenroll/"), and the primary authentication method you want to apply in that case. For Multi-Factor Authentication scenarios, you should also define an appropriate secondary authentication method (based on local or TOTP authentication).

Each time you create a custom authentication policy, you configure the user type (or activity) to which this policy should apply:

- Enrollment Users: This policy is intended for enrollment of new end-user devices.
- Users: This policy is intended as the sign-in endpoint for enrolled devices.
- **Administrators**: This policy is intended as the authentication endpoint for administrator-level sign-in to the *Controller*.

Multi-Factor Authentication is supported for user sign-in and admin sign-in custom policies only.

Authentication policies defined as a *users* sign-in type contain a link to an *enrollment users* policy that you specify. Through this mechanism, un-enrolled user devices connecting to a sign-in endpoint are instead automatically redirected to the relevant enrollment endpoint. For this reason, make sure you create your enrollment policy BEFORE you create a sign-in policy.

As an example scenario:

- For enrollment, you create a new custom user policy specifying a User Type of "Enrollment Users" and a unique enrollment Login URL such as /login/testenroll. Then, select your required authentication server.
- To enable your users to sign in post-enrollment, create a separate custom user policy specifying a User Type of "Users". Enter a separate unique Login URL representing the sign-in endpoint, such as /login/testuser. Then, select your required primary (and optional secondary) authentication server. Finally, link in the enrollment policy you created in the previous step.

3. When you add a new *nSA* connection in *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, you specify the sign-in endpoint (https://<mydomain>.com/login/testuser). This automatically redirects to https://<mydomain>.com/login/testenroll to complete the enrollment process. An enrollment endpoint must not itself be used for device onboarding from *Ivanti Secure Access Client* or through a web browser-based enrollment.



Your custom user sign-in policies can be configured to redirect enrollment to either another custom (enrollment) policy, or to the built-in *Enrollment Signin* policy. The built-in *User Signin* policy is pre-configured with the built-in *Enrollment Signin* policy and cannot be modified.

If you use custom authentication policies, you must make sure these policies are mapped to a valid *Secure Access Policy*. Otherwise, connection attempts to enroll an end-user device to these policy end-points will fail.

For more details on enrolling client devices, see Enrolling a User Device.

To learn more about creating user authentication policies, see Working with User Authentication.

Defining User Authentication Rules and Groups

After you have defined a user authentication service, you can proceed to create **User Rules** and **User Groups**.

A **User Rule** is a set of instructions describing whether *nZTA* should include or exclude a user based on whether the criteria defined in the rule matches the user. For each rule, you specify an attribute of a user's credentials (such as "username") and a value to match against or to avoid. The value can be a wild-card character, a literal string, or a mixture of both. For example, you might specify a rule of "username MATCHING *@example.com" to apply to all users with user names in the example.com domain.

The attribute to match varies depending on whether your rule is to be used against an internally held user list or a SAML-based external authentication service.



Consider specifying separate user rules for each type of user in your organization. Consider also defining rules for each type of application or resource you want to publish. For example, you might require a rule to filter out those users that are not authorized to access a sensitive data application, such as an HR or payroll system, held in a specific datacenter.

A **User Group** contains one or more user rules that, when combined with a user authentication service (see <u>Defining User Authentication</u>), create a complete user authentication policy.

This capability, combined with device policies, can actively fulfill the Users and Devices dimensions of your secure access policy. For more information, see <u>An Overview of Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust</u><u>Access</u>.

For logins attempted against a URL endpoint defined in a particular policy, the credentials of the user are checked against the corresponding authentication services and user rules to ascertain whether the user is authorized to access the services published at a *nZTA Gateway*.

To learn more about defining User Rules and Groups, see Creating User Rules and User Groups.

Publishing Applications

Application publishing is central to the configuration of your *nZTA* service. A *nZTA* application can refer to on-premise applications, web pages, or network locations served from your datacenter and cloud infrastructure. *nZTA* can also publish resources based on SaaS applications such as Microsoft O365 and Salesforce.

The process of publishing an application encompasses all four dimensions of secure access: users, devices, applications, and infrastructure. For each application, you define its type and then apply to it user rules, device policies, and *nZTA Gateway* infrastructure governing access to it. For more information on the secure access model, see <u>An Overview of Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access</u>.



Creating a secure access policy

The Tenant Admin Portal allows you to define a complete *secure access policy* for an application or resource, encompassing the required supporting user rules, device policies, and *nZTA Gateway* infrastructure.

The portal provides a step-by-step workflow to enable you to define and publish your secure access policy in one process. For more information on the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow, see Summary of Steps to Configure Your nZTA Deployment.

Defining Applications and Application Groups

When you create a new *secure access policy*, you select whether to create a policy for a single application or for a group of related applications. Therefore, the Tenant Admin Portal enables you to define applications individually, and where required to then add one or more application definitions to an *application group*.



An application, or application group, can be associated with only one secure access policy.

When you create a new application definition in the Tenant Admin Portal, make sure you know the following details:

• **The Application Details**: That is, the URI (Uniform Resource Identifier) you use to access the application, based on a Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN). *nZTA* supports valid entries that match the following forms:

URI Scheme	Example(s)
http:// <fqdn ip="" or="">[:<port>][/path]</port></fqdn>	http://www.example.com, http://www.example.com:80, http://www.example.com/myapp, http://www.example.com:80/myapp, http://192.0.2.0, http://192.0.2.0:80, http://192.0.2.0/myapp, http://192.0.2.0:80/myapp
https:// <fqdn ip="" or="">[:<port>][/path]</port></fqdn>	https://www.example.com, https://www.example.com:443, https://www.example.com/myapp, https://www.example.com:443/myapp, https://192.0.2.0, https://192.0.2.0:443, https://192.0.2.0/myapp, https://192.0.2.0:443/myapp
tcp:// <fqdn ip="" or="">[:<port>], tcp://<fqdn or<br="">IP>[:<port1,port2>], tcp://<fqdn ip="" or=""> [:<porta-portb>], tcp://<fqdn ip="" or="">[:*]</fqdn></porta-portb></fqdn></port1,port2></fqdn></port></fqdn>	tcp://example.com, tcp://example.com:21, tcp://192.0.2.0, tcp://192.0.2.0:1-65535, tcp://192.0.2.0:80,443, tcp://192.0.2.0:*
udp:// <fqdn ip="" or="">[:<port>], udp://<fqdn or<br="">IP>[:<port1,port2>], udp://<fqdn ip="" or=""></fqdn></port1,port2></fqdn></port></fqdn>	udp://example.com, udp://example.com:69, udp://192.0.2.0, udp://192.0.2.0:1-65535,

Application Details

URI Scheme	Example(s)	
[: <porta-portb>], udp://<fqdn ip="" or="">[:*]</fqdn></porta-portb>	udp://192.0.2.0:161,162, udp://192.0.2.0:*	
ssh:// <fqdn ip="" or="">[:<port>]</port></fqdn>	ssh://example.com, ssh://example.com:22, ssh://192.0.2.0, ssh://192.0.2.0:22	
rdp:// <fqdn ip="" or="">[:<port>]</port></fqdn>	rdp://example.com, rdp://example.com:3389, rdp://192.0.2.0, rdp://192.0.2.0:3389	
ica:// <fqdn ip="" or=""></fqdn>	ica://example.com, ica://192.0.2.0	
<fqdn>:<port></port></fqdn>	www.example.com:9090	
<fqdn>:<port1>,<port2>[,]</port2></port1></fqdn>	www.example.com:9090,9091,9092	
<fqdn>:<porta>-<portb></portb></porta></fqdn>	www.example.com:9090-9099	
<fqdn>:*</fqdn>	www.example.com:*	
<ip address="" block="" subnet="" with=""></ip>	192.0.2.0/8, 192.0.2.0/255.0.0.0	
<ip address="">[/<subnet>]</subnet></ip>	192.0.2.1, 192.0.2.1/32, 192.0.2.1/255.255.255.255	



IPv6 addresses are not supported when defining application details

- The access type. This is one of the following types:
 - Application-level: Defines an on-premise or cloud application.
 - *SAML*: Defines a trusted connection between *nZTA* and the application, suitable for SaaS applications.

When using SAML authentication with an application group, make sure you add to a single application group only those applications that use the same SAML authentication source.

For simple application access, you specify the full FQDN, URI or IP address at which the application is accessed. In some cases, you might have multiple applications available at a single primary domain, the full set of which might be unknown to the administrator configuring your *nZTA* service, particularly with SaaS applications. Instead of locating and defining each of these applications individually, you can create a single application definition based on a wildcard-prefixed FQDN (for example, "*.example.com") and instruct *nZTA* to employ *application discovery* on that domain. The method means that a single secure access policy can handle access to all applications *discovered* at the domain.

nZTA records analytics and metrics for all discovered applications. To learn more about how to track usage, see <u>Reviewing Application Usage</u>.

To learn more about the process of creating applications and application groups, see <u>Adding</u> <u>Applications to the Controller</u>.

Defining an On-Premise Application

Before configuring *nZTA* to publish your resource, make sure the resource is accessible from the *nZTA Gateway* you want to use for controlling access. You should obtain the FQDN of the endpoint at which the resource is visible.

nZTA additionally requires a name, description, and icon to represent the resource.

Defining a SaaS Application

The *Controller* uses SAML to provide a secure connection to a SaaS resource. In this scenario, *nZTA* acts as a SAML Identity Provider (IdP), with the resource acting as the SAML Service Provider (SP). To learn more about using SAML, see <u>SAML Authentication</u>.

By selecting SAML as the application access type, the Tenant Admin Portal provides the ability to download the IdP metadata file for uploading to the application SP configuration. This action, in turn, should elicit a SP metadata file for uploading back to *nZTA*.

Defining User Rules and User Rule Groups

A secure access policy links to the same user rule groups as described during the process of configuring user authentication. You create access rules for your enterprise user base and add these rules to a corresponding rule group. You then select a user rule group during the creation of your secure access policy.

For more information, see Defining User Authentication Rules and Groups.

To learn more about the process of defining user rules and rule groups, see <u>Creating User Rules and</u> <u>User Groups</u>.

Creating Device Policies and Device Policy Rules

Device policies define the minimum standard a device must meet to be considered compliant with *nZTA*.

Examples of compliance include:

- All client devices, desktop or mobile, must have anti-virus software installed and enabled.
- A specific application might function securely only on devices using a minimum viable Operating System version.
- Application access on client devices should be restricted to a defined browser type and minimum version.
- Application access should be restricted to a pre-determined range of authorized client device IP addresses.

You create individual device policy through the Tenant Admin Portal and then create / associate device rules to them. As you move on to define your secure access policy, you select a device policy that should be enforced for the selected application, users, and *nZTA Gateway*.

nZTA includes the following built-in device policies:

- For McAfee AntiVirus (Windows/Mac):
 - McAfeeAVHigh: This is a high strictness policy designed to ensure devices have anti-virus software installed and active, with a virus signature database not more than 2 days old, and a full system scan having been performed. This policy is attached to the built-in McAfeeAntiVirusHigh device rule.
 - McAfeeAVMedium: This is a moderate strictness policy designed to ensure devices have anti-virus software installed and active, with a virus signature database not more than 10 days old. This policy is attached to the built-in McAfeeAntiVirusMedium device rule.
 - McAfeeAVLow: This is a low strictness policy designed to ensure devices have anti-virus software installed and active. This policy is attached to the built-in McAfeeAntiVirusLow device rule.

- For Symantec AntiVirus (Windows/Mac):
 - SymantecAVHigh: This is a high strictness policy designed to ensure devices have anti-virus software installed and active, with a virus signature database not more than 2 days old, and a full system scan having been performed. This policy is attached to the built-in SymantecAntiVirusHigh device rule.
 - **SymantecAVMedium**: This is a moderate strictness policy designed to ensure devices have anti-virus software installed and active, with a virus signature database not more than 10 days old. This policy is attached to the built-in **SymantecAntiVirusMedium** device rule.
 - SymantecAVLow: This is a low strictness policy designed to ensure devices have anti-virus software installed and active. This policy is attached to the built-in SymantecAntiVirusLow device rule.
- For TrendMicro AntiVirus (Windows/Mac):
 - TrendMicroAVHigh: This is a high strictness policy rule designed to ensure devices have anti-virus software installed and active, with a virus signature database not more than 2 days old, and a full system scan having been performed. This policy is attached to the built-in TrendMicroAntiVirusHigh device rule.
 - **TrendMicroAVMedium**: This is a moderate strictness policy rule designed to ensure devices have anti-virus software installed and active, with a virus signature database not more than 10 days old. This policy is attached to the built-in **TrendMicroAntiVirusMedium** device rule.
 - **TrendMicroAVLow**: This is a low strictness policy rule designed to ensure devices have anti-virus software installed and active. This policy is attached to the built-in **TrendMicroAntiVirusLow** device rule.
- For device modification testing:
 - AndroidRootRulePolicy: This policy is designed to ensure that an Android device has not been rooted. This policy is attached to the built-in AndroidRootRule device rule.
 - IOSJailBreakRulePolicy: This policy is designed to ensure that an iOS device is not subject to a jailbreak. This policy is attached to the built-in IOSJailBreakRule device rule.

- For risk-based vulnerability:
 - **RiskSenseCriticalNotify**: This policy adds robust risk-based vulnerability prioritization and remediation capabilities to Ivanti Neurons for Patch Intelligence. This policy is attached to the built-in **RiskSenseCriticalNotifyRule** device rule.

You can create additional device policies to match the applications used by your organization. You then associate device policies with your secure access policies as required.

Policy Type	Description		
Antispyware	Checks compliance to designated anti-spyware requirements.		
Antivirus	Checks compliance to designated anti-virus requirements.		
CVE check	Checks for protection against a list of publicly disclosed Common Vulnerability and Exposure (CVE) notices (Windows client devices only).		
Command	Runs a command on the client device to check against an expected value (macOS client devices only).		
File	Checks for the existence of a known file on the client.		
Firewall	Checks compliance to designated firewall requirements.		
Location	Checks the client device's geographic location matches, or avoids, a list of defined locations.		
Hard Disk Encryption	If encryption software is installed on the client device, this rule type checks the device's hard disks for applied encryption.		
Mac Address	Checks the client device's MAC address.		
Netbios	Checks the client device's Netbios domain name.		
Network	Checks the client device complies with a defined IP address and netmask range.		
OS	Checks the client device's Operating System meets a defined minimum standard.		
Process	Checks for the existence of a known process on the client.		
Port	Checks the client device's network interface ports.		
Patch Management	If patch management software is installed on a client device, this rule type checks for the existence of missing software patches.		

Policies can be based on the following types:

Policy Type	Description		
Registry Checks for a value in a registry key (Windows client devices only).			
Risk Sense	Supports Allow access, Block access and Notify based on the risk level.		
Time of day	Checks resource access requests against compliance with a time-based access schedule.		
System Integrity	Checks the system integrity of the client device (macOS client devices only).		

Enrolling a User Device

To use *nZTA*-controlled resources, end users must first enroll their devices with the *Controller*. This process installs or updates the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* software and establishes a connection to the *Controller* in order to obtain policies and details for a user's authorized resources. *Ivanti Secure Access Client* uses this configuration to establish a secure connection to the *nZTA Gateways* you deploy to control access to your applications. Through this process, the user is provided a seamless connection to the resources they need and is never aware of the location or extent of the organization's application infrastructure.



For security reasons, only the authorized user account used to enroll a device is subsequently permitted to sign-in to *nZTA* on that device.

A new user might arrive at this scenario from one of the following routes:

- An existing Pulse Secure or *Ivanti* user, with a previous *Ivanti Secure Access Client* connection to Ivanti Connect Secure (ICS) or similar, see Existing ICS Users.
- A first time *nZTA* user, with no previous Pulse Secure or *Ivanti* software installed, see <u>First Time</u> <u>Users</u>.
- An existing *nZTA* user enrolling a new device, or upgrading a previous version of *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, see Existing nZTA Users.

To learn more about the processes of enrolling supported mobile and desktop clients, and to see how an admin can manage the list of enrolled devices, see Enrolling Mobile/Desktop Clients.

To learn more about using mobile and desktop clients with *nZTA*, see <u>Using Ivanti Secure Access Client</u> with nZTA and Enrolling Mobile/Desktop Clients.

Existing ICS Users

Your users might have a previous version of *Ivanti Secure Access Client* installed if, for example, they are existing ICS users.

To enroll existing ICS users into *nZTA*, a ICS administrator must first push out the *nZTA*-ready edition of the client software to the user base. An admin uploads the new client software to the ICS server and activates the *nZTA*-ready version of *Ivanti Secure Access Client* from the ICS management console in the same way as any other version. This process ensures that when your users next activate a *Ivanti Secure Access Client* connection to the server, their device is prompted to download and install the new version.

For more details on this process, see the Ivanti Connect Secure documentation at <u>https://help.ivanti.com</u>.

After the new *nZTA*-ready version of *Ivanti Secure Access Client* is installed, the user can configure a *nZTA* connection using the same process used for other, existing, connections. To create a *nZTA* connection, compatible *Ivanti Secure Access Client* versions offer a specific connection type: "**Zero Trust Access**".

The tenant admin must then supply the *access URL* specified in the relevant user sign-in authentication policy to their users to create the new *nZTA* connection. To learn more about authentication policies, see <u>Using User Authentication Policies</u>.

First Time Users

When enrolling a new device on which no previous *Ivanti Secure Access Client* is installed, an authorized user contacts the *Controller* through the access URL of a *user sign-in authentication policy* to activate an initial first-time enrollment of their client device. The *Controller* responds to a valid enrollment request by activating a download of *Ivanti Secure Access Client* along with a suitable client certificate.

After *Ivanti Secure Access Client* is installed, a secure connection request is attempted with the *Controller*. The request is validated against the designated authentication policy applicable to that combination of user and device and, where successful, a connection profile is downloaded to the client. This profile enables *Ivanti Secure Access Client* to set up a secure tunnel directly to the *nZTA Gateway* serving the resource set the client is authorized to view.

Existing *nZTA* Users

Existing *nZTA* users enrolling a new device follow the same procedures described for a first time user, but based on the additional conditions noted here.

The access URL to which you connect for enrollment depends on the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* version installed on the device:

- For *Ivanti Secure Access Client* versions defined as recommended for *nZTA* 21.9.2 or later, or for browser-based enrollment, you enroll a device by connecting directly to the access URL in a **user sign-in** policy. You do not connect to the **enrollment** policy directly (enrollment policies are linked to sign-in policies to handle the case where a connecting device is not yet enrolled).
- For *Ivanti Secure Access Client* versions earlier than those recommended for *nZTA* 21.9.2, you enroll a device by connecting to the access URL in an **enrollment** policy. Thereafter, enrolled devices connect to the access URL in your default **user sign-in** policy.

For details of recommended and supported *Ivanti Secure Access Client* versions, see the *nSA Controller Release Notes*.

After you have enrolled the new device, *Ivanti Secure Access Client* is installed and configured with the policies and settings relevant to the device type. Your application and resource access rights should be duplicated to the new device.



Ð

If a user device is currently using a Beta version of the *nZTA*-ready *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, *Ivanti* advises to remove the *nZTA* connection from *Ivanti Secure Access Client* and to reperform the enrollment procedure through a web browser. For more details, see your support representative.

Summary of Steps to Configure Your *nZTA* Deployment

The remainder of this guide describes each of the processes you need to follow to fully configure your *nZTA* deployment.

In summary, the main steps are as follows:

- 1. Log in to the *nZTA* Tenant Admin portal
- 2. Create and deploy your *nZTA Gateways*
- 3. Define your user authentication methods and policies
- 4. Define your user rules and user groups
- 5. Define your device policies and policy groups
- 6. Define your applications and application groups
- 7. Create your complete secure access policy.

The remainder of this guide describes each of these steps in detail.

This guide also provides guidance on client device enrollment (see "Enrolling Ivanti Secure Access Client" on page 622), usage (see <u>Using Ivanti Secure Access Client with nZTA</u>), and a description of the tools you can use to monitor your *nZTA* services (see <u>Using the Insights Menu to Monitor User Activity</u> and Service Usage).

Logging in as a Tenant Administrator

- Preparing to Login
- Logging into the Controller as a Tenant Admin
- Logging out of the Controller

Preparing to Login

As a Tenant Admin, you can configure *Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access (nZTA*) to support the Gateways, users, devices, policies and resources that are required for your organization's *nZTA* implementation.

To log into the Controller, you require a Tenant Admin login.

All Tenant Admin accounts are set up by the *Ivanti* DevOps team. Once your Tenant Admin account has been created, you will receive an email which describes how to log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin.

You can then proceed to login to the Controller, see Logging into the Controller as a Tenant Admin.

Logging into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin

Before you can log in as a Tenant Admin, you will receive an email from the *lvanti* DevOps team. This email contains:

- Your Tenant Admin user name.
- Your password.
- The *nZTA* domain. That is, the FQDN of the *Controller*.
- A hyperlink to start the login process.

To log into your Tenant Admin account:

1. Click the hyperlink in your email.

The administrator login page appears.

ivanti ⁿ ivanti neurons for secure access		
	WELCOME TO IVANTI NEURONS FOR SECURE ACCESS	
	Sign In	0
	USERNAME	0 ~
	PASSWORD	
	FORGOT PASSWORD ?	0 .
	Sign In	
	Note: This is the Administrator Sign-In Page.	Copyright © 2024, Ivanti. All rights reserved.

Tenant Admin Login Page

2. Log in using your supplied Tenant Admin credentials.

The following default timeouts are used for all Admin sessions:

- The idle timeout is 10 minutes.
- The session timeout is 60 minutes.

To configure Admin session timeout values, see Configuring Session Timeouts.

3. If *nZTA* requests it, specify a new password for your account.

Once this procedure is complete, you access the *nZTA* graphical interface as an admin user.

The graphical user elements that appear depend on your configured state.

- When you log in for the first time, and until *nZTA* is minimally configured, a **Welcome** dialog appears, which leads to the **Secure Access Setup** (Onboarding) wizard. See <u>Working with the</u> Onboarding Wizard.
- When you log into a configured system, the *nZTA* **Network Overview** page appears, see <u>Viewing the nZTA Network Overview</u>.



To reset a forgotten password, click **FORGOT PASSWORD**. This link presents a credentials form through which you enter a Username and Email address. If the entered credentials match a registered administrator account, *nZTA* emails a password reset link to the entered address allowing the recipient to create a new password.

Working with the Onboarding Wizard

When you log in for the first time, and until *nZTA* is a configured system, a **Welcome** dialog appears. To proceed, select **Configure Now**.

The first step enables you to configure a custom domain for this subscription:

A	Configure domain Get Started by adding custom domain.you can always add a custom domain later.learn more aboutcreate custom domain here				
Currently Config	gured to				
Domain Nar	ne	Туре			
docstenant.	dog.pzt.dev.perfsec.com	TLS			
docstenant.	docstenant.e.dog.pzt.dev.perfsec.com mTLS				
	Create Custom	1 Domain			
Remind me each time I log in					
To do this later, choose the 'Add a Custom Domain' workflow from the "Workflows" menu, top-right of the screen					
	Skip >				

Onboarding Wizard - configuring a custom domain

The current domain (in both TLS and mTLS form) is displayed, along with the option to configure a custom domain. To skip this step and continue using the default domain, select **Skip**.

To configure a custom domain, select **Create Custom Domain** to start the *Create Custom Domain* workflow. For more details on this workflow, see <u>Specifying a Custom Domain</u>.

After you have configured a custom domain, or if you chose to skip ahead, the **Secure Access Setup** (Onboarding) wizard appears.



The Secure Access Setup (Onboarding) Wizard

This wizard enables you to configure the required elements of *nZTA* using a number of pages and workflows:

• Add User Authentication Policy. This displays the User Policies page.

Local authentication policies are present by default, which can be used immediately.

If you choose to use the default local authentication policies, you can proceed directly to the **Add Gateway** step.

If you choose to create your own local authentication policies, or to immediately implement SAML authentication, these must be performed separately from the **Onboarding** wizard, see <u>Working with User Authentication</u>.

- Add Gateway. This displays the Gateway Network Configuration workflow, see <u>Working with</u> <u>Gateways</u>.
- Application Policies. This displays the Create Secure Access Policy workflow, see Creating
 Device Policies and Device Policy Rules.

As you complete each steps, the Setup Status indicates the percentage of Tasks that are complete.

After all tasks are complete, click **Go to Dashboard**.

0

You can also start the Onboarding wizard from the **Secure Access** > **Onboarding** menu option.

Viewing the *nZTA* Network Overview

After you log in to the Tenant Admin Portal following successful completion of the *Onboarding Wizard*, *nZTA* displays the **Network Overview** page. This page provides an overview of user and service activity across your enterprise.



The Network Overview Page



To return to this page any time, click the **Insights** menu icon in the *nZTA* menu and select **Overview**. Alternatively, click the banner at the top.

From this page, you can view and configure all functions and capabilities allowed through your subscription and role. Using the *nZTA* menu at the left-hand side, choose from:

• The **Show/Hide** menu icon, providing the ability to show or collapse the *nZTA* menu tree:

\odot

Showing or hiding the nZTA menu system

• The **Insights** menu icon, providing access to the analytics and monitoring components of the *nZTA* portal:



Accessing the Insight menu

To learn more about the functionality offered by this menu, see <u>Using the Insights Menu to</u> Monitor User Activity and Service Usage.

• The **Secure Access** menu icon, providing access to configure the individual components that comprise your *Secure Access Policies*:



Accessing the Secure Access menu

• The **Administration** menu icon, providing access to administrative functions related to your *nZTA* subscription:



Accessing the Administration menu

The chapters in this guide cover each of these functions in detail.

Changing the UI Theme

nZTA offers two themes for your UI display:

• Light theme:



The Network Overview Page - light theme

• Dark theme:



The Network Overview Page - dark theme

To change the current theme, which remains in place through subsequent logins, use the **Settings** menu:

Settings	×
Color Scheme Choose the color mode for the app	^
● Light ○ Dark	
• Timezone Set Timezone	^
CHOOSE TIMEZONE (UTC) Coordinated Universal Time	
CANCEL	PPLY

Changing the UI theme

Through the Color Scheme panel (indicated), click Light or Dark to switch between themes.

Setting the Timezone

To configure the default timezone for this admin login account, use the **Settings** menu:

Settings	×
 Color Scheme Choose the color mode for the app Import the appendix of t	^
 ♥ Timezone Set Timezone CHOOSE TIMEZONE (UTC+05:30) Chennai, Mumbai, New D CANCEL 	PPLY

Configuring the default timezone

Choose a timezone in the provided drop-down selector, then click **Apply**.

The configured timezone affects the display of data on all **Insights** pages, and each admin login account within a tenant deployment has their own specific timezone configuration. Changes to the timezone persist across login sessions, and the default setting is *UTC (Coordinated Universal Time)*.

The current timezone can be observed through the date-time selector at the top of each **Insights** page.



Changing the timezone can affect the data displayed in each chart or graph. For example, a recently-observed non-compliance event involving a client device in the GMT timezone that appears in the *Last Hour* view (when using GMT (UTC + 00:00) as your configured timezone) might then only appear in the *Last X Hours* view when you switch your timezone to IST (UTC+05:30).

Configuring Session Timeouts

To configure timeout values for admin and user sessions, use the Settings menu:

Settings	×
Color Scheme Choose the color mode for	r the app
Light	O Dark
() Timezone Set Timezone	^
CHOOSE TIMEZONE (UTC) Coordinated Univ	ersal Time 💙
⑦ Session Settings Timeout Handling Admin	^
IDLE TIMEOUT 10 User	60
60	MAX SESSION LENG
	CANCEL

Configuring timeout values for admin and user sessions

Through the Session Settings panel (indicated), you can set the following timeout values:

• Admin Idle Timeout: the time, in minutes, after which the admin login session to the Tenant Admin Portal times out due to inactivity. (default: 10)

- Admin Max Session Length: the time, in minutes, after which the admin login session to the Tenant Admin Portal ends and must be re-authenticated. (default: 60)
- **User Idle Timeout**: the time, in minutes, after which the user login session to *nZTA* times out due to inactivity. (default: 60)
- User Max Session Length: the time, in minutes, after which the login session to *nZTA* ends and must be re-authenticated. (default: 720)

To apply your changes, click **APPLY**.

0

To use these settings, your configured *nZTA Gateways* must all meet minimum version requirements for session control. *nZTA* disables the panel and displays a warning message if this is not the case.



To learn more about user sessions and the effect of configured timeouts, see <u>Using Ivanti</u> <u>Secure Access Client with nZTA</u>.

Resetting All Filters and Selections

Each page in the *Insights* menu allows data filtering, enabling you to observe and monitor only the analytics and log data you want. Each filter or selection feature includes its own *reset to default value* option. To learn more about the *Insights* menu and the analytics capabilities of *nZTA*, see <u>Using the</u> Insights Menu to Monitor User Activity and Service Usage.

Should you want to reset all filters and data selection criteria across the Tenant Admin Portal in one go, use the **Settings** menu:



Resetting all filters and data selection criteria across the Tenant Admin Portal

Through the **Filter Reset** panel, you can remove all filters and data selection criteria immediately, returning each page to its default view. Each admin user stores filters and selections separately, so this function affects the current user only.

To activate, enable Set Filters to default, then select APPLY.

Logging out of the *Controller*

To log out of the *nZTA* Tenant Admin Portal and end the current session, click the *Profile* icon and select **Logout**.

ຳ	₽	Ø	0	°
		Change	Passv	vord
		Logout		

Specifying a Custom Domain

- Introduction
- <u>Configuring a Custom Domain</u>
- <u>Checking the Configured Domain</u>

Introduction

Your *Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access (nZTA*) tenant subscription is deployed, by default, as a unique Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) provided by *Ivanti* - typically at **pulsezta.net**. Enrollment and sign-in endpoints are configured at this FQDN through *user authentication policies* and provided to end-users in a welcome email. To learn more about user authentication, see <u>Defining User</u> <u>Authentication</u>.

A FQDN is reserved for a specific tenant and remains deployed for the duration of the subscription.

Should you require it, you can provision a custom domain to be used in place of the *Ivanti*-provided domain. In this scenario, you set up the custom domain within your own DNS infrastructure, pointing to the IP address of your standard *Ivanti* tenant domain. Through this mechanism, you can advertise the FQDN of your *nZTA* service as appearing to originate within your own organizational network. For example, where your company domain might be **www.example.com**, you can configure *nZTA* at **zta.example.com**.

With an active custom domain:

- All end-users see your *nZTA* service as originating at the new domain (such as zta.example.com), and enroll or sign-in their devices at endpoints based on that URL.
- When you add Gateways, their hostnames also reside in this domain. The *Controller* automatically manages DNS and certificates for all Gateways configured in your *nZTA* service.
- Tenant admins use the Admin Portal based at the custom domain. However, as an emergency backup, access to the standard domain at **pulsezta.net** remains available.
- Custom domain support is a change to the server-side hostnames and certificates used by the *Controller* and your Gateways. Your end-user client certificates are unaffected.

IMPORTANT: It is essential to determine whether a custom domain is required at the outset of your subscription, and particularly before you have deployed any Gateways or enrolled any users.

Custom domain usage is contingent on the following restrictions:

- Once configured, a custom domain cannot be removed from a tenant subscription. Consider carefully if you want to enable this feature.
- If you want to add a custom domain to a subscription that uses (or plans to use) an enterprise-provided Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) (see <u>Using an Existing Enterprise PKI</u>), you must configure all enterprise-provided certificates before you configure the custom domain. Failure to follow this order of configuration can result in the *Controller* becoming unresponsive.
- In this scenario, enterprise PKI configured tenant subscriptions can not be reconfigured to become non-PKI subscriptions.
- Custom domains require at least one server certificate. If you later need to delete the certificate, make sure you have a replacement ready to upload.

You configure a custom domain during the *Onboarding Wizard*, or at a later time through the Tenant Admin portal.

For more details concerning the Onboarding Wizard, see Working with the Onboarding Wizard.



Configuring a Custom Domain

A custom domain is configured through any of the following routes:

- From a link in the Onboarding Wizard.
- Through the *Create Custom Domain* workflow, accessed through the Workflows menu icon in the title bar.
- Through the Administration > Enterprise Integrations > Custom Domains page.

Typically, a custom domain is configured at the point a new *nZTA* subscription starts, through the Onboarding Wizard. The link provided in the wizard triggers the *Create Custom Domain* workflow, which is described here. The *Create Custom Domain* workflow enables you to define the custom domain for your *nZTA* service, together with uploading the necessary server certificates for that domain.

Before you begin, make sure you have the full public TLS server certificate chain and private key files, in PEM or PKCS#12 format, for your proposed domain.

To configure a custom domain, perform the following steps:

- User Authentication Create Secure Access Policy Create Custom Domain Starting the Create Custom Domain workflow
- 1. Select the *Workflows* icon, then select **Create Custom Domain**:

This starts step 1 of the Create Custom Domain workflow.
2. Enter the domain name you want to use in the field provided:



Using the Create Custom Domain workflow - step 1

After you enter your domain, *nZTA* populates the mTLS domain field automatically. This domain is predetermined based on your entered domain name and is read-only. For example, if you enter "zta.example.com" as your custom domain, the mTLS domain automatically becomes "e.zta.example.com".

To continue, select Next.

3. In this step, you import the TLS server certificate chain applicable to your domain (or *certificate chains*, where TLS and mTLS domains use separate certificates):

Create Custom Domain	Create Custom Domain The Create Custom Domain guides you through the process of Creating a Custom Domain
Complete all the steps below Configuration 25%	2. Import Certificates Select the type of certficate to import an existing certificate and its corresponding private
STEPS Enter Custom Domain Details Import Certificates Summary	the files are encrypted, you will also need to specify the password. Import Certificates Select the type of certificate to import an existing certificate and its corresponding private key. If the files are encrypted, you will also need to specify the password. CERTIFICATE TYPE Choose your option
Activate Domain	Certificates 0 certificates matching the domain name found Delete Certificate Certificate Serial Non MTLS MTLS Valid Dates
	No certificate available Back Next Cancel

Using the Create Custom Domain workflow - step 2

For **Certificate Type**, choose one of the following options:

- **Custom Domain with embedded private key**: Use this option to upload a certificate file that includes an embedded private key.
- **Custom Domain with separate private key**: Use this option to upload a separate certificate file and private key file.

For encrypted certificates, enter your **Password** in the field provided. Then, add your **Certificate File** (and **Private Key File** where applicable) (in PEM or PKCS#12 format) into the fields provided. To upload your files, select **Import Certificate**.

Uploaded certificate files are presented in the table for verification:

Certific 1 certificat	ates es matching the domain n	ame found			Delete Certificate
	Certificate Subject CN	Certificate Serial	Non MTLS	MTLS	Valid Dates
	zta.run.com	zta.run.com	\odot	\odot	Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 G

Observing successfully uploaded server certificates

Repeat this step for every certificate you want to upload. Then, select **Next** to continue.

4. Verify the details you have provided:

Create Custom Domain	Create Custom Domain The Create Custom Domain guides you through the process of Creating a Custom Domain
Complete all the steps below Configuration 50%	 Summary Preview the details entered for this Custom Domain and Activate. You can always go back to before activation.
STEPS	
Enter Custom Domain Details	1. Domain Details
Import Certificates	Status Domain Name mTLS Domain Name Inactive zta.run.com e.zta.run.com
Summary >	
Activate Domain	2. Certificates Imported Certificates
	I ceruncates matching the domain name round
	Certificate Subject CN Certificate Serial Non MTLS Valid Dates
	zta.run.com Zta.run.com 🥥 🚫 Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33
	Back Next Cancel

Using the Create Custom Domain workflow - step 3

To continue, select Next.

5. Activate the domain:



Using the Create Custom Domain workflow - step 4

Select **Finish** to complete the configuration and activate your custom domain. Through this action, your new domain becomes active, and the original *Ivanti*-provisioned domain is marked inactive.

Checking the Configured Domain

To view the currently configured domain details for your subscription, use the **Administration** > **Enterprise Integrations** > **Custom Domain** menu. This presents the *Custom Domain* page:

Custom Domain	
Domain	
DOMAIN	STATUS
> docstenant.dog.pzt.dev.perfsec.com	Inactive
> zta.run.com	 Active

Viewing the Domains for your Subscription

Through this page, you can:

- View the currently active and inactive domains.
- Add a custom domain, where one is not currently defined. To learn more about the process of adding a custom domain, see <u>Configuring a Custom Domain</u>.
- Select the arrow icon adjacent to a domain to view the TLS and mTLS domains defined for that entry, including the server certificate expiry details if applicable.
- Select the name of a custom domain to view or modify the applied server certificates.

When you select a domain, a detail page is presented showing the current status and certificate usage for the domain:

ummar	ry 🛈					
atus	Domain Name	mTLS Domain Nam	ne			
Active	zta.run.com	e.zta.run.com				
nport (Certificates					
elect the so need t	type of certificate to impor to specify the password.	rt an existing certificate and	d its corr	esponding	private key. If the files are encrypted, you will	
CERTIFICAT	TE TYPE					
Choose	e your option	~				
ertifica certificat	ates tes matching the domain n	ame found				
ertifica certificat	ates tes matching the domain n Certificate Subject CN	ame found Certificate Serial	Non MTLS	MTLS	Valid Dates	
ertificat	ates tes matching the domain n Certificate Subject CN o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	ame found Certificate Serial o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	Non MTLS	MTLS	Valid Dates Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 GMT	
	ates tes matching the domain n Certificate Subject CN o=none, ou=none, cn=zta. o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	ame found Certificate Serial o=none, ou=none, cn=zta. o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	Non MTLS	MTLS ©	Valid Dates Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 GMT Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 GMT	
ertificat	ates tes matching the domain na Certificate Subject CN o=none, ou=none, cn=zta. o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	ame found Certificate Serial o=none, ou=none, cn=zta. o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	Non MTLS	MTLS ② ③	Valid Dates Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 GMT Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 GMT	
ertifica certificat	ates tes matching the domain na Certificate Subject CN o=none, ou=none, cn=zta. o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	ame found Certificate Serial o=none, ou=none, cn=zta. o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	Non MTLS O	MTLS \bigcirc	Valid Dates Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 GMT Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 GMT	
ertifica certificat	ates tes matching the domain n Certificate Subject CN o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	ame found Certificate Serial o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	Non MTLS ()	MTLS \bigcirc \bigcirc	Valid Dates Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 GMT Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 GMT	
	ates tes matching the domain na Certificate Subject CN o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	ame found Certificate Serial o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	Non MTLS	MTLS ©	Valid Dates Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 GMT Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 GMT	
ertifica certificat	ates tes matching the domain na Certificate Subject CN o=none, ou=none, cn=zta. o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	ame found Certificate Serial o=none, ou=none, cn=zta. o=none, ou=none, cn=zta.	Non MTLS	MTLS ©	Valid Dates Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 GMT Mon, 13 Jun 2022 14:33:02 GMT To Sun, 11 Sep 2022 14:33:01 GMT	

Viewing the Settings for a Domain

For currently applied certificates, select a **Certificate Subject CN** entry to view a dialog containing the certificate parameters.

To add a server certificate, use the **Certificate Type** field. Choose one of the following options:

- **Custom Domain with embedded private key**: Use this option to upload a certificate file that includes an embedded private key.
- **Custom Domain with separate private key**: Use this option to upload a separate certificate file and private key file.



Make sure you are adding the full public TLS server certificate chain and private key applicable to your custom domain.

Then, add your **Certificate File** (and **Private Key File** where applicable) (in PEM or PKCS#12 format) into the fields provided. To upload your files, select **Import Certificate**.

For encrypted certificates, enter your **Password** in the field provided.

To remove a certificate, select a checkbox adjacent to an uploaded certificate in the table, then select **Delete Certificate**.

To save your changes, select **Update**.

A

Using the Insights Menu to Monitor User Activity and Service Usage

Introduction

- "Consolidated Landing Page" on page 83
- <u>Reviewing Your Network Activity</u>
- Reviewing User Activity
- Showing Activity for a Specific User
- <u>Viewing and Terminating User Sessions</u>
- <u>Reviewing Application Usage</u>
- Showing Usage Data for a Specific Application
- "Viewing Currently Enrolled User Devices" on page 161
- Monitoring nZTA Gateway Activity
- Reviewing Policy Failures
- Checking the Logs
- <u>Actions</u>
- <u>Reports</u>
- Viewing Alerts and Notifications

Introduction

Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access (nZTA) provides visibility of user activity and service usage across your enterprise through network activity analytics, gateway performance graphs, application usage metrics, and stored activity logs.

Through the *nZTA* menu, use the **Insights** menu icon to:

• View the common analytics charts/tables of nZTA and nSA on a new unified landing page, see "Consolidated Landing Page" on page 83.

- View a top-down overview of your application infrastructure, providing an opportunity to monitor user and nZTA Gateway activity, and to identify problems and compliance issues as they occur, see "Reviewing Your Network Activity" on page 86
- View graphs, metrics, and logs concerning user activity, see Reviewing User Activity.
- See details and usage of applications configured in your *nZTA* service, see <u>Reviewing Application</u> <u>Usage</u>.
- Monitor nZTA Gateway activity, see Monitoring nZTA Gateway Activity.
- Review policy failures, see <u>Reviewing Policy Failures</u>.
- View activity logs, see Checking the Logs.
- Configure actionable insights, see <u>Actions</u>.
- Obtain reports of activity and usage across your services, see <u>Reports</u>.
- View events and notifications, see Viewing Alerts and Notifications.



İ.

nZTA provides both a light theme and a dark theme for the UI display. To learn more, see Changing the UI Theme.

No analytics data will be displayed on any dashboards when nZTA Gateway is bypassed.

Using Filters and Selectors to Monitor Specific Services

Each page in the *Insights* menu allows data filtering through the filter bar (see <u>Using the Filter Bar</u>), enabling you to observe and monitor only the analytics and log data you want. Filters fall broadly into two categories, and are applied as applicable to the page you are viewing:

- *Summary page filters*: high-level filters and selectors such as time period and Gateway, user, or application, that apply across both summary and detail *insights* pages. Filters applied here can affect the data on all *Insights* pages that you visit. For example, the same selected time period remains in place across every page.
- Detail page filters: filters that are applied at a chart detail page view that are applied to the log data constituting the chart being interrogated. For more details, see <u>Viewing Detailed Logs for a</u> <u>Chart</u>.



The **Logs** page uses a separate time period selection filter from other *Insights* pages. A time period selected here is not applied elsewhere, and vice versa, yet is retained across login sessions in the same way.

Filters and selection criteria are persistent across all relevant *Insights* pages, and are retained across login sessions. When you log back in, the same selection criteria remain applied. Settings are stored per admin user, such that each admin maintains their own view of the analytics data.

You can remove applied filters and return to the default setting through the *reset* option in most filter controls. For example:



Resetting your selected time period filter (indicated) back to the default "Last Hour" active data view

Or in the case of each chart detail or log page, the log filter bar typically includes a reset icon. For example:

± 000	SEARCH	Q	₫	۲	
			_	-	

Using the Reset icon (indicated) to reset log filters to their default state

Information on the filters and data selection options available on each page is provided throughout this guide. Refer to the page-specific help and documentation for more details.

To perform a global reset of all applied filters and selection criteria on all pages, in a single action, use the **Settings** menu *Reset Filters* option. To learn more, see <u>Resetting All Filters and Selections</u>.

Consolidated Landing Page

After you log in to the Tenant Admin Portal following successful completion of the *Onboarding Wizard*, *nZTA* displays the **Home** page. This page presents the common analytics charts/tables and sankey chart of nZTA and nSA on a new unified landing page. Use the drop-down selection option to view nZTA only, ICS only, or nZTA+ICS charts.



Understanding the Display

The primary components of the My Home page are the following:

 Filter bar, allowing the selection of active or historic data. For details, see "Using the Filter Bar" on page 88. Summary ribbon, showing totals for active Users, Devices, Gateways, Applications and Non Compliances. Click on numbers which opens table view. In the table view, click the appropriate button to navigate to the respective analytics page, for example click on Go to ZTA Gateways opens Gateways Overview page.

Active Gate	eways				×
Go to ZTA Gateways	Go to ICS Gateway		Searc	h	
GATEWAY NAME 1	GATEWAY LOCATION 1	USER NAME 1	APPLICATION NAME 1	GATEWAY ID 🔶	
bngpcsgateway-1	NA		239.83.100.109	52dde87264784ab6	MORE 💠
playintegrity-194	India		proxy.safebrowsing	88245f9283244c41	MORE 💠
prodscript-gw	India		IDFresh_ProdScript	670bb32743a34b6f	MORE 🖨
securitydfs172	India		239.255.255.250	dde319d4995b4702	MORE 🖨
securitydfs189	India		224.0.0.252	920c5fec826b41f49	More 🖨
zta-dfs-bng	India		GitHub	bb0ff8fc0cb044b1a	More 🖨

- Bar Charts showing top usage data for Users, Applications and Devices.
- Radar Charts showing Devices by Location and Gateway Health.
- **Sankey Chart** showing the flow across Users, Devices, Gateways and Applications. It supports filtering based on selected entries such as User Group, Device Type, Gateway Name, and Application.

With each chart, click the **View Details** link or click on any bar in the chart or number beside the bar to view detailed log records for that category.

Applicatio	n Names				×
				Search	
	APPLICATION GROUP NAMES 1	SER NAME 1	APPLICATION PROTOC	COL 🔶 GATEWAY NAME 🔶	
10.204.48.209	NA		https	securitydfs189	MORE 🖨
10.204.48.235	NA		. https	securitydfs189	More 🖨
10.204.48.240	NA		. https	securitydfs189	More 💠
10.204.49.100	NA		ms-wbt-serve	r securitydfs189	
10.204.49.125	NA		. https	securitydfs189	More 💠
10.204.49.41	NA		. netbios-ns	securitydfs189	More 💠
10.204.49.43	NA		netbios-ns	securitydfs189	More 💠
10.204.50.126	NA		. https	bngpcsgateway-1	More 💠
10.204.50.13	NA		. https	securitydfs189	More 💠
10.204.50.136	NA		https	securitydfs189	More 牵
			Rows per	page: 10 🗸 1 - 10 of 1847 found	. < >

In this page:

- Where a specific data item in the event table is truncated due to the column width, hover your pointer over the item to view a tooltip containing a full-length description. You can also re-size the width of any column by dragging the column.
- Select the name of a column to apply a sort by that criteria. The adjacent arrow shows either ascending or descending sort order, or no sort select again to switch between each view.
- To move a column, click the header of the column and drag it to a desired new position.
- To copy a log's column content, double click on the column content and press ctrl-c. If the content has multiple words, for example log message column, then triple click and press ctrl-c. To paste the content elsewhere, press ctrl-v.

Reviewing Your Network Activity

The *Network Overview* page shows real-time analytics data for your application infrastructure, providing a one-page dashboard of activity across your organization.



An overview of Network activity across your enterprise

To access the Network Overview page:

1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.

The My Home page appears by default.

2. From the nZTA menu, click the Insights icon, then select Overview.

The Network Overview page appears.

3. To return to the *Network Overview* page at any time, select **Insights > Overview** from the lefthand menu. Alternatively, select the *Ivanti* banner at the top.

Understanding the Display

The primary components of the Network Overview page are the following:

- Filter bar, allowing the selection of active or historic data. For details, see Using the Filter Bar.
- Summary ribbon, showing totals for All Gateways, Active Gateways, Users, Devices, Applications, Compliance Failures, and Anomalies. For more details, see Using the Summary Ribbon.
- Switchable World Map and Sankey Chart views, showing active Gateway or user locations. Sankey chart view is the default view.
 - In the world map view, each indicated location provides a summary of the activity observed there. For more details, see Using the World Map.
 - In the Sankey chart view, you can view the relationships between user groups, device types, *nZTA Gateways*, and applications. For more details, see <u>Using the Sankey Chart</u> View.
- Radar charts, providing top usage data for Gateways, Applications, and User Locations. For more details, see Using the Top Active Breakdown Charts.
- Bar chart breakdowns showing Active Anomalies, Connected Clients Version, and Noncompliance activity. For more details, see "Using the Active Anomaly, Connected Clients Version, and Non-Compliance Charts" on page 107.



The data in this page refreshes automatically every 5 minutes.

With each chart, click the **View all** link to view a page of detailed log records for that category. To learn more about using the chart detail page, see Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart.

The following principles apply to all elements of the page:

- A user can have one or more devices.
- Each device can have only one active secure access session.
- One session can connect to multiple applications.
- One session can be associated with multiple *nZTA Gateways*.
- One *nZTA Gateway* can have multiple applications registered with it.
- One application instance can be registered with only one *nZTA Gateway*.

Using the Filter Bar

nZTA uses the top part of the display on all **Insights** data analysis pages to show the current page title, the selected time period and timezone, and options to:

- Select the date and time period for which data is displayed
- Manually refresh the data
- View analytics data for a selected user or application
- Filter analytics data by a selected *nZTA Gateway*

To learn more about how filters are applied in the Tenant Admin Portal, see <u>Using Filters and Selectors</u> to <u>Monitor Specific Services</u>.



To configure the default timezone for the data displayed in this admin login account, see <u>Setting the Timezone</u>.

By default, analytics data on all pages is shown for the last hour. To select a previous or specified time period, select the date-time display (indicated):

										06 07	:16 AN	023 Л	06 0	ct 202. 6 AM	³ GM	T 🛱
•	Active (Last hour)	From							Т	ō						
i	Last 8 hours Previous day	MOI OC	итн tober	\$		/EAR 2023		\$		MON	ітн tober	\$		YEAR 2023		\$
1	Previous week	Su	Мо	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa		Su	Mo	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa
	Custom	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		1	2	3	4	5	6	7
		8	9	10	11	12	13	14		8	9	10	11	12	13	14
		15	16	17	18	19	20	21		15	16	17	18	19	20	21
		22	23	24	25	26	27	28		22	23	24	25	26	27	28
		29	30	31	1	2	3	4		29	30	31	1	2	3	4
		HR 7				/IN 6		~		HR 8		~		///N 16		~
								RES	ET		C	ANC	EL		APF	ΈLΥ

Selecting a date and time range

In the date-time selection dialog, choose from the following predefined time period options:

- Last hour: Data observed for the previous 60 minutes.
- Last <X> hours: Data observed so far in the current day, up to the last hour (in GMT).
- Previous day: Data observed for the previous full day.
- **Previous Week**: Data observed for the previous calendar week (for the previous full Sunday-to-Saturday week).
- **Custom**: Data observed for a chosen time period. If you select this option, *nZTA* enables you to select a custom time period using the **From** and **To** date/time calendar controls.



The date/time calendar controls are enabled for only the **Custom** option. However, the calendar continues to identify the applicable start and end datetime for all predefined time periods.

To reset the selected time period back to the default (*Last Hour*) view, select **Reset**. To return to the current page without making any changes, select **Cancel**.

To apply your changes, select **Apply**. The selected time period is displayed in the filter bar and data across all **Insights** pages is updated accordingly.

The data in the display refreshes automatically at 5 minute intervals. To manually refresh the data, click the circular arrow:

J

Refreshing the data

nZTA provides the ability to show focused metrics for individual users or applications. To select a specific user or application, use the following icon:



Selecting a specific user or application

Then, from the drop-down menu, select one of the available options:

 Select Set User to view data for a selected user. In the search box provided, start typing a user ID. nZTA auto-completes any matching user IDs. Next, select View User.

The User Activity page appears. To learn more, see Showing Activity for a Specific User.

• Select **Set Application** to view usage metrics for a selected application. In the search box provided, start typing an application name. *nZTA* auto-completes any matching names. Next, select **View Application**.

The *Application* page appears. To learn more, see <u>Showing Usage Data for a Specific</u> Application.



i Ì

You can also access data for individual users or applications by selecting the name of a user or application from the corresponding info-panel, activated through the Summary Ribbon. For more details, see <u>Using the Summary Ribbon</u>.

nZTA also provides the ability to set a Gateway filter on all *Network Overview*, *User*, *Application*, and *Policy Failure* analytics pages in the *Insights* section. Applying a Gateway filter means that all dashboards are updated to show only activity relating to the chosen *nZTA Gateway*. In other words, *nZTA* shows only analytics for applications that were accessed from that specific *nZTA Gateway*, along with *nZTA Gateway* activity for users and devices being active in the selected time period. This filter is persistent across all pages, and remains in place for the duration of the current login session.

By default, the filter is inactive and shows data for All Gateways, as indicated in the title of all pages.

To set a Gateway filter, select the Gateway filter icon:



Filtering analytics data by nZTA Gateway

Then, from the Gateway selection panel, choose your nZTA Gateway from the drop-down list:

Filter	×
BY GATEWAY	^
Select A Gateway	~
demogw-82	
zta-dfs-bng	
zta-dfs-bng-back	
zta-dfsgw-sj	
CLEAR ALL APPL	Y

Using the Gateway filter panel

To set the Gateway filter, select Apply.

To remove a filter and return to viewing analytics for all gateways, select Clear All.



On detailed log pages for individual charts (see <u>Viewing Detailed Logs for a</u> <u>Chart</u>.) you cannot set a Gateway filter directly. Instead, set the Gateway filter on the parent page before you click through to the individual chart logs.

Using the Summary Ribbon

The Summary Ribbon at the top of the page shows data totals for the selected time filter:

13	8	9	14	31	73	21
ALL GATEWAYS	ACTIVE GATEWAYS	USERS	DEVICES	APPLICATIONS	NON-COMPLIANCES	ANOMALIES

Viewing the summary ribbon

The ribbon indicates the totals accrued for each category during the displayed time period, as indicated adjacent to the category name.

The following categories are provided in the ribbon:

- Total Number of Gateways (**All Gateways**). The count of all gateways added to the controller, regardless of their status (registered, unregistered, offline, or online).
 - Active View: Captures the count of gateways added on the controller.
 - **Historic View**: Captures the count of gateways from where the health status such as memory, CPU etc. are received in the selected timeframe.
- The number of **Active Gateways**. The count of gateways through which there is user traffic within the selected window, regardless of the current status of the notification channel.
- The number of active Users.
- The number of active **Devices**.
- The number of in-use Applications.
- The number of **Non-compliances**. In other words, non-compliant attempts to access your applications. For the default time period filter, non-compliance totals shown here are for 24 hours. For other selected time periods, the number reflect the total for that period.

• The number of **Anomalies** detected by *nZTA*. That is, the total number of geographic and business hours anomalies. For the default time period filter, anomaly totals shown here are for the previous 30 days, and include only unacknowledged anomalies. For other selected time periods, this total includes both acknowledged and unacknowledged anomalies.

Compliance and anomaly counters use the following color scheme to reflect status:

- Black: No geographic anomalies or compliance failures are reported
- Red:
 - Non-compliance: if the count is non-zero
 - Anomalies: if the count is non-zero

If you are currently viewing data for the *last hour*, each category in the ribbon includes a trend graph (highlighted, top) showing the changes in data during the hour. Also included is a change value (highlighted, bottom) based on the previous hour:

5	^
USERS in last 1h	
▲ 3 from previo	ous hour

0

Data trends for this hour versus the previous hour



In the default *last hour* view, while data for Active Gateways, Users, Devices, and Applications is shown as such, non-compliances are shown for the previous 24 hours and anomalies are shown for the previous 30 days. This is as indicated against the Category name.

Additional trend indicators are present for the *last hour* time period only. All other time periods show only the main data totals for each category.

If you click on any of the categories in the ribbon, *nZTA* displays a sliding info-panel dialog showing more details for that category. For example, if you click on the **Active Gateways** category, a panel appears showing the list of active *nZTA Gateways*. In this case, a summary box is displayed for each *ZTA Gateway* showing statistics relevant to that instance, such as instance health (disk, CPU, and memory utilization), the number of active users, applications, active devices, non-compliance events.

view gateway by status Active Gateways (
letire euteriu/e ((3)			\sim
	(0)			
search Type your search c	query			Q
CAMBRIDGE-	ESX			
() Critical Iss	sues	4		~
Health				
•		•		•
DISK UTILIZATION	CPU UTILIZA	TION	SWAP N UTILIZA	MEMORY
Activity				
ACTIVE USERS		APPLICATIO	NS	
1	R	4		Ē
ACTIVE DEVICES		NON COMP	LIANCE	
1	₽	0		\mathcal{B}
BLACKTHORI BENGALURU Critical Iss	N-BNG-1 sues	4		~
lealui				
•		•		•
DISK UTILIZATION	CPU UTILIZA	TION	SWAP N UTILIZA	MEMORY
Activity				
ACTIVE USERS	R	APPLICATIO	NS	Þ
				_
ACTIVE DEVICES		NON COMP	LIANCE	

Viewing the Gateways info-panel

The following color scheme is used in the icon adjacent to the item listed in the panel:

- Black / Green: No issues are reported for the item shown in the info-panel
- Red:
 - Users info-panel: The user has anomalies reported against them in the selected duration
 - Gateways info-panel: The Gateway is reporting critical issues

i.

When displaying active Gateway data, all non-compliance and unacknowledged anomaly totals are displayed for the previous 24 hours.

The Gateways info-panel displays the following details for each Gateway in your deployment:

- Location name and number of Gateways: The descriptor for this location and the number of Gateway instances deployed there.
- **Warning/Critical Issues**: A list of warnings or critical issue messages reported by the Gateways at this location.
- Gateway Health: Health indicators for the Gateways at this location.
- Active Users: The number of unique users accessing applications through Gateways at the location (as also indicated in the location counter)
- Active Applications: The number of applications accessed through Gateways at the location
- Active Devices: The number of unique devices used to access applications through Gateways at the location
- **Non-Compliant**: The number of non-compliant access attempts to applications configured for Gateways at the location (note that attempts by the same device to access two applications for which it does not meet compliance requirements increment this total by two)



This version of the info-panel shows details for *all Gateway locations*. To view an info-panel for a single *nZTA Gateway* location, click the Gateway location counter in the world map. For more details, see <u>Using the World Map</u>.

Use the **View Gateway by Status** drop-down list to change the type of Gateways displayed in the panel. Choose from:

- All Gateways: All *nZTA Gateways* regardless of status.
- Active Gateways: All active *nZTA Gateways*. That is, only those *nZTA Gateways* that are responsive, irrespective of health status, and have observed application accesses during the selected time period. This is the default view.
- **Offline Gateways**: All offline *nZTA Gateways*. That is, only those *nZTA Gateways* that are unresponsive.
- **Online Gateways**: All online *nZTA Gateways*. That is, only those *nZTA Gateways* that are responsive but have not observed any application accesses.
- **Unregistered Gateways**: All currently unregistered *nZTA Gateways*. That is, only those *nZTA Gateways* that are deployed but not yet registered with the *Controller*.



The number of instances of each type is given in brackets.

For example, by selecting Offline Gateways, the panel updates as follows:

Gateways 3	⊽	: ×
VIEW GATEWAY BY STATUS Offline Gateways (3)		~
search Type your search query		Q
A Gateway Offline		
-⊕ TMELABESX ATHENS		
A Gateway Offline		
A Gateway Offline		

Viewing all offline nZTA Gateways in the Gateways info-panel

Use the **Search** bar at the top to filter the results list. For example, to show only those *nZTA Gateways* that match a search string. To clear your search, click **CLEAR SEARCH RESULTS**.

Hover your pointer over the instance health indicators to display a tooltip showing more specific details and values.

Click on any Critical or Warning notification banner to display a drop-down summary of the issues:



Viewing critical issues

You can click on each entry to obtain more details and logs concerning the issue.



For the **Active Users** info-panel, *nZTA* displays an *average UEBA Threat score*. To learn more about UEBA Threat scores, see <u>Showing Activity for a Specific User</u>.



For Non-Compliance and Anomalies info-panels, summaries are displayed on a per-user basis, with the reason for the event shown.

To change the sort order of the items displayed in the info-panel, use the Sorting controls at the top:

⊽ :

Changing the info-panel sort order

Use the *dots* icon to select the sort criteria, then use the *arrow* icon to toggle between ascending and descending order. The sort criteria varies depending on the category chosen, and is based on the statistics shown for each item. For example, by selecting the **Gateways** info-panel, you can choose the display order for your *nZTA Gateways* based on the following statistics:

- Active Users
- Apps Accessed
- Non-compliances
- Active Devices
- Number of Issues
- Gateway Name
- City Name

A tick identifies the currently chosen criteria.

For **Anomalies**, the info-panel provides additional functionality to enable you to:

- Acknowledge individual anomalies and remove them from the active total.
- Filter on acknowledged, unacknowledged (active), or all anomalies.
- Terminate the corresponding active user session, if applicable.

Active Anoma	lies	675 🗸 🗸	: ×
^{search} Type your search qi	uery		Q
view BY Unacknowledged /	Anomal	ies	~
RIG_ELVIS WED, 08 JUN 2022	2 02:30:00	D AM GMT	
DEVICE ID fd6da58e5ae34b	10956e	09c373c4c4ce	
DEVICE OS TYPE Others		CURRENT LOCATION	
DETAILS Bengaluru WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:21 China WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:21 China WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:21 China WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:20	1:40 AM GI 1:20 AM GI 1:00 AM GI 0:40 AM G	ит ит мт	
ANOMALY REASON Non-familiar user	locatio	n WLEDGE	
RENG_ELVIS	2 02:30:00) AM GMT	
DEVICE ID fd6da58e5ae34b	10956e	09c373c4c4ce	₽
DEVICE OS TYPE Others	₽	CURRENT LOCATION	
DETAILS Bengaluru WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:21 China WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:21 China WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:21 China WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:21	:40 AM GI :20 AM GI :00 AM GI 0:40 AM G	ит ит мт	
ANOMALY REASON Multiple logins fro are not reachable previous login	om mor within	e than one location t the time difference f	that from
		WLEDGE	

Viewing the Anomalies info panel

Each box in the info-panel lists a user and the active anomalies connected to them. For each user, click **ACKNOWLEDGE** to remove this anomaly from the list. Alternatively, use the *tick* icon and check boxes adjacent to each user name to acknowledge multiple, or all, anomalies in a single action. Note that when the default "active" time period filter is selected, the anomalies count in the summary ribbon decreases by 1 for each acknowledgment. To terminate the active session for this user with immediate effect, click **END SESSION**. Session termination is available only for admin users with full access permissions.



For other selected time period filters, the anomalies total includes both acknowledged and unacknowledged anomalies.

To view (and optionally terminate) sessions for all active users, see <u>Viewing and Terminating User</u> <u>Sessions</u>.

For each version of the info-panel, you can click the name of an item listed in the panel to access further pages that provide usage metrics or configuration details for that item:

For Non-compliances, the info-panel provides additional functionality to enable you to:

- Acknowledge individual non-compliance and remove them from the active total.
- Filter on acknowledged, unacknowledged (active), or all non-compliances.

Non-compliance	s 13 √ ⊽ :	X
search Type your search quer	Y	Q
VIEW BY Unacknowledged Nor	n-compliances	~
PERFAUTO10@ZT wed, 21 JUN 2023 03:2	APERFQA.NET	
POLICY NAME WindowsRegistry		θ
DEVICE ID 6a1d537af5e34e2d	806a71f3351f23c6	
DEVICE OS TYPE Windows	APPLICATION NAME ZTA_DFS	₽
ACKN	IOWLEDGE	
PERFAUTO10@ZT wed, 21 JUN 2023 03:2	APERFQA.NET 20:07 PM IST	
POLICY NAME NetworkPolicy		θ
DEVICE ID 6a1d537af5e34e2d	806a71f3351f23c6	•
DEVICE OS TYPE Windows	APPLICATION NAME	Ð

Viewing the Non-compliances info panel

Each box in the info-panel lists a user and the active non-compliances connected to them. For each user, click **ACKNOWLEDGE** to remove this non-compliance from the list. Alternatively, use the *tick* icon and check boxes adjacent to each user name to acknowledge multiple, or all, non-compliances in a single action. Note that when the default "active" time period filter is selected, the non-compliances count in the summary ribbon decreases by 1 for each acknowledgment.



For other selected time period filters, the non-compliances total includes both acknowledged and unacknowledged non-compliances.

To view (and optionally terminate) sessions for all active users, see <u>Viewing and Terminating User</u> <u>Sessions</u>. For each version of the info-panel, you can click the name of an item listed in the panel to access further pages that provide usage metrics or configuration details for that item:

- For the **Gateways** info-panel, click a *nZTA Gateway* name to access the corresponding *Gateways Overview* page. For more details, see Viewing and Monitoring Gateways in the Controller.
- For the **Users** info-panel, click a user name to access the corresponding *Users* analytics page. For more details, see <u>Showing Activity for a Specific User</u>.
- For the **Devices** info-panel, click a device type to access the *Device Configuration* page, filtered by that device type. For more details, see <u>Viewing Currently Enrolled User Devices</u>.
- For the **Applications** info-panel, click an application name to access the corresponding *Application* analytics page. For more details, see <u>Showing Usage Data for a Specific Application</u>.
- For the **Non-compliances** and **Anomalies** info-panels, click a user name to access the corresponding *Users* analytics page. For more details, see <u>Showing Activity for a Specific User</u>.

Using the World Map

The *world map* provides a geographically-positioned view of your Gateway or user locations, selected through the switcher at the top of the panel:



• Select **Gateways** (the default setting - indicated) to display your Gateway locations on the map as a series of geographically-placed counters.



Viewing Gateway locations on the world map

Each counter shows the status of the services held there and the number of active user connections. Gateway status is indicated by the color scheme shown in the legend:

- **Good (Green)**: All Gateways are functioning normally.
- **Warning (Amber)**: One or more of the Gateways at that location is experiencing a *warning* scenario. This status is triggered by the occurrence of any one of the following conditions:
 - Gateway device CPU usage is within the range 80% 90%
 - Gateway device swap memory usage is within 10% 50%
 - Gateway device disk usage is within the range 80% 90%
- **Critical (Red)**: One or more of the Gateways at that location is experiencing an *critical* alert scenario. This status is triggered by the occurrence of any one of the following conditions:
 - Gateway device swap memory usage is greater than 50%
 - Gateway device disk usage is greater than 90%
 - At least 1 critical error has been reported

• **Offline (Gray)**: One or more of the Gateways at that location is offline and/or unresponsive, or is not yet registered with the *nZTA* Controller.

Hover your pointer over a counter to view a visual representation of the users currently connected to the Gateways at that location. The greater the number of users at an originating location, the larger the indicator on the map:



Viewing connected users for a selected Gateway

0

In this view, a red connecting line between a user location and a Gateway location indicates non-compliances exist for those user devices.

In addition, use the Show Details switch to toggle on or off a tooltip summary panel for the Gateway location that overlays the display:



Viewing a location status tooltip panel for Gateways

This panel indicates the status of the Gateways at that location and provides metrics concerning the status of the services at that location:

- **Active Users**: The number of unique users accessing applications through Gateways at the location (as also indicated in the location counter)
- Active Applications: The number of applications accessed through Gateways at the location
- **Active Devices**: The number of unique devices used to access applications through Gateways at the location
- **Non-Compliances**: The number of non-compliant access attempts to applications configured for Gateways at the location (note that attempts by the same device to access two applications for which it does not meet compliance requirements increment this total by two)

Select a counter to show the Gateways info-panel for the individual location. For more information, see Using the Summary Ribbon.



This view of the info-panel displays data for a single Gateway location. To view an info-panel showing data for all Gateway locations, click the Gateways category in the Summary Ribbon. To learn more, see <u>Using the Summary Ribbon</u>.

• Select Users (indicated) to display your user locations on the map:



Viewing user locations on the world map

In this view, each counter shows the number of users at a geographic location that are connected to your Gateways. Gateway status is indicated by the color scheme shown in the legend:

- No Risk (Green): All users at this location have a UEBA Threat score that does not exceed the threshold for zero risk.
- Low (Amber): One or more users at this location have a UEBA Threat score that falls in the range defined as a low risk.
- **Moderate (Orange)**: One or more users at this location have a UEBA Threat score that falls in the range defined as a moderate risk.
- **High (Red)**: One or more users at this location have a UEBA Threat score that falls in the range defined as a high risk.

Hover your pointer over a counter to show a tooltip panel containing the UEBA Threat score summary for those users:



Viewing user locations on the world map

JSERS BY	RISK SCORE		
0	0	0	1
IIGH	MODERATE	LOW	NO RISK

Viewing a location status tooltip panel for users

Select a counter in this view to show the *Users* info-panel. For more information, see Using the Summary Ribbon.

In both views, use the Plus (+) and Minus (-) controls to zoom in and out of the world map, allowing you to select the desired level of detail. Alternatively, use your pointer to manipulate the map display. Double-click/tap an open area of the map to zoom in, or reposition the map display through drag and drop.

To toggle between the Map view and Sankey chart view, use the icons at the top-right:



Toggle between Map view and Sankey chart view

The data shown is representative of the currently-selected time period, and by default shows *active* data (for the previous 1 hour). To learn more about setting time periods for the displayed data, see <u>Using the</u> <u>Filter Bar</u>.

To expand the current view, click the Full Screen icon:

23



Expand the current view



Click the Full Screen icon again to return to the standard view.

Using the Sankey Chart View

The Network Sankey chart provides an alternate visualization of your services, showing directed flow between related objects. The width of each stream in the flow is proportional to the utilization of the object the flow passes through, allowing an administrator to view significant usage and relationships across your user base and application infrastructure.

To activate the Sankey chart view, use the toggle icons at the top-right:



Toggle between Map view and Sankey chart view

By clicking the toggle display icon, the Sankey chart replaces the world map in the display. All other components remain unchanged.



Displaying the Network Overview Sankey Chart View

The *nZTA* Sankey chart maps **User Groups** > **Device Types** > **Gateways** > **Applications**. By hovering your pointer over a flow of interest, *nZTA* displays a tooltip confirming the scale of the activity between the two objects connected by the flow.

To focus the display on a specific flow, or to identify related objects that interact with this flow, click the chart at a point of interest. *nZTA* provides highlighting to all flows that pass through the point selected.

Using the Active Anomaly, Connected Clients Version, and Non-Compliance Charts

The **Network Overview** page includes bar charts to provide a breakdown of **Active Anomalies**, **Connected Clients Version**, and **Non-compliance** events.



Viewing a breakdown of Active Anomalies, Connected Clients Versions, and Noncompliance

The **Active Anomalies** chart provides totals for the number of *Geolocation* anomalies and *Business Hours* anomalies. That is, application accesses that took place from an unexpected geographic location, or that took place outside of normal business hours. Hover your pointer over a particular bar to view a tooltip showing the label and total.



To view a detailed list of events that contributed to the totals in this chart, click View all:

Viewing event logs for Active Anomalies

The **Connected Clients Version** chart shows totals for *Ivanti Secure Access Client* instances that have a current session on the *Controller*, broken down by device operating system type. Where more than one *Ivanti Secure Access Client* version is detected for a specific operating system, the bar is color-coded and relatively sized to represent each identified version and the number of clients using that version. Hover your pointer over a particular bar segment to view a tooltip showing the label and total.

If the currently selected time period is set to "Last Hour", this graph includes a drop-down control to filter the displayed data between:

- Active Users: Connected users during the last hour.
- All Users: Users that connected to the *Controller* in the last 30 days.
In all other time period views, the graph shows only data for all users connected during that time period.



To view a detailed list of events that contributed to the totals in this chart, click **View all**:

Viewing event logs for Connected Clients Versions

The **Non-compliance** chart provides a breakdown of non-compliant device activity that contravened a configured device policy. Totals are given for the highest policy contraventions recorded during the period.

To view a detailed list of events that contributed to the totals in this chart, click View all:



Viewing event logs for Non-compliances

To learn more about using the chart detail page, see Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart.

Using the Top Active Breakdown Charts

The *radar* charts at the bottom of the page show a breakdown of **Gateways**, **User Locations**, and **Applications** across your organization. Each chart shows the *top active items* in each category.



Viewing the Breakdown Radar Charts

Hover your pointer over a particular element to view a tooltip showing the label and total. To view more details and a set of log entries that constitute the date in the a chart, click the corresponding **View all** link. To learn more about using the chart detail page, see <u>Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart</u>.

Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart

When you select the **View all** link for any of the charts or graphs displayed within the *Insights* pages, the Tenant Admin portal displays a detail page containing a larger version of the selected chart, together with a table showing the event or log records that constitute the data points in the chart.

For example:



Viewing event logs for Active Anomalies

In this page:

- Hover your pointer over a specific bar in the chart to view a tooltip showing a numeric total for that category.
- Where a specific data item in the event table is truncated due to the column width, hover your pointer over the item to view a tooltip containing a full-length description. You can also re-size the width of any column by dragging the column.
- Select the name of a column to apply a sort by that criteria. The adjacent arrow shows either ascending or descending sort order, or no sort select again to switch between each view.
- To move a column, click the header of the column and drag it to a desired new position.
- To copy a log's column content, double click on the column content and press ctrl-c. If the content has multiple words, for example log message column, then triple click and press ctrl-c. To paste the content elsewhere, press ctrl-v.

• To view a single log entry in a dedicated panel, click the corresponding three dot to activate the info-panel view. For example:

Active Anoma	lies	675 🗸 🗸	: ×
searcн Туре your search c	query		Q
VIEW BY Unacknowledged	Anomal	ies	~
ENG_ELVIS WED, 08 JUN 202	2 02:30:00	D AM GMT	
DEVICE ID fd6da58e5ae34b	o10956e	09c373c4c4ce	₽
DEVICE OS TYPE Others	₽	CURRENT LOCATION	
Bengaluru WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:2 China WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:2	11:40 AM GI 11:20 AM GI 11:00 AM GI 11:00 AM G	ит ит мт	
ANOMALY REASON Non-familiar use	r locatio ACKNO	n WLEDGE	
ENG_ELVIS	2 02:30:00	D AM GMT	
DEVICE ID fd6da58e5ae34b	o10956e	09c373c4c4ce	Ð
DEVICE OS TYPE Others	Ð	CURRENT LOCATION	
DETAILS Bengaluru WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:2 China WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:2 China WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:2 China WED, 08 JUN 2022 12:2 ANOMALY BEASON	11:40 AM GI 11:20 AM GI 11:00 AM GI 20:40 AM G	MT MT MT	
Multiple logins fr are not reachable previous login	om mor e within	e than one location the time difference	that from
	ACKNO	WLEDGE	

Viewing the Anomalies info panel



In the info-panel, use the **Previous** and **Next** icons to cycle through each event entry in turn.

• Use the date-time display at the top of the page (indicated) to apply a specific time period for the displayed data:

								0	6 Oct 2 7:16 Al	023 И	06 0	ct 2023 3 AM	GM	тË
Active (Last hour)	From							То						
Last 8 hours	MOI	NTH	^		/EAR			MC	NTH	_		/EAR		
Previous day	00	October 👻 2023 👻					~	October \heartsuit 2023 \heartsuit					~	
Previous week	Su	Мо	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa	Su	Мо	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa
Custom	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
	29	30	31	1	2	3	4	29	30	31	1	2	3	4
	7		~	<u>_</u> [1	6		~	8		`		16		~
							RES	ET	C	ANC	EL		APF	ĽΥ

Selecting a date and time range

From the dialog, select the desired time period. Choose from the following predefined time period options:

- Last hour: Data observed for the previous 60 minutes.
- Last <X> hours: Data observed so far in the current day, up to the last hour (in GMT).
- Previous day: Data observed for the previous full day.
- **Previous Week**: Data observed for the previous calendar week (for the previous full Sunday-to-Saturday week).
- **Custom**: Data observed for a chosen time period. If you select this option, *nZTA* enables you to select a custom time period using the **From** and **To** date/time calendar controls.

The date/time calendar controls are enabled for only the **Custom** option. However, the calendar continues to identify the applicable start and end date-time for all predefined time periods.

To reset the selected time period back to the default (*Last Hour*) view, select **Reset**. To return to the current page without making any changes, select **Cancel**.

To apply your changes, select **Apply**. The selected time period is displayed in the filter bar and data across all **Insights** pages is updated accordingly.

• To manually refresh the display, select the following icon:



i.

Page refresh

• To search for a term in the displayed event data, select the following field:

Search

Search term highlighting

nZTA highlights all matches in the event display.

• To trigger the advanced filter selection, use the following icon:



Advanced Filtering

To learn more, see Filtering the Logs.

• To export the displayed log as a CSV or JSON text file, or to create schedules to set up log export jobs, select the following icon:

(\mathbf{A})

Export Filtered Logs

To learn more, see Exporting Logs.

• To change the fields displayed for each event line, select the following icon:



Show or hide event fields

In the field selector, select a field name to toggle between show or hide. A *tick* icon indicates a displayed field. After you are finished, select the field selector icon to close the selector.

• To apply grouping to the event records, select the following icon:



Group event records by selected criteria

This feature applies grouping to a selected field, such that event records are accumulated and grouped together under each unique data item identified in that field. Through grouping, an admin can quickly view the number of records of a particular type.

The criteria available for grouping depends on the chart being viewed, and reflects the field headings in that event table. For example, when viewing the **Top Active Applications** detail page (as shown above), you can choose to group by the following:

- Ungrouped
- User Name
- User Group
- Device Type
- Device ID
- Gateway Name
- Device Location City
- App Name

By selecting *App Name*, the event table is reconfigured to show a summary bar for each unique application identified in the logs.

TOP ACTIVE APPLICATIONS						
10 log entry found				÷ 00	SEARCH	0 🖬 🤤
APPLICATION GROUP	NO. OF USERS 1	NO. OF USER GROUPS 个	DEVICE TYPES 1	NO. OF DEVICE IDS	NO. OF GATEWAYS 🔶	NO. OF DEVICE LOCATION CITIES
> box (9)		1	android - 6,	2	1	2
> yahoomail (6)		1	windows - 6	2	1	1
> 104.98.130.37 (4)		1	windows - 4	1	1	1
> concur (4)		1	windows - 4	1	1	1
> juniper.net (4)		1	windows - 4	1	1	1
> kb.pulsesecu (4)		1	windows - 4	2	1	1
> support-stag (4)		1	windows - 4	1	1	1
> zomato (4)		1	windows - 4	1	1	1
> pulsesecure.net (3)		1	windows - 3	2	1	1
> support.juni (3)		1	windows - 3	1	1	1

Viewing Top Active Application events with grouping by application name applied

In this view, each application is identified together with a count of the number of event lines (in brackets) recorded against it. The event table field headers also adjust to reflect the summary counts recorded for each identified application.

To observe the event records in each grouping, select the arrow icon (indicated) adjacent to each application name in the table:

6 log entry found									÷ O	SEAR	СН	Q	d 3
APPLICATION GROUP	<u>۲</u>	NO. OF U	ISERS 个	NO. OF U	SER GROUPS 🔶	DEVICE T	(PES 个	NO. OF DE	EVICE IDS 个	NO. OF G	TEWAYS 个	NO. OF DEV	CITIES 1
> box (10)				1		androi	d - 10	1		1		1	
> static.ivant	(10)			1		androi	d - 10	1		1		1	
> twiki (8)				1		androi	d - 8	1		1		1	
vivanti.com (6)			1		androi	d - 6	1		1		1	
DATE 个	TIME (IST) 🤺		USER NAME 1		USER GROUP	ŕ	DEVICE TYPE	\uparrow	DEVICE ID 个		GATEWAY NAM	ie 个	DEVICE LOCA CITY
28 Jul 2021	01:18:57	PM			Android gr	oup	Android		3c60f92b	39d6	az-blackth	orn	Ahmedab
28 Jul 2021	01:18:57	РМ			Android gr	oup	Android		3c60f92b	39d6	az-blackth	orn	Ahmedab
28 Jul 2021	01:18:57	РМ			Android gr	oup	Android		3c60f92b	39d6	az-blackth	orn	Ahmedab
28 Jul 2021	01:18:57	РМ			Android gr	oup	Android		3c60f92b	39d6	az-blackth	orn	Ahmedab
28 Jul 2021	01:18:57	РМ			Android gr	oup	Android		3c60f92b	39d6	az-blackth	orn	Ahmedab
> juniper.net (6)			1		androi	d - 6	1		1		1	
> support.ivan.	(4)			1		androi	d - 4	1		1		1	

Viewing the grouped event records for a single named application

With grouping applied, the info-panel view adapts to reflect whether you selected a group header or an individual event record, such that the panel displays either the group totals or event details.



If you apply a grouping to the event data in this page, the page controls at the bottom (number of records per page and page navigation) have no effect.

• To remove any applied filters from the data set, select the following icon:



Remove any applied filters from the data

 Use the page controls at the bottom of the window to select the number of event records/rows per page:

	50
Rows per page:	√ 100
	200

Setting the number of event rows per page

Choose from:

• 50

- 100 (default)
- 200
- To cycle through the event pages, use the page controls at the bottom-right.

Reviewing User Activity

User activity is available for all users, or for a specific user.

The Users Overview page shows activity relating to all users in your nZTA deployment.

To access the Users Overview page:

1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see <u>Logging in as a Tenant Administrator</u>.

The My Home page appears by default.

2. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Insights** icon, then select **Users > All Users**.

The Users Overview page appears.



An overview of activity for all users

To view data relating to a specific user, see Showing Activity for a Specific User.

Understanding the Display

The Users Overview page contains the following components:

- Filter bar, allowing the selection of active or historic data. For details, see Using the Filter Bar.
- **Summary ribbon**, showing metrics for user activity. For more details, see <u>Using the Summary</u> <u>Ribbon</u>.
- User Group UEBA Threat data, showing graphs and metrics for UEBA Threat scores across your user groups. For more details, see Viewing a Summary of UEBA Threat Scores for your Users.

- **Top access trends**, showing a timeline chart of application access. For more details, see <u>Viewing</u> <u>Top Access Trends</u>.
- Activity charts, showing charts for *Top active users*, *Top login locations*, and *Top authentication failures by login location*. For more details, see Viewing User Activity Charts.

Each chart on this page includes a **View all** link. To learn more about using the chart detail page, see <u>Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart</u>.



Viewing User Group risk detailed logs

Each detail view shows logs for the corresponding chart or category. To learn more about the detail page, including the features available, see <u>Using the Active Anomaly, Connected Clients Version, and</u> <u>Non-Compliance Charts</u>.

Using the Summary Ribbon

The Summary Ribbon at the top of the *Users Overview* page shows activity totals for the selected time filter:

1000	4	98	4	4	8
LICENSED USERS	ACTIVE USERS in last 1h T from previous hour	APPLICATIONS in last 1h T 1 from previous hour	GATEWAYS in last 1h T from previous hour	DEVICES in last 1h T from previous hour	AUTH FAILURES in last 1h T 1 from previous hour

Viewing the summary ribbon

The ribbon indicates the totals accrued for each category during the displayed time period, as indicated adjacent to the category name. Hover your pointer over the category elements to show a descriptive tooltip.

- Licensed Users: The total number of licensed users.
- Active Users: The number of active users during the selected time period.
- Applications: The number of in-use applications.
- Gateways: The number of active ZTA Gateways.
- **Devices**: The number of active devices.
- Auth failures: The number of authentication failures.

By default, the data presented in the ribbon corresponds to the last hour. To change the time period, use the filter bar (see Using the Filter Bar).

If you are currently viewing data for the *last hour*, each category in the ribbon includes a trend graph (highlighted, top) showing the changes in data during the hour. Also included is a change value (highlighted, bottom) based on the previous hour:



Data trends for last full hour versus the previous hour

If you select a historic time period in the filter bar, the ribbon displays only the main data totals for each category. Trend data is hidden.

Viewing a Summary of UEBA Threat Scores for your Users

On the **Insights** > **All Users** page, the *User Group UEBA Threat data* panel displays information concerning UEBA Threat factors across your user base:

19	0	0	1
No Risk(0-0)	Low(1-0)	Moderate(1-0)	High(>1)
	Averag	ge Risk	1 View a
P 10 USERS BY	RISK		
	0 0	0 0 0	0 0
	Users		
			View a
K TYPE			
SK TYPE			
Geolocati s. Hour Deviatio	on 0 ons 0		
Geolocati S. Hour Deviation Non-compliance	on 0 ons 0 ces	8	
Geolocati Geolocati s. Hour Deviatic Non-complianc	on 0 ons 0 ces	8	View a
Geolocati Geolocati s. Hour Deviatic Non-complianc	on 0 ons 0 ces TH NON-CO	8 MPLIANCES	View a
Geolocati S. Hour Deviatio Non-complianc	on 0 ons 0 ces TH NON-CC	8 MPLIANCES	View a

Viewing user group UEBA Threat data

The panel provides:

- A breakdown of UEBA Threat by user group.
- The average UEBA Threat score across all users.
- The top-10 users scoring highest for UEBA Threat.
- A break-down of UEBA Threat types.
- The policies with highest non-compliance.

A user's UEBA Threat score is calculated from a combination of three factors:

- Application access attempts originating from anomalous geographic locations or outside of normal business hours.
- Non-compliant user devices that attempted to access your applications.
- Activity Deviations.

Each additional incident increments a user's overall UEBA Threat score.

The *No. of users* chart provides a visual indication of the number of users that fall into each of the UEBA Threat categories. These categories are shown as percentage ratios of the overall UEBA Threat score and number of users. The upper and lower bands for each category are shown in brackets. The categories are:

- No risk (20%)
- Low (30%)
- Moderate (30%)
- High (20%)



Where a particular UEBA Threat category matches no users for the selected time period, that category label is not shown.

Below this chart, *nZTA* displays the **Average UEBA Threat** score for all users on a scale between zero UEBA Threat and the highest UEBA Threat score measured at the end of the current time period.



The maximum value shown in the chart corresponds to the highest UEBA Threat score for all users as they stand at the end of the time period, not the highest they have been within that period.

The *Top 10 Users by UEBA Threat* chart shows the top-10 users with the highest cumulative UEBA Threat score across the selected time period. Hover your pointer over each bar in the chart to see the name of the corresponding user. Where you have configured a UEBA Threat score action trigger (see <u>Actions</u>), this chart also contains a dotted line to indicate the UEBA Threat score threshold set in the action.

The UEBA Threat Type chart provides a breakdown of all geolocation anomalies, business hours deviations, and non-compliances that occurred during the selected time period.

The *Top Policies with Non-compliances* chart shows the device policies that recorded the highest number of non-compliances during the selected time period. Hover your pointer over each bar in the chart to see the name of the corresponding policy.

Viewing Top Access Trends

nZTA uses this section to show application access trends that occurred during the selected time period:



Viewing top access trends

You can choose to display this information through line and bar charts (as shown), or in an Sankey chart. Use the toggle icon at the top-right to select the required view:



Toggle between line/bar chart view and Sankey chart view

To expand the current view, click the Full Screen icon:

2

Expand the current view

In line/bar chart view, the display is split into two segments:

- A line chart showing the number of application accesses by each user group during each hourly period of the day
- A bar chart showing one of four data types, selected using the **Filter Bar Chart By** drop-down control:

- Unique User Count
- Unique Device Count
- Unique Location Count
- Anomalies



If you set a *Time Period* filter than spans more than one day, the data values shown in each hour period are cumulative totals for the same hour in each day during the time period.

In this chart, hover your pointer over each hourly interval to view a tooltip showing the corresponding data totals. Furthermore, you can click and drag a select box across a shorter time period to zoom in on a narrower time window. To return to the full 24 hour period, click the *zoom out* icon:



Zoom out from a selected time period

To toggle on or off the data for a particular user group, click the name of the group in the legend. Or, to view only the data for a specific user group, click the corresponding line in the graph.

In the Sankey chart view, *nZTA* provides an alternate visualization of application access activity, showing directed flow between related objects.



User Access Trends Sankey chart

The chart maps **User Groups** > **Devices** > **Gateways** > **Applications**. By hovering your pointer over a flow of interest, *nZTA* displays a tooltip confirming the scale of the activity between the two objects connected by the flow.

To focus the display on a specific flow, or to identify related objects that interact with this flow, click the chart at a point of interest. *nZTA* provides highlighting to all flows that pass through the point selected.

Viewing User Activity Charts

nZTA provides charts to represent user activity:

- **Top Active Users**: a grid showing users that accrued the highest number of successful accesses to your deployed applications. Tooltips show the number of accesses by a user for that application.
- **Top Login Locations**: a chart of the most active user locations per user group. Tooltips show a count of users active in that user group.
- **Top Authentication Failure by Location**: a chart showing totals for authentication failures observed per user location.
- Top Risky Applications: a chart showing the total users count for each of the top risky applications.

Hover your pointer over a particular element to view a tooltip showing the label and total.

TOP RISKY APPLICATIONS = III SEARCH Q 🗗 🕲 24 log entry found View Ungrouped DATE 🛧 TIME (GMT) 🕆 DEVICE APP NAME DEVICE APP VRR View By Device App Name 12 Nov 2022 11:07:49 A... PuTTY 0.63 Critical View By Device VRR 12 Nov 2022 10:07:30 A... PuTTY 0.63 Critical View By Device OS Type 12 Nov 2022 09:55:40 A... PuTTY 0.63 Critical 11 Nov 2022 11:47:05 A... Microsoft Windows 10 20H2 Windows Critical 11 Nov 2022 11:23:04 A... Microsoft Windows 10 20H2 Windows Critical 11 Nov 2022 11-18-44 A Microsoft Windows 10 20H2 Windows Critical 11 Nov 2022 09:58:23 A... PuTTY 0.63 Critical Windows Microsoft Windows 10 21H2 on ARM64 Critical 09:43:51 A... 11 Nov 2022 Windows 11 Nov 2022 09:43:51 A... PuTTY 0.63 Windows Critical 11 Nov 2022 08-42-41 A Microsoft Windows 10 20H2 Windows Critical

Click View All to see the detailed metrics.



Top risky application details

Showing Activity for a Specific User

To view activity for a specific user, use the **Set User** option in the filter menu:



Activating the Set User option

Alternatively, from the **Network Overview** page, access specific user activity from the **Users** info-panel view. For more details, see <u>Using the Summary Ribbon</u>.

nZTA displays the Users page, showing activity for the selected user:



Viewing activity for a specific user

Understanding the Display

The Users page contains the following components:

- Filter bar, allowing the selection of active or historic data. For details, see Using the Filter Bar.
- **Summary ribbon**, showing activity metrics for the current user. For more details, see <u>Using the</u> <u>Summary Ribbon</u>.
- User UEBA Threat data, showing the User UEBA Threat Score and UEBA Threat Score Rank. For more details, see Viewing a Summary of UEBA Threat Scores for your Users
- Access trend, showing application accesses, non-compliance, and authentication failures by this

user over time.

• Activity charts, showing top user access locations and application activity.

Each chart on this page includes a **View all** link. This link provides access to a detail view showing logs for the corresponding chart. For example:

< Ris	k Sco	re of All Gat	eways (i)	18 Jul 2021 - 24 Jul 20 12:00 AM 11:59 PM	21 IGMT 日う			ې ۹
•								
0				l	Jser Risk Score			1
20 ▼								
20				ι	Jser Risk Rank			1
RISK SCO	DRE	4				÷ 00	SEARCH	Q @ 3
DATE 个	iary round	TIME (GMT) 个	USER NAME 1	USER RISK SCORE 1	USER RISK SCORE CATEGORY	↑ USER ANOMALIES ↑ COUNT	NON-COMPLIANCES	USER ACTIVITY DEVIATIONS COUNT
2021-07	-24	23:59:59	bngtest1	0	Normal	0	0	0
2021-07	-24	00:00:00	bngtest1	0	Normal	0	0	0
2021-07	-23	23:59:59	bngtest1	0	Normal	0	0	0
2021-07	-23	00:00:00	bngtest1	0	Normal	0	0	0
2021-07	-22	23:59:59	bngtest1	0	Normal	0	0	0
2021-07	-22	00:00:00	bngtest1	0	Normal	0	0	0
2021-07	-21	23:59:59	bngtest1	0	Normal	0	0	0
2021-07	-21	00:00:00	bngtest1	0	Normal	0	0	0
2021-07	-20	23:59:59	bngtest1	0	Normal	0	0	0

Viewing User UEBA Threat Score detailed logs

Each detail view shows logs for the corresponding chart or category. To learn more about using the chart detail page, see <u>Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart</u>.

Using the Summary Ribbon

The Summary Ribbon at the top of the *Users* page shows activity totals for the user during the selected time filter:

bngtest3				
NON-COMPLIANCES	GEO LOCATION ANOMALIES	BUSINESS HOUR ANOMALIES	AUTH FAILURES	USER GROUPS
8	0	0	3	BANGALORE GROUP

Viewing the summary ribbon

The ribbon indicates totals accrued for the selected user during the displayed time period. The summary ribbon provides the following metrics:

- **Non-compliances**: The number of non-compliant access attempts by this user during the period.
- **Geo Location Anomalies**: The number of application accesses attempted from anomalous geographic login locations by this user during the period.
- **Business Hours Anomalies**: The number of application accesses attempted outside of normal business hours by this user during the period.
- Auth failures: The number of authentication failures experienced by this user during the period.
- **User groups**: The user groups of which this user is a member. Click the name of a group to access the *user groups* page.

Viewing UEBA Threat Data for the Selected User

The User UEBA Threat Data panel displays information concerning UEBA Threat for the selected user:



Viewing UEBA Threat data for a user

The panel provides:

• The selected user's UEBA Threat score, as calculated at the end of the selected time period.

The UEBA Threat score is shown as an indicator on a linear scale of no risk up to the highest recorded score during the time period. To learn more about a user's UEBA Threat score, see Viewing a Summary of UEBA Threat Scores for your Users.

• The selected user's UEBA Threat Score rank, as calculated at the end of the selected time period.

A user's UEBA Threat Score rank is the UEBA Threat score as measured against other active users in the organization, displayed on a linear scale. As a user increases their UEBA Threat score, the more the rank position (the indicator) decreases towards 1 out of the total of active users (the value at the start of the scale). A rank of "1" means that a user ranks highest for risk out of all active users.

• A link to reset the selected user's UEBA Threat score

Viewing Access Trends for the Selected User

nZTA uses this section to show access trends for the selected user that occurred during the selected time period.

You can choose to display this information through line and bar charts, or in a Sankey chart. Use the toggle icon at the top-right to select the required view:

S

Toggle between line/bar chart view and Sankey chart view

To expand the current view, click the Full Screen icon:

23

Expand the current view

The line and bar chart shows user access trends through each hourly interval of the day:



Viewing hourly access trends for a user

The horizontal axis reflects the 24 hourly intervals in a day, with the vertical axis showing the number of accesses. As a user interacts with your *nZTA* infrastructure, access attempts are recorded and shown in this chart according to the hour in which they occurred. This in turn provides an overview of the daily access trends for the user.

The bars denote the number of accesses made, with the lines charting the number of applications accessed, and the moving average over 30 days.

Anomalies, non-compliances, and authentication failures detected in the hour are marked as per the legend.

Hover your pointer over an hour interval to see a tooltip summary of data points for that hour:

9 AM		
	No. of Access	2
	Moving Average	6
	No. of Applications	2
	Anomalies	0
0	Non Compliance	4
Δ	Auth Failure	0
		_

Viewing a data summary tooltip

To learn more about the User Access Sankey chart, see Viewing the User Access Sankey Chart.

Viewing the User Access Sankey Chart

The User Access Sankey chart provides an alternate visualization of your selected user's activity, showing directed flow between related objects. The width of each stream in the flow is proportional to the utilization of the object the flow passes through, allowing an administrator to view significant usage trends for the selected user and your application infrastructure.

To toggle between the User UEBA Threat Score chart and the User Access Sankey chart, use the icons at the top-right:



Toggle between User UEBA Threat Score view and User Access Sankey chart view

By clicking the toggle display icon, the User Access Sankey chart replaces the User UEBA Threat Score graph in the display. All other components remain unchanged.



Displaying the User Activity Sankey Chart View

The *nZTA* User Activity Sankey chart maps **Locations** > **Devices** > **Gateways** > **Applications** for the selected user. By hovering your pointer over a flow of interest, *nZTA* displays a tooltip confirming the scale of the activity between the two objects connected by the flow.

To focus the display on a specific flow, or to identify related objects that interact with this flow, click the chart at a point of interest. *nZTA* provides highlighting to all flows that pass through the point selected.

To activate the User Non-Compliances Sankey chart view, use the toggle icons at the bottom of the chart:



Toggle between User Access Sankey chart view and the User Non-Compliances Sankey chart view

Use this toggle to switch the Sankey chart between displaying User Application Access or User Non-Compliances flows.



Displaying the User Non-Compliance Sankey Chart View

Viewing User Activity Charts

The **Top User Locations** and **Top User Activity** charts show the top locations and applications the user is active with at different times of the day. Each chart provides a visual breakdown of normal activity across the day, with anomalies highlighted when they occur.

Viewing and Terminating User Sessions

To view the list of currently active user sessions:

1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.

The My Home page appears.

2. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Insights** icon, then select **Users > Active Sessions**.

The Active Sessions page appears:

Active	Active Sessions ()											
-												
Action	is 🗸 Grou	p By usernan	ne									
End	Session		UEBA THR	EAT SCORE	SESSIONS	DEVICES	ANOMALIES	SESSION INFO				
End	All Sessions	anti.c	0	(Normal)	1	1	0					
		ivanti.c	0	(Normal)	1	1	0					
		ivanti.c	0	(Normal)	1	1	0					
		runKu	0	(Normal)	1	1	0					
		rumug	0	(Normal)	1	1	4					
		amask	0	(Normal)	1	1	0					
\Box		mbala	0	(Normal)	1	1	0					
		nti.com	0	(Normal)	1	1	0					
		ivanti.c	0	(Normal)	1	1	0					
		nti.com	0	(Normal)	1	1	0					

Viewing active user sessions

Use this page to view currently-active user sessions, and to terminate selected sessions as required. Each row corresponds to a single user and shows the following details:

- The username
- The user's UEBA Threat score. For more information on UEBA Threat scores, see <u>Reviewing User</u> Activity.
- The number of active sessions.
- The number of devices used.
- The number of anomalies observed. For more information on anomalies, see "Using the Active Anomaly, Connected Clients Version, and Non-Compliance Charts" on page 107.
- Session information, if available

Use the Advanced Filter icon at the top of the page to search by:

- an entered **username**
- a specified Gateway
- attributes:

- Username: enter a user name
- Device ID: select a device ID
- *Risk*: select a UEBA Threat score level

The data automatically updates to reflect the chosen search criteria.

Click the Group By user name to view all active sessions for the user:

Searc	h username 🛛 🗙	GATEWAYS All	\sim	ATTRIBUTES All	\sim					\$
	Username 🛧	Risk Score	ŕ	Sessions 1	l.	Devices 1	Anomalies 🛧		Session info	
	∨ test1	10 (H	ligh)	2	2	2	2			
	Session ID 🛧	Group 🛧	IP Address 🕆	Device type 1	Anomalies 🛧	Last app accessed 1	Gateway 🛧	Location 🛧	Action	
	3a45d6dcb0	bangaloregroup	14.143.66.19	Windows	1	Adobe	ubgw1	Bengaluru	۴×	
	a77bdcf5b1	bangaloregroup	193.240.66.70	Windows	1	Amazon	ubgw1	Ulm	ج×	
	∨ test2	2 (N	lormal)	1	1		1			
	Session ID 🛧	Group 🛧	IP Address 🕎	Device type 1	Anomalies 🛧	Last app accessed 1	Gateway 🛧	Location 个	Action	
	2302cc177b	bangaloregroup	14.143.66.19	Windows	1	Amazon	ubgw1	Bengaluru	٩×	

Viewing all active sessions for a user

Alternatively, to expand or collapse the list of sessions for *all* users, click the icon at the top-right:

€

Expand or collapse the complete user session list

To terminate a specific user session, locate the session row on the page and click the corresponding *terminate* button:

ペ×

Terminate a session

nZTA provides a confirmation dialog showing the session selected to be deleted:



Confirming the session to terminate

All session terminations performed through this page are logged in the nZTA Access Logs.



You can also terminate active user sessions through the Anomalies info-panel. For more details, see <u>Using the Summary Ribbon</u>.

Reviewing Application Usage

Applications in *nZTA* are defined primarily by the URI you use to access them, and can be fully *defined* (for example, a complete URI denoting a specific application at a location) or *discovered* (for example, a wildcard-prefixed FQDN that denotes an endpoint containing one or more applications).

The *Insights* > *Applications* pages shows usage data for all applications requested through your *nZTA* deployment.

nZTA provides the following views for your application usage:

- **All Applications**: Shows usage metrics for all defined applications in your *nZTA* deployment. See <u>All Applications</u>.
- **Discovered Applications**: Shows usage metrics for all discovered applications in your *nZTA* deployment. See <u>Discovered Applications</u>.
- Default Gateway Applications: Shows usage metrics for all applications managed through the default *nZTA Gateway* defined in your *Application Discovery* secure access policy. See <u>Default</u> <u>nZTA Gateway Applications</u>.



A default *nZTA Gateway* is used to handle all requests from applications that are not referenced by any secure access policy. To learn more about setting a default *nZTA Gateway*, see <u>Configuring a Default Gateway for Application Discovery</u>.

To learn more about defining applications for use with secure access policies, see <u>Defining Applications</u> and <u>Application Groups</u>.

To view application usage:

1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.

The My Home page appears by default.

2. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Insights** icon, then select **Applications** and choose either **All Applications**, **Discovered Applications**, or **Default Gateway Applications**.

The Applications Overview page appears, showing the selected metrics.

Use the tabs at the top of the page to switch between the different views: *All Applications, Discovered Applications,* and *Default Gateway Applications.* Each tab consists of a number of panels containing metrics and charts to show application usage in one of the aforementioned categories.

To view data relating to a specific application, see Showing Usage Data for a Specific Application.

All Applications

The All Applications tab shows usage metrics for all defined and discovered applications:

Applications Overview of All Gateways ()	Mar 2021 - 16 Mar 2021 00 AM 1:59 PM GMT 🛱 🖏	₽ =
All Applications Discovered Applications Default Gateway Applications		
29 5 ALLAPPLICATIONS in last 14h o from previous hour	2 A 1 A CERE in last 14h 0 from previous hour 0 fro	O ANOMALIES in last 14h O from previous hour
APPLICATION TOP STATS TOP APPLICATION TYPE	ACCESS TREND Application Access Count 15 10	meraki guest access
TOP APPLICATION PROTOCOL		- box support.fortinet.com ivory setup amazon
TOP NON REACHABLE APPLICATIONS View all ▶ 150 60 0 150 60 1 100 60 1 100 60 1 100 60 1		employee.psecure.net ogs.google.com play.google.com translate.google.com
b View all ►	PPM 930 930 930 930 930 930 930 930 930 930	View all 🕨
APPLICATION ACCESSES BY APPLICATION GROUP 40 30	ON ACCESSES BY LOCATION MOST APPLICATION ACCESSES BY DEVICE MOST APPLICATION 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40 40	ACCESSES BY USER GROUP
not configured urfapps View all >	23 eeeo participation participation view all b View all b View all b	chooling the set of th

Viewing usage charts and graphs for your applications

The display is split into sections:

- Summary Ribbon
- Application Top Stats
- Access Trends
- Activity charts for Application Accesses by Application Group, Most Application Accesses by Location, Most Application Accesses by Device, and Most Application Accesses by User Group.

Each chart in the display includes a **View all** link providing access to a detail page showing log records for the corresponding chart. These log records include links to the application and user involved in the logged event. *Ivanti* recommends using this page to access the metrics page for the specific application (see <u>Showing Usage Data for a Specific Application</u>) or user (see <u>Showing Activity for a</u> <u>Specific User</u>). This method of navigation offers an alternative to searching for a specific application through the "Select Application" filter option, where the exact application name might not be known (for example, discovered and default applications not specifically defined in a secure access policy). To learn more about using the chart detail page, see <u>Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart</u>.

The summary ribbon provides the following metrics:

- All Applications: The total number of applications defined on the Controller.
- Active Applications: The number of applications accessed during the selected time period.
- Non-compliances: The number of non-compliant attempts to access applications.
- Users: The number of active users.
- Gateways: The number of active nZTA Gateways.
- Anomalies: The number of anomalous application accesses based on geographic and business hours irregularities.

The **Application Top Stats** panel provides the following charts:

- **Top Application Type**: A bar chart showing the application types that attracted the greatest numbers of application accesses during the selected time period (for example, FQDN, URL, or IP address).
- **Top Application Protocol**: A bar chart showing the application protocol types that attracted the greatest number of application accesses during the selected time period (for example, Web, RDP, or SSH).

 Top Non Reachable Applications: A bar chart showing the applications marked most-often not reachable by the *Controller*. To learn more about application availability status, see <u>Viewing your</u> <u>Secure Access Policies</u>.

The Top Non Reachable Applications chart includes only applications where the status can be determined. It does not show applications where the status is unknown, such as for applications based on FQDNs, wildcard-based FQDNs, and IPv4/IPv6 ranges - all of which are unsupported by the application health monitoring feature.

For all charts, hover your pointer over each bar to display a tooltip of the type and number of accesses recorded.

The **Access Trends** panel shows application access trends that occurred during the selected time period. You can choose to display this information through line and bar charts, or in a Sankey chart. Use the toggle icon at the top-right to select the required view:



Toggle between line/bar chart view and Sankey chart view

To expand the current view, click the Full Screen icon:

[]



Expand the current view



Click this icon again to return to the standard view.

In line/bar chart view. The display is split into two segments:

- A line chart showing the number of accesses for the top-10 applications during each hourly period of the day
- A bar chart showing one of four data types, selected using the **Filter Bar Chart By** drop-down control:



 Unique User Count: Shows a count of unique user activity identified during each hourly period. • Unique Device Type Count: Shows a count of unique device types identified during each hourly period.



- Unique Location Count: Shows a count of activity from unique user locations identified during each hourly period.
- Unique User Group Count: Shows a count of activity from unique user groups identified during each hourly period.



If you set a Time Period filter than spans more than one day, the data values shown in each hour period are cumulative totals for the same hour in each day during the time period.

In this chart, hover your pointer over each hourly interval to view a tooltip showing the corresponding data totals. Furthermore, you can click and drag a select box across a shorter time period to zoom in on a narrower time window. To return to the full 24 hour period, click the zoom out icon:

8

Zoom out from a selected time period

To toggle on or off the data for a particular application, click the name in the legend. Or, to view only the data for a specific application, click the corresponding line in the graph.

In the Sankey chart view, *nZTA* provides an alternate visualization of application access activity, showing directed flow between related objects.



Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

User Access Trends Sankey chart

The chart maps **User Groups > Devices > Gateways > Applications**. By hovering your pointer over a flow of interest, *nZTA* displays a tooltip confirming the scale of the activity between the two objects connected by the flow. To focus the display on a specific flow, or to identify related objects that interact with this flow, click the chart at a point of interest. *nZTA* provides highlighting to all flows that pass through the point selected.

The Activity Charts on this page represent top application access totals in the following categories:

- **Application Accesses by Application Group**: a grid chart showing the application groups containing the applications that accrued the highest number of successful accesses. Application group sizes in the chart are proportional to the number of accesses, compared with other groups. Tooltips show a count of the accesses made to that group. To learn more about Application Groups, see Adding Application Groups to the Controller.
- **Most Application Accesses by Location**: a bar chart showing a list of the most active user locations with respect to application access. Tooltips show a count of the application accesses by that location.
- **Most Application Accesses by Device**: a bar chart showing a list of the most active user device types with respect to application access. Tooltips show a count of the application accesses by that device type.
- **Most Application Accesses by User Group**: a bar chart showing a list of the most active user groups with respect to application access. Tooltips show a count of the application accesses by users in that user group.

Hover your pointer over a particular element to view a tooltip showing the label and total.

Discovered Applications

The *Discovered Applications* tab shows usage metrics for applications discovered by the *Controller* for applications defined with a wildcard domain and with **Application Discovery** enabled:


Viewing usage charts and graphs for discovered applications

The display is split into sections:

- Summary Ribbon
- Discovered Application Stats
- Access Trend
- Activity charts for Application Accesses by Application Group, Most Application Accesses by Location, Most Application Accesses by Device, and Most Application Accesses by User Group.

Each chart in the display includes a **View all** link providing access to a detail page showing log records for the corresponding chart. These log records include links to the application and user involved in the logged event. *Ivanti* recommends using this page to access the metrics page for the specific application (see <u>Showing Usage Data for a Specific Application</u>) or user (see <u>Showing Activity for a</u> <u>Specific User</u>). This method of navigation offers an alternative to searching for a specific application through the "Select Application" filter option, where the exact application name might not be known (for example, discovered and default applications not specifically defined in a secure access policy). To learn more about using the chart detail page, see <u>Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart</u>.

The summary ribbon provides the following metrics:

- All Applications: The number of applications discovered by the Controller.
- Active Applications: The number of discovered applications accessed during the selected time period.
- Users: The number of users active with discovered applications.
- Gateways: The number of nZTA Gateways serving discovered applications.
- **Anomalies**: The number of anomalous application accesses based on geographic and business hours irregularities.

The Discovered Application Stats panel provides two charts:

- Top Applications Discovered by Policy: A chart showing the application definitions, with Application Discovery enabled, for which the greatest number of applications were discovered. The segment sizes are proportional to the number of discovered applications for each application domain.
- **Top Application Protocol**: A bar chart showing the application protocol types, with Application Discovery enabled, that attracted the greatest number of application accesses during the selected time period (for example, Web, RDP, or SSH).

For both charts, hover your pointer over each bar to display a tooltip of the type and number of accesses recorded.

The **Access Trend** panel shows application access trends that occurred with discovered applications during the selected time period. You can choose to display this information through line and bar charts, or in a Sankey chart. Use the toggle icon at the top-right to select the required view:

~ 2

Toggle between line/bar chart view and Sankey chart view

To expand the current view, click the Full Screen icon:





Click this icon again to return to the standard view.

In line/bar chart view. The display is split into two segments:

- A line chart showing the number of accesses for the top-10 discovered applications during each hourly period of the day
- A bar chart showing one of four data types, selected using the **Filter Bar Chart By** drop-down control:
 - Unique User Count: Shows a count of unique user activity identified during each hourly period.
 - Unique Device Type Count: Shows a count of unique device types identified during each hourly period.
 - Unique Location Count: Shows a count of activity from unique user locations identified during each hourly period.
 - Unique User Group Count: Shows a count of activity from unique user groups identified during each hourly period.



If you set a Time Period filter than spans more than one day, the data values shown in each hour period are cumulative totals for the same hour in each day during the time period.

In this chart, hover your pointer over each hourly interval to view a tooltip showing the corresponding data totals. Furthermore, you can click and drag a select box across a shorter time period to zoom in on a narrower time window. To return to the full 24 hour period, click the zoom out icon:

e

Zoom out from a selected time period

To toggle on or off the data for a particular application, click the name in the legend. Or, to view only the data for a specific application, click the corresponding line in the graph.

In the Sankey chart view, *nZTA* provides an alternate visualization of application access activity, showing directed flow between related objects.



User Access Trends Sankey chart for discovered applications

The chart maps **User Groups > Devices > Gateways > Applications**. By hovering your pointer over a flow of interest, *nZTA* displays a tooltip confirming the scale of the activity between the two objects connected by the flow. To focus the display on a specific flow, or to identify related objects that interact with this flow, click the chart at a point of interest. *nZTA* provides highlighting to all flows that pass through the point selected.

The Activity Charts on this page represent top application access totals in the following categories:

• **Application Accesses by Application Group**: a grid chart showing the application groups containing the applications, with Application Discovery enabled, that accrued the highest number of successful accesses. Application group sizes in the chart are proportional to the number of accesses, compared with other groups. Tooltips show a count of the accesses made to that group. To learn more about Application Groups, see <u>Adding Application Groups to the Controller</u>.

- **Most Application Accesses by Location**: a bar chart showing a list of the most active user locations with respect to application access. Tooltips show a count of the application accesses by that location.
- **Most Application Accesses by Device**: a bar chart showing a list of the most active user device types with respect to application access. Tooltips show a count of the application accesses by that device type.
- **Most Application Accesses by User Group**: a bar chart showing a list of the most active user groups with respect to application access. Tooltips show a count of the application accesses by users in that user group.

Hover your pointer over a particular element to view a tooltip showing the label and total.

Default ZTA Gateway Applications

The *Controller* includes a default secure access policy called "Application discovery", disabled by default, that is used to define behavior for applications and resources that are not controlled by a specifically-created secure access policy. In this policy, you can add a default *nZTA Gateway* that you want to use to handle all such requests. To learn more about configuring a default *nZTA Gateway*, see <u>Configuring a</u> Default Gateway for Application Discovery.

Due to the nature of the typical background resource and API requests made by a client device during normal use of a web-based application, the metrics shown on this page might include a large number of secondary application and API requests that *nZTA* identifies and logs as not falling under the remit of the primary application's secure access policy. Such requests have been handled instead by the default *nZTA* Gateway.



The applications listed on this tab could be operating system triggered resource requests related, for example, to the act of connecting to the internet. It should not be assumed that the URLs and IP addresses shown here are automatically connected to accessing a *nZTA*-controlled application or resource.

The *Default Gateway Applications* tab shows usage metrics for all applications and resources handled by the default *nZTA Gateway*:



Viewing usage charts and graphs for default nZTA Gateway applications

The display is split into sections:

- Summary Ribbon
- Default Gateway Application Stats
- Access Trend
- Activity charts for Most Application Accesses by Location, Most Application Accesses by Device, and Most Application Accesses by User Group.

Each chart in the display includes a **View all** link providing access to a detail page showing log records for the corresponding chart. These log records include links to the application and user involved in the logged event. *Ivanti* recommends using this page to access the metrics page for the specific application (see <u>Showing Usage Data for a Specific Application</u>) or user (see <u>Showing Activity for a</u> <u>Specific User</u>). This method of navigation offers an alternative to searching for a specific application through the "Select Application" filter option, where the exact application name might not be known (for example, discovered and default applications not specifically defined in a secure access policy). To learn more about using the chart detail page, see <u>Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart</u>.

The summary ribbon provides the following metrics:

- All Applications: The number of applications handled by the default *nZTA Gateway*.
- Active Applications: The number of default *nZTA Gateway* applications accessed during the selected time period.
- **Users**: The number of users active with default *nZTA Gateway* applications.
- Devices: The number of devices accessing default nZTA Gateway applications.
- **Gateways**: Denotes the *nZTA Gateway*, or number of *nZTA Gateway*s in the Gateway Group, selected as the *default Gateway* in the "Application Discovery" secure access policy.



The application details shown here are unique to this page and are not included in other summary ribbons or metrics involving *all* applications.

The Default Gateway Application Stats panel provides two charts:

- **Top Application Type**: A bar chart showing the application types that attracted the greatest numbers of application accesses during the selected time period (for example, FQDN, URL, or IP address).
- Top Application Protocol: A bar chart showing the application protocol types that attracted the greatest number of application accesses during the selected time period (for example, Web, RDP, or SSH).

For both charts, hover your pointer over each bar to display a tooltip of the type and number of accesses recorded.

The **Access Trend** panel shows application access trends that occurred during the selected time period. You can choose to display this information through line and bar charts, or in a Sankey chart. Use the toggle icon at the top-right to select the required view:



Toggle between line/bar chart view and Sankey chart view

To expand the current view, click the Full Screen icon:

[]



Expand the current view



Click this icon again to return to the standard view.

In line/bar chart view. The display is split into two segments:

- A line chart showing the number of accesses for the top-10 requested applications during each hourly period of the day
- A bar chart showing one of four data types, selected using the **Filter Bar Chart By** drop-down control:
 - Unique User Count: Shows a count of unique user activity identified during each hourly period.
 - Unique Device Type Count: Shows a count of unique device types identified during each hourly period.
 - Unique Location Count: Shows a count of activity from unique user locations identified during each hourly period.
 - Unique User Group Count: Shows a count of activity from unique user groups identified during each hourly period.

0

If you set a Time Period filter than spans more than one day, the data values shown in each hour period are cumulative totals for the same hour in each day during the time period. In this chart, hover your pointer over each hourly interval to view a tooltip showing the corresponding data totals. Furthermore, you can click and drag a select box across a shorter time period to zoom in on a narrower time window. To return to the full 24 hour period, click the zoom out icon:



Zoom out from a selected time period

To toggle on or off the data for a particular application, click the name in the legend. Or, to view only the data for a specific application, click the corresponding line in the graph.

In the Sankey chart view, *nZTA* provides an alternate visualization of application access activity, showing directed flow between related objects.



User Access Trends Sankey chart for default nZTA Gateway applications

The chart maps **User Groups > Devices > Gateways > Applications**. By hovering your pointer over a flow of interest, *nZTA* displays a tooltip confirming the scale of the activity between the two objects connected by the flow. To focus the display on a specific flow, or to identify related objects that interact with this flow, click the chart at a point of interest. *nZTA* provides highlighting to all flows that pass through the point selected.

The Activity Charts on this page represent top application access totals in the following categories:

- **Most Application Accesses by Location**: a bar chart showing a list of the most active user locations with respect to application access. Tooltips show a count of the application accesses by that location.
- **Most Application Accesses by Device**: a bar chart showing a list of the most active user device types with respect to application access. Tooltips show a count of the application accesses by that device type.
- **Most Application Accesses by User Group**: a bar chart showing a list of the most active user groups with respect to application access. Tooltips show a count of the application accesses by users in that user group.

Hover your pointer over a particular element to view a tooltip showing the label and total.

When viewing metrics on this page, the following limitations should be noted:

- Non-Compliance messages are not generated for the default *nZTA Gateway*. This is due to the fact *Ivanti Secure Access Client* blocks such messages directly without sending them on to the *nZTA Gateway*.
- The default *nZTA Gateway* application details captured on this page are not included in the metrics captured on the *Network Overview* page. However, the default *nZTA Gateway* is still shown on the *Network Overview* page for monitoring purposes (for example, CPU, disk, and memory usage).
- Anomaly detection for applications handled by the default *nZTA Gateway* (especially business hours anomalies) is not displayed on any of the *Insights* dashboards. This is due to the fact that the number of applications detected can be very large, which can in turn impact the user UEBA Threat score.
- Log records for applications handled by the default *nZTA Gateway* are displayed only on the Secure Access > Gateways > Logs page. These records are not displayed on the Insights > Logs page.
- If a user associated with the default User Group tries to access applications handled by the default *nZTA Gateway*, the *Users* dashboard for that specific user displays only the user UEBA Threat score, risk rank and the moving average on the *Access Trend* chart. It does not capture details of the default gateway applications accessed, primarily to ensure that the application data displayed here does not become overpopulated.

Configuring Default Gateway Application

A Configure button is provided in the *nZTA Gateway* Applications page to trigger the workflow of blocking the discovered applications behind default gateway.

To configure default nZTA Gateway application:

1. In the default nZTA Gateway applications page, click Configure.

The *Configure Applications* page is displayed showing a list of discovered applications behind the default gateway.

<	Configure Applications ③ 16 Oct 2022 22 Oct 2022 GMT 🗄 3								
DEFAULT GATEWAY APPLICATIONS 151 APPLICATIONS SEARCH Q = 3 + Creations									
	DATE 🔶	тіме (GMT) 🔶			GATEWAY NAME				
	17 Oct 2022	01:21:56 P	ad.360yield.com	443	blackthorn-bng-3				
	17 Oct 2022	01:21:56 P	ad.as.amanad.adtdp.com	443	blackthorn-bng-3				
	17 Oct 2022	01:21:56 P	ads.betweendigital.com	443	blackthorn-bng-3				
	17 Oct 2022	01:21:56 P	ads.pubmatic.com	443	blackthorn-bng-3				
	17 Oct 2022	01:21:56 P	ads.us.e-planning.net	443	blackthorn-bng-3				
	17 Oct 2022	01:21:56 P	ads.yieldmo.com	443	blackthorn-bng-3				
	17 Oct 2022	01:21:56 P	ap.lijit.com	443	blackthorn-bng-3				

Configure default nZTA Gateway applications

- 2. In the search box provided, start typing the application name. nZTA auto-completes any matching application name.
- Select an application from the list and click Create Policy to create a Secure Access Policy. To learn more about creating a secure access application, see <u>Creating/Editing Secure Access</u> <u>Policies</u>.

Showing Usage Data for a Specific Application

To view usage data and metrics for a specific application, use the **Set Application** option in the filter menu:

		7
	Set User	
,	Set Application	~

Activating the Set Application option

Alternatively, from the **Network Overview** page, access specific application data from the **Applications** info-panel view. For more details, see Using the Summary Ribbon.

15 Feb 2021 . 15 Feb 2021 12:00 AM 3:59 PM GMT Application of All Gateways 🛈 **=** 3 ₹ ÷ < juniper.net Discovered Application FIRST ACCESSED LAST ACCESSED TYPE PORT IP ADDRESS APPLICATION LOCATION GATEWAY NAME GATEWAY LOCATION SECURE ACCESS POLICY 08 FEB 2021 443 104.122.12.148 BENGALURU AZURE SAN JOSE POLICY NAME 15 FEB 2021 WEB APPLICATION DEVICE TYPE ACCESS ACCESS TREND ~ 2 23 0 20 w 19 a 2 AM 1 AM 2 AM 3 AM 4 AM 5 AM 6 AM 7 AM 8 AM 9 AM 10 AM 11 AM 12 PM 1 PM 2 PM 3 PM 4 PM 7 PM 8 PM 9 PM 10 PM 11 PM View all ۲ View All D TOP USERS USER ACCESS LOCATIONS

nZTA displays the Application page, showing activity for the selected application:

Viewing usage data for a specific application

Application Accesses

10

Understanding the Display

The Application page contains the following components:

- Filter bar, allowing the selection of active or historic data. For details, see Using the Filter Bar.
- **Summary ribbon**, showing details of the selected application. For more details, see <u>Using the</u> <u>Summary Ribbon</u>.
- **Application Device Type Access**, showing accesses per device type. For more details, see Viewing Application Accesses by Device Type.
- Access trend, showing application accesses, non-compliance, and errors over time. For more details, seeViewing Access Trends for the Selected Application.
- Activity charts, showing top users and locations. For more details, see <u>Viewing Application</u> Activity Charts.

10

Application Accesses

18 Jul 2021 - 24 Jul 2021 12:00 AM 11:59 PM GMT ~ Application Device Type Access of All Gateways (i) **H** J < 5 windows Application Access APPLICATION DEVICE TYPE ACCESS - III SEARCH 0 🖬 🤤 5 log entry found SESSION APPLICATION USER A USER CONTRACTOR OF DEVICE CONTRACTOR DEVICE APPLICATION APPLICATION OF DEVICE CONTRACTOR DEVICE DEVICE DEVICE DEVICE DEVICE DEVICE DEVICE DEVICE DE APPLICATIOI APPLICATIOI DISCOVEREI PROTOCOL DATE 个 TIME (GMT) \Upsilon 2021-07-23 11:55:02 e3e00... Atlassiar bngtest: banga... 1b0a2... India black... url Bng Apps No HTTPS 2021-07-23 11:55:02 e3e00... Atlassiar bngtest: banga... 1b0a2... India black... url HTTPS Bng Apps No 2021-07-23 11:55:02 e3e00... Atlassiar bngtest: banga... 1b0a2... India HTTPS black... url Bng Apps No 2021-07-23 11:54:52 e3e00... Atlassiar bngtest: banga... 1b0a2... India Bng Apps No HTTPS black... url 2021-07-23 11:54:52 e3e00... Atlassiar bngtest: banga... 1b0a2... India black... url Bng Apps No HTTPS

Each chart on this page includes a **View all** link. This link provides access to a detail view showing logs for the corresponding chart. For example:

Viewing Application Device Type Access detailed logs

Each detail view shows logs for the corresponding chart or category. To learn more about using the chart detail page, see <u>Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart</u>.

Using the Summary Ribbon

The Summary Ribbon at the top of the Application page shows details for the application:

juniper.net								Discovered Application
FIRST ACCESSED	LAST ACCESSED	TYPE	PORT	IP ADDRESS	APPLICATION LOCATION	GATEWAY NAME	GATEWAY LOCATION	SECURE ACCESS POLICY
08 FEB 2021	15 FEB 2021	WEB	443	104.122.12.148	BENGALURU	AZURE	SAN JOSE	POLICY NAME

Viewing the summary ribbon

The summary ribbon provides the following information:

- First Accessed: The date on which the application was first accessed.
- Last Accessed: The date on which the application was most recently accessed.

- **Type**: The application type. For example, "Web".
- **Port**: The port on which the application is accessed.
- IP Address: The IP address through which the application is accessed.
- Application Location: The geographic location where the application is hosted.
- Gateway Name: The name of the nZTA Gateway managing the application.
- Gateway Location: The location of the *nZTA Gateway* managing the application.
- **Secure Access Policy**: The name of the Secure Access Policy governing access to the application. Click the name of the policy to access the *Secure Access Policies* page.



If your application is **discovered**, this is denoted by a label in the ribbon. To learn more about discovered applications, see <u>Reviewing Application Usage</u>.

Viewing Application Accesses by Device Type



The Application Device Type Access panel shows application accesses by device type:

Viewing application accesses by device type

The chart provides a breakdown of application accesses for each device type. The number in the center of the chart is a total for all device types. Hover your pointer over a device type to view a tooltip showing the number of accesses made by devices of that type.

Viewing Access Trends for the Selected Application

nZTA uses this section to show access trends for the selected application that occurred during the selected time period.

You can choose to display this information through line and bar charts (as shown), or in a Sankey chart. Use the toggle icon at the top-right to select the required view:

|--|

Toggle between line/bar chart view and Sankey chart view

To expand the current view, click the Full Screen icon:

[]

Expand the current view

The line and bar chart shows application access trends through each hourly interval of the day:



Viewing hourly access trends for an application

The horizontal axis reflects the 24 hourly intervals in a day, with the vertical axis showing the number of accesses. As users access the application, access attempts are recorded and shown in this chart according to the hour in which they occurred. This in turn provides an overview of the daily access trends for the application.

The bars denote the number of accesses made, with the line charting the moving average over 30 days.

Errors and non-compliances detected in the hour are marked as per the legend.

Hover your pointer over an hour interval to see a tooltip summary of data points for that hour:



Viewing a data summary tooltip

To learn more about the application access Sankey chart, see <u>Viewing the Application Access Trends</u> <u>Sankey Chart</u>.

Viewing the Application Access Trends Sankey Chart

The Application Access Trends Sankey chart provides an alternate visualization of access activity for your selected application, showing directed flow between related objects. The width of each stream in the flow is proportional to the utilization of the object the flow passes through, allowing an administrator to view significant usage trends for the selected application.

To toggle between the application access trends line/bar chart and the application access trends Sankey chart, use the icons at the top-right:



Toggle between line/bar chart view and Sankey chart view

By clicking the toggle display icon, the Application Access Trends Sankey chart replaces the line/bar chart in the display. All other components remain unchanged.



Displaying the Application Access Sankey Chart

The Sankey chart maps **Locations** > **Devices** > **Gateways** > **Application** for the selected application. By hovering your pointer over a flow of interest, *nZTA* displays a tooltip confirming the scale of the activity between the two objects connected by the flow.

To focus the display on a specific flow, or to identify related objects that interact with this flow, click the chart at a point of interest. *nZTA* provides highlighting to all flows that pass through the point selected.

Viewing Application Activity Charts

On the Application page, nZTA provides the following charts:

- Top Users: Shows the users who accrued the most accesses for the selected application.
- **User Access Locations**: Shows the user locations from which the most accesses were recorded for the selected application.

Hover your pointer over a bar in the chart to view a tooltip showing the number of accesses made.

Viewing Currently Enrolled User Devices

You can view a list of the user devices currently enrolled with the *Controller* through the Tenant Admin Portal.

To view currently enrolled user devices:

- 1. Log into the Tenant Admin Portal.
- 2. Click **Insights > Devices**.

The **Devices** page appears.

Devices (i)										
Actions V					Search		Group by	✓	ა 📖 ≔	
Unen	roll S	elected Devices	USER NAME 1	OS TYPE ↑ 🍸	OS VERSION	► IP ADDRESS ↑	DEVICE TYPE	♥ DEVICE ↑		el 🕆 🏹
Enabl	le/Dis	able Debug Logs		× macOS	13.3.1	115.99.188.213	macOS	Bengaluru		MORE 💠 📥
Uploa	ad Lo	gs		× macOS	12.6.7	49.37.114.163	macOS	Bhubaneswar		MORE 🜩
Bulk	Unen	roll .		× macOS	13.5.1	73.116.200.48	macOS	Тгасу		MORE 💠
Autor	matic	Unenroll Settings		× macOS	12.0.1	49.204.20.247	macOS	Hyderabad		MORE 🜩
	•	0509fde023b24e3aa		X macOS	10.15.7	73.116.200.48	macOS	Тгасу	\bigcirc	MORE 🜩
	•	069ca8e6384b43ae		Microsoft	10.0.19044	49.37.251.24	Windows	Bengaluru	Critical	MORE 🜩
\Box	•	0813742e3c6243a7b		X macOS	13.4.1	101.0.63.133	macOS	Bengaluru		MORE 🜩
	0	0a3937b726404394a		🗙 macOS	13.3.1	103.74.140.216	macOS	Bengaluru		MORE 🜩
Ο	•	Obe14299a6e247809		× macOS	13.0.1	122.171.21.201	macOS	Bengaluru		
-										•
						Rows	per page: 10	✓ 1 - 10 of 139	found. (1 sele	cted) < 🖒

Enrolled user device list

Use this page to:

- View information concerning the devices your users have enrolled to your *nZTA* service.
- Group the records by unique data item using the Group By drop-down list.
- Filter the records based on column data using the column filters.
- Perform following using the **Actions** drop-down menu:
 - Unenroll selected devices.
 - Enable/Disable debug logs.
 - Upload *Ivanti Secure Access Client* log files from selected devices to the *Controller* for analysis, see Uploading Client Logs to the Controller.
 - Do a Bulk enroll.
 - Set Automatic unenroll.

If you click Device ID link within a specific row from the table of devices, *nZTA* displays an info-panel providing further details:

Device Ove	erview	:	×
Device ID 069c	a8e6384b43aea52	c0d6489c195bd	
User Name	sunil.ku	umar@ivanti.com	
Last Login	Fri, 29 Sep 2023	12:42:18 PM GMT	
OS	Microsoft Windo	ows 10 Enterprise	
OS Version		10.0.19044	
IP Address		49.37.251.24	1
Device Type		Windows	1
Location		Bengaluru	1
Manufacturer		Dell Inc.	1
Model		Precision 5560	1
Serial No		7B480J3	1
Created	Fri, 04 Aug 2023 1	10:41:46 AM GMT	1
Debug Logs		Disabled	1
Client Version		22.3.3.20133	1
Risk Level		~	
Critical Low	High Med	lium	
NVIDIA Fec Application Environme	lerated Learning n Runtime nt (FLARE)	VRR 6.48	

Enrolled user device info-panel

To unenroll selected devices from the list, tick the check box in the row for one or more chosen devices, click the **Actions** drop-down list, and then select **Unenroll Selected Devices**.

To automatically unenroll inactive devices after a set time period, click the **Actions** drop-down list, and then select **Automatic Unenroll Settings**.

Then, in the *Automatically Unenroll Devices* dialog, select an inactivity duration and click **Save**. All devices that reach this duration limit without being logged-in are automatically unenrolled. To disable the automatic unenroll mechanism, disable **Automatic Unenroll Enabled** switch.

Uploading Client Logs to the Controller

To help *Ivanti* Technical Support teams troubleshoot and debug any issues your end user devices have when connecting to your *nZTA* services, you can upload logs from connected devices to the *Controller* for analysis. This process can be initiated remotely from the *nZTA* Tenant Admin portal, or from the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* application installed on the device.

Client connection logs are stored securely in the *Controller* and cannot be accessed by unauthorized users. To obtain the logs, your device must be in a *connected* state.



Upload of client logs is not currently supported on *Ivanti Secure Access Client* Linux variants.

To upload Ivanti Secure Access Client logs for an enrolled device from the nZTA Tenant Admin Portal:

- 1. Log into the Tenant Admin Portal.
- 2. Click Secure Access > Devices > Enrolled Devices.

The **Enrolled Devices** page appears.

3. From the list of enrolled devices, tick the check box in the row for your selected device and click the following icon:



Upload client logs for the selected device



Devices running *Ivanti Secure Access Client* versions released earlier than *nZTA* 20.11 do not have the upload capability and cannot respond to this feature.

If your device is enrolled, but not connected, an error message is displayed "User session is not found".

4. *nZTA* displays a confirmation dialog showing the details of the task:

1. Please confirm U	Jser Device details	
Username	autouser10@ztaperfqa.net	
Manufacturer	VMware, Inc.	
OS	Microsoft Windows 10 Education- 10.0.18362	
Previous Upload	N/A	
2. If there is a case	associated to this upload request, please add the Case ID	

Confirming upload of the selected client logs

- 5. Confirm the details in *section 1* and provide the optional **case ID** (if instructed to do so by your support representative) in *section 2*.
- 6. To initiate the upload process, click **Upload Logs**.

The upload process begins.

7. A log upload status section is added to the info-panel for that device. This shows the progress of the upload and includes a timestamp of the last upload:

Upload Log Status	
Completed	
Created	2020-11-10 16:19:44
Case ID	Tim-1234

Uploaded log status for a device - in progress

Upload Log Status	
Uploading	
Created	2020-11-10 16:19:44
Case ID	Tim-1234

Uploaded log status for a device - complete

To upload logs from the end user device:

- 1. On the end user device, open the Ivanti Secure Access Client application.
- 2. In the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* application, use the **Upload** facility in the **Logs** sub-menu.

For example:

Secure Access Client	Ivanti Secure Access Client
ivanti	Logs
Secure Access Client	Annotate Logs
UI Mode >	Annotation
Logs	Insert annotation to mark the log file at specific location
Fe Logs Settings	Set Log Level
About	Info and Errors
Help	Select the log level option to enable
Exit	Save Log Save all log and diagnostics files as a single file Save Log
	Upload Logs Ĝ desk1
	Cancel

Uploading logs



The log upload facility within *Ivanti Secure Access Client* requires the device to be enrolled with the *Controller*. However, a user can initiate a log upload in both connected and disconnected states.

Monitoring nZTA Gateway Activity

To view usage data and metrics for all *nZTA Gateways*, or for a specific *nZTA Gateway*, use the *Gateways Overview* page.

To view the *Gateways Overview* page, select **Insights > Gateways**:



Viewing nZTA Gateway metrics

By default, this page shows data for all *nZTA Gateways*. To view data for a specific *nZTA Gateway*, use the filter feature described in Using the Filter Bar.



Some features on this page require your *nZTA Gateways* to be running as version 22.1R1 or later. *nZTA Gateways* running versions earlier than this might not be included in some status and health data.

Understanding the Display

The Gateways Overview page contains the following components:

- Filter bar, allowing the selection of active or historic data. For details, see Using the Filter Bar.
- **Summary ribbon**, showing metrics for deployed *nZTA Gateways*. For more details, see <u>Using the</u> <u>Summary Ribbon</u>.

- **Gateway Stats**, showing an overview of the status of your deployed *nZTA Gateways*. For more details, see <u>Reviewing the Status of your Deployed nZTA Gateways</u>.
- Access trend, showing *nZTA Gateway* usage metrics over time. For more details, see <u>Viewing</u> nZTA Gateway Access Trends.
- Activity charts, showing top 10 *nZTA Gateway* usage metrics in a number of categories. For more details, see Viewing nZTA Gateway Activity Charts.

Each chart on this page includes a **View all** link. This link provides access to a detail view showing logs for the corresponding chart. For example:



Viewing detailed logs for Top 10 Gateways by Errors

Each detail view shows logs for the corresponding chart or category. To learn more about using the chart detail page, see <u>Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart</u>.

Using the Summary Ribbon

The Summary Ribbon at the top of the *Gateways Overview* page shows relevant summary statistics relating to your deployed *nZTA Gateways*:



Viewing the summary ribbon

The summary ribbon provides the following information:

- All Gateways: The total number of deployed *nZTA Gateways*.
- Active Gateways: The number of active deployed *nZTA Gateways* in the selected time period. In other words, those *nZTA Gateways* that are online and reporting activity.
- Active Users: The number of users accessing applications and resources managed by your active *nZTA Gateways* during the selected time period.
- Active Devices: The number of unique devices used to access applications and resources managed by your active *nZTA Gateways* during the selected time period.
- **Critical Errors**: The number of critical errors observed on your *nZTA Gateways* during the selected time period.
- **Non-Compliance**: The number of non-compliant attempts to access the applications managed by your *nZTA Gateways*.

Reviewing the Status of your Deployed nZTA Gateways

The **Gateway Stats** panel shows the status of your deployed *nZTA Gateway*s during the selected time period:



Viewing the Status of your deployed nZTA Gateways

The panel provides three separate components:

- A visual breakdown of your deployed *nZTA Gateways* as *Offline Gateways* (*nZTA Gateways* deployed but unresponsive/unavailable), *Online Gateways* (responsive *nZTA Gateways* not currently handling user traffic), and *Active Gateways* (*nZTA Gateways* handling user traffic).
- A visual breakdown of your deployed *nZTA Gateways* by version.
- The software updates available for your deployed *nZTA Gateways*, if applicable.

Viewing nZTA Gateway Access Trends

This section shows nZTA Gateway access trends that occurred during the selected time period:



Viewing nZTA Gateway access trends

The horizontal axis of each chart reflects the selected time period, and dynamically adapts to span the period in increments appropriate to that period. For example, 5 minute intervals for the *Last Hour* view, or hourly intervals where you select a whole day.

To expand the current view, click the Full Screen icon:

23

Expand the current view

The display is split into two segments:

- A line chart showing the number of *nZTA Gateway* accesses in the selected time period.
- A bar chart showing access trends for a selected data type. Use the **Show Trend For** drop-down control to select the chart data type. Choose from:
 - Critical Errors
 - Throughput (MB)
 - Major Errors
 - Non Compliances

In this chart, hover your pointer over each interval point to view a tooltip showing the corresponding data totals. Furthermore, you can click and drag a select box across a shorter time period to zoom in on a narrower time window. To return to the full period, click the *zoom out* icon:



Zoom out from a selected time period

In the line chart, toggle on or off the data for a particular trend type by clicking the name of the type in the legend.

Viewing nZTA Gateway Activity Charts

On the Gateways Overview page, nZTA provides the following charts:

- **Top 10 Gateways by Errors**: The top 10 *nZTA Gateways* for which errors were reported. Use the **Filter By** drop-down control to select the criteria for the chart. Choose from *Critical Errors, Major Errors,* or *Non-Compliances*.
- **Top 10 Gateways by Health**: The top 10 *nZTA Gateways* by system health. Use the **Filter By** drop-down control to select the criteria for the chart. Choose from average *CPU* usage, average *Swap Memory* usage, average *Disk Usage*, or *Network Throughput*.
- **Top 10 Gateways by Access**: The top 10 *nZTA Gateway*s by the number of accesses. Use the **Filter By** drop-down control to select the criteria for the chart. Choose from *Applications, Users,* or *Devices*.

Hover your pointer over a bar in the chart to view a tooltip showing the *nZTA Gateway* name and total applicable to that bar.

Reviewing Policy Failures

When a device attempts to access an application or resource controlled by a Secure Access Policy, the device must first comply with all relevant *device policies*. If the device does not meet one or more of the conditions in a policy, a failure event is recorded and access is denied. *nZTA* displays policy failure data and metrics in the *Policy Failures* page.

To view the *Policy Failures* page, select **Insights > Policy Failures**:



Viewing policy failure metrics

The failure types reported on this page are comprised of the following types:

- Network policy failures: a device does not meet the conditions in a policy containing a *Network* type device rule.
- Time-of-day policy failures: a device does not meet the conditions in a policy containing a *Time of day* type device rule.
- Compliance policy failures: a device does not meet the conditions in a policy containing other device compliance rules.



In this release, policy failures based on rules of type *Location* are not included in these metrics.

For more information on configuring device rules and policies, see <u>Creating Device Policies and Device</u> <u>Policy Rules</u>.

Understanding the Display

The Policy Failures page contains the following components:

- Filter bar, allowing the selection of active or historic data. For details, see Using the Filter Bar.
- **Summary ribbon**, showing metrics pertaining to detected policy failures across various categories. For more details, see <u>Using the Summary Ribbon</u>.
- **Policy Failures Access trend**, showing policy failure counts over time. For more details, see Viewing Policy Failures Access Trends.
- Activity charts, showing top 10 failure counts in various categories. For more details, see Viewing Policy Failure Activity Charts.

Each chart on this page includes a **View all** link. This link provides access to a detail view showing logs for the corresponding chart. For example:



Viewing detailed logs for Top 10 Applications With Failures

Each detail view shows logs for the corresponding chart or category. To learn more about using the chart detail page, see <u>Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart</u>.

Using the Summary Ribbon

The Summary Ribbon at the top of the *Policy Failures* page shows policy failure totals across a number of categories:

36	4	12	8	2	26
TOTAL FAILURES	FAILED USERS	FAILED APPLICATIONS	COMPLIANCE FAILURES	NETWORK FAILURES	TIME OF DAY FAILURES

Viewing the summary ribbon

The summary ribbon provides the following information:

- **Total Failures**: The total number of policy failures detected across your deployment in the selected time period.
- **Failed Users**: The number of users who triggered a policy failure upon attempting to access an application or resource controlled by a Secure Access Policy.
- **Failed Applications**: The number of applications to which access was denied due to a policy failure.
- **Compliance Failures**: The number of compliance failures recorded against all device policies, excluding network and time-of-day type policies.
- **Network Failures**: The number of failures recorded against a network type device policy.
- Time of Day Failures: The number of failures recorded against a time-of-day type device policy.

Viewing Policy Failures Access Trends

nZTA uses this section to show policy failure access trends that occurred during the selected time period:



Viewing policy failure access trends

To expand the current view, click the Full Screen icon:

23

Expand the current view

The display is split into two segments:

- A line chart showing the number of policy failures for network, time-of-day, and compliance (marked in the chart as "hc") policy types during each hourly period of the day
- A bar chart showing one of two data types, selected using the **Filter Bar Chart By** drop-down control:
 - User Count
 - Application Count

0

If you set a *Time Period* filter than spans more than one day, the data values shown in each hour period are cumulative totals for the same hour in each day during the time period.

In this chart, hover your pointer over each hourly interval to view a tooltip showing the corresponding data totals. Furthermore, you can click and drag a select box across a shorter time period to zoom in on a narrower time window. To return to the full 24 hour period, click the *zoom out* icon:

e

Zoom out from a selected time period

In the Policy Failures Count line chart, toggle on or off the data for a particular failure trend type by clicking the name of the type in the legend. Or, to view only the data for a specific type, click the corresponding line in the graph.

Viewing Policy Failure Activity Charts

On the *Policy Failures* page, *nZTA* provides the following charts:

- **Top 10 Users With Failures**: The top 10 users users who triggered a policy failure upon attempting to access an application or resource controlled by a Secure Access Policy.
- **Top 10 Applications With Failures**: The top 10 applications to which access was denied due to a policy failure.
- **Top 10 Compliance Failure Policies**: The top 10 compliance device policies that reported failures.
- Top 10 Network Failure Policies: The top 10 network device policies that reported failures.
- **Top 10 Time of Day Failure Policies**: The top 10 time-of-day device policies that reported failures.

Hover your pointer over a bar in the chart to view a tooltip showing the number of failure in that case.

Checking the Logs

The *nZTA* Logs page displays audit and activity events observed by your *nZTA* secure access infrastructure. These events are reported to the *Controller* by your *nZTA Gateway*s and the Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA) service.

To view the Logs page:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- 2. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Insights** icon, then select **Logs**.

The Logs page appears.

Logs	í					
Log	s Scheduled Jobs	_				
LOG TYP Event	PE t Logs			29 Apr 30 Apr 2024 - 2024 10:27 AM 10:27 AM	IST 🛱 🐧 Search	Group by 🗸
STATUS	S USER NAME 个	DATE 🛧	ТІМЕ 🛧	SEVERITY 1	GATEWAY NAME	
•	System	30 Apr 2024	10:19:25 AM	INFO	zta-dfs-bng-back	LMDB
•	System	30 Apr 2024	10:03:13 AM	INFO		The cu
•	System	30 Apr 2024	10:03:13 AM	INFO		The cu
•	System	30 Apr 2024	09:59:57 AM	INFO	zta-dfs-bng	LMDB
•	System	30 Apr 2024	09:57:10 AM	CRITICAL		API GE
•	System	30 Apr 2024	09:46:41 AM	INFO	bng-dfs-lab-esx	LMDB
•	System	30 Apr 2024	09:33:13 AM	INFO		No nev
•	System	30 Apr 2024	09:32:58 AM	INFO		LMDB
•	System	30 Apr 2024	09:30:43 AM	INFO		Numb
•	System	30 Apr 2024	09:30:43 AM	INFO		Numb

Viewing the Logs

This page comprises the following sections:

- The time period selector, see <u>Setting a Log Time Period</u>.
- Log selection and filtering controls, see Setting Log Criteria and Filtering the Output.
- The log record display, see <u>Viewing Log Records</u>.



nZTA additionally provides a separate log records page pertaining to activity for specific *nZTA Gateways*. To learn more, see <u>Viewing and Monitoring Gateways in</u> the Controller.

Setting a Log Time Period

Use the time period selector to set a time period or time range for your log results. Click the date-time display (highlighted) to show the selector dialog:

LOG TYPE Access	Logs 🗸									29 2 10:5	9 Apr 024 62 AM	- 10	30 Apr 2024):52 AN	19	ST 🗖
STATUS	Last 60 minutes Last 24 hours	From							То						
•	Last 7 days	мо Ма	^{итн} arch	\$ YEAR 2024			\$	молтн April		\$ YEAR 2024				\$	
•	Last 1 month	Su	Mo	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa	Su	Мо	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa
•	Custom	25	26	27	28	29	1	2	31	1	2	3	4	5	6
-		3	4	5	6	7	8	9	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
0		10	11	12	13	14	15	16	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
		17	18	19	20	21	22	23	21	22	23	24	25	26	27
Ŭ		24	25	26	27	28	29	30	28	29	30	1	2	3	4
•		31	1	2	3	4	5	6							
•		HR 10				MIN 54		$\overline{}$	HR 10				41N 52		$\overline{}$
•						J-T									
•										C	ANC	EL		APF	PLY

Setting a log time period

Set the time period you want to view using the available ranges at the top-left. Choose from:

- Last 60 minutes
- Last 24 hours (default)
- Last 7 days
- Last 1 month
- Custom

For **Custom**, set a specific *From* and *To* to denote the start and end of your custom date/time range.



The date/time calendar controls are enabled for only the **Custom** option. However, the calendar continues to identify the applicable start and end datetime for all predefined time periods. To apply your changes, click **Apply**. The selected time period is displayed in the filter bar and data on the page updates accordingly.



To configure the timezone, see <u>Setting the Timezone</u>.

Setting Log Criteria and Filtering the Output

To set the criteria you want to use for viewing log data, use the controls above the main log display. This section also contains functions to highlight search terms, apply filters, and schedule log export jobs.

Select the primary log type you want to display by using the Log Type drop-down list:

LOG TYPE Access Logs	~
-------------------------	---

Selecting a log type

Choose from:

- Access Logs
- Admin Logs
- Event Logs

Then, use the icons adjacent to the log selector to further control your log selection. Choose from the following:

• Logs are refreshed automatically by changing the criteria. To manually refresh the log display, click the following icon:



Page refresh

• To search for a term in the displayed logs, click the following field:

Search

Search term highlighting

nZTA highlights all matches in the log display.
• To trigger the advanced filter selection, use the following icon:

7

Advanced Filtering

To learn more, see Filtering the Logs.

• To change the fields displayed for each log line, click the following icon:

000

Show or hide log fields

In the field selector, click a field name to toggle between show or hide. A *tick* icon indicates a displayed field. After you are finished, click the context menu icon to close the selector. See <u>Viewing Log Records</u>.

• To apply grouping to the displayed log records, click the **Group By** button.

This feature applies grouping to a selected field in the log record display, such that records are accumulated and grouped together under each unique data item identified in that field. Through grouping, an admin can quickly view the number of records of a particular type.

To learn more about record grouping, see Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart.

• To remove any applied filters from the data set, click the following icon:

٢

Remove any applied filters from the data

• To export the displayed log as a CSV or JSON text file, or to set up a new scheduled log export job, click the **Export Logs** button.

To learn more about log export jobs, see Exporting Logs.

• To view the status of currently-scheduled log export jobs, select the Scheduled Jobs tab.

To learn more about scheduled log export jobs, see "Viewing Scheduled Log Export Jobs and Downloading Log Files" on page 188.

• To change the view density, click the following icon:



Switching between default and dense log record views

Viewing Log Records

The main part of the page shows the log records that match your selected criteria. The number of matching log records is displayed at the top-left.

Each log line includes the following fields:

• A status indicator showing the level of severity associated with each log event. Use the following table for a guide to the meaning of each indicator color:

Severity	Status Color	
INFO	Green	
MINOR	Amber	
MAJOR	Amber	
CRITICAL	Red	

- The date and time of the event.
- The message ID that identifies this type of event.
- The severity of the event in words.
- The session ID that was the source of the event, where applicable.
- The ID of the *nZTA Gateway* that reported the event, where applicable.
- The name of the *nZTA Gateway* that reported the event, where applicable.
- The IP address identified as the source of the event.
- The user name associated with the event, where applicable.
- The ID of the device associated with the event, where applicable.
- The message (description) of the event.

Use the page controls at the bottom of the window to select the number of log records/rows per page:

50 Rows per page: √ 100 200

Setting the number of log rows per page

Choose from:

- 50
- 100 (default)
- 200

To cycle through the log pages, use the page controls at the bottom-right.

Where a single log message is too long for the display, use your pointing device to scroll the optional fields display to the left or right.

Furthermore, to view a single log entry in a dedicated panel, click the log message text to activate the info-panel view:

Log Overview	×
Severity	INFO
Username	autouser7@ztaperfqa.net
Time	12:11:45
Date	2024-04-30
Source IP	103.135.123.14
Controller	true
Message	Session created for user: [auto user7@ztaperfqa.net/saml-auth -ProdScript] from [103.135.123.1 4] with primary auth-server typ e: [SAML], primary auth-server name: [az-saml-auth-ProdScrip t], secondary auth-server type: [], secondary auth-servername: [], secondary auth-server user: [], mac-address: [].
Message ID	AUT32033
Device ID	3779184df8914d2db799236d01 6d220c

Viewing a single log entry in the info-panel



In the info-panel, use the **Previous** and **Next** icons to cycle through each log entry in turn.

Filtering the Logs

The **Logs** page provides an advanced field filter through which you can narrow down the displayed log entries to a sub-set that matches the filters you apply. You can also save filter definitions for later use.

To set a filter, click the following icon:



Activating the advanced filter

Next, use the side-panel dialog to add one or more new field filters.

ADVANCED FILTER
Match Any of the following rules
IS Not
+ ADD
Enter a name to save the filters

Adding a new log filter

In this dialog, select a matching criteria for the filters.

- All: performs AND operation on the filters
- Any: performs OR operation on the filters
- Not: Negates the list of filters

You can recall a saved filter through the **Saved Filters** drop-down list or set new filter criteria through the **Filter by** section.

By selecting a saved filter, the filter criteria are populated into the panel. To then apply the saved filter, click **APPLY FILTER**.

You can add additional criteria lines to a recalled filter before applying it, but the saved filter is unaffected.



1

Saved filters are preserved across all log pages in the Tenant Admin portal, but might not be valid for all pages. For example, a saved filter created on the **Insights** > **Logs** page might not be applicable to the data on the **Gateways** > **Logs** page (in other words, where a filter references a log field not applicable to *nZTA Gateways*). In this case, where you attempt to select an invalid filter, *nZTA* presents an error.

When setting new filter criteria, use the **Selector** drop-down list to choose the field you want to filter on, add an **Operator** type, and then enter the **Value** you want to apply. For the operator, choose from:

- IS: The selected field matches exactly the value you specify.
- **CONTAINS**: (where applicable) The selected field contains as a sub-string the value you specify.

To add further criteria to this filter, click the *plus* symbol. Then, repeat the above step as desired. To remove a criteria line, click the corresponding *X* icon.

To apply the defined filter, click **APPLY FILTER**.

Your filters remain in place through data refreshes, and active filters are identified by the *Filters are applied on this page* label at the top of the page. To remove a filter, click the filter icon (or the link at the top of the page) to re-display the filters side-panel dialog. Then, click **CLEAR ALL** to remove all active filters.

To save a filter for future use, use the save-as facility at the bottom of the panel. Enter a name for your saved filter in the text box provided, then click **Save**. You can recall your filter through the *Saved Filters* list at the top of the panel.

To delete saved filters, use the *Saved Filters* list. Select the check box adjacent to the filter, or filters, you want to delete, then click **DELETE** from the bottom of the panel.

Exporting Logs

nZTA provides the ability to export the currently-displayed log as a Comma-Separated Value (CSV) or JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) text file. You can download the log immediately or set up a scheduled job to activate or repeat the export action at a defined time and interval of your choosing.

To access the Export Logs page:

- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see <u>Logging in as a Tenant Administrator</u>.
- 2. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Insights** icon, then select **Logs**.

The *Logs* page appears.

- 3. Select the log type you want to display in the **Log Type** drop-down list. Choose from:
 - Access Logs
 - Admin Logs
 - Event Logs
- 4. Click the **Export Logs** button.

The Export Logs page appears:

HOME / LOGS / JOB STATUS Export Logs	
You have selected Logs of Type : Access logs	
Select an export format	
Export once OR set a schedule Set an export time frame (IS	T)
	~
Job name	
JOB NAME	
Please note: You've reached 2 out of	your 5 limit for exports.
Cancel Export	

The Export Logs settings page

Use the Export Logs settings page to configure an export operation, either to execute immediately as a one-off job, or as a scheduled job.

Configure the following settings:

- Select either **CSV** or **JSON** as the output format.
- Select the frequency of the export operation. Choose from:
 - **Export one time**: Perform the log export now as a single job.
 - **Daily data export**: Create a daily export job executed once per day from the selected start date, up to and including the stop date (if defined).
 - Weekly data export: Create a weekly export job executed once per week on the selected start day, up to and including the stop date (if defined).
 - **Monthly data export**: Create a monthly export job executed once per month on the selected start day, up to and including the stop date (if defined).

If a stop date is specified, this is the date the schedule ceases. In the case of weekly or monthly jobs, if this date falls before the expected run date for that period, the job is terminated without running. For example, in a weekly run scheduled to execute every Thursday, if the stop date is set as a Tuesday, the final run of the job would be the previous Thursday.



A daily data export job continues to run for one extra day beyond the selected end date in order to process the logs for the final scheduled day.



For daily/weekly/monthly frequency export jobs, *nZTA* allows for a maximum of 5 runs per scheduled export job. That is, each schedule runs a maximum of 5 times. On the sixth run, the first run is deleted (together with the log file), and so on.

- Set an export time frame. For one-time exports, choose from:
 - Last 60 minutes
 - Last 24 hours
 - Last 7 days
 - Last 1 month
 - Set a date range (30d max): This option presents a configurable start and end date.

For daily, weekly, and monthly exports, this option switches to show start and end date parameters. You do not need to specify an end date; in this case, the job remains active until deleted.

- Enter a **Job name** for the export operation. *nZTA* suggests an appropriate name; use this, or type your own.
- To execute the defined job, click **Export**.

To view all scheduled export logs jobs, and to download the log files created by each job, see <u>Viewing</u> <u>Scheduled Log Export Jobs and Downloading Log Files</u>.



nZTA allows for a maximum of 5 defined export jobs. Each job that you add reduces the total, as displayed at the bottom of the page. This is a separate limit to the maximum number of job runs described earlier.

Viewing Scheduled Log Export Jobs and Downloading Log Files

To view the status of your current log export jobs:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- 2. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Insights** icon, then select **Logs**.

The Logs page appears.

3. Select the **Scheduled Jobs** tab.

The Scheduled Jobs page appears:

Logs	í)						
Log	js	Scheduled Jobs						
Act	ions	∽ ৩						
) I	ов 个	SCHEDULE \uparrow	JOB TYPE 1	PREVIOUS RUN 个	CURRENT RUN 1	RUN TIMESTAMP	6
0	>	MonthlyExport_Bh avikManiarL3User_ CSV_IST	Monthly	Log Export	Completed	Scheduled	May 26, 2024 00:00 AM IST	De
	>	DailyExport_st2404	4_ Daily	Log Export	Completed	Scheduled	May 01, 2024 00:00 AM IST	Ju

Scheduled Jobs page

Use this page to:

- View the status and progress of currently scheduled log export jobs.
- Download log files for completed job runs.

For each job on the Job Status page, you can view the configured details of the export operation along with status indicators for progress of the previous and outstanding job runs.



A job run refers to a single run of a scheduled job. For example, in a weekly data export job, a job run refers to the export operation scheduled or completed for one specific week within the start and end dates. Thus, a scheduled log export job is comprised of one or more job runs.

The **Summary** column provides totals of successful job runs, unsuccessful/failed job runs, and inactive job runs.

Click any of the fields in a single job row to display an info-panel at the side showing more details about the scheduled job:

Job Details	:	×
Job Name		
MonthlyExport BhavikManiarL3User CSV IST		
Log Export Details		
Filters:		
username is bhavik.maniar@ivanti.com		
Gateway Type : zta		
Log Type : L4		
match_filter : AND		
Order : desc		
Search Text :		
Sort By : timestamp		
time_duration_type : custom		
Timezone offset: 550		
Innezone : Asia/Calculta		
user_id : bhavik.maniar@ivanu.com		
Job Start Date		
Apr 25, 2024 00:00 AM IST		
Apr 20, 2024 00:00 Am 101		
Job Expiration Date		
Dec 21, 2024 23:59 PM IST		
,, _,, _		
Job Created Date		
Apr 24, 2024 15:18 PM IST		
Job Run Details		
Runs So Far		
1 runs Completed		
- and completed		
Previous 1 Runs		
Apr 26, 2024 00:00 AM IST Completed		
the second s		

The Job Details info-panel

To access the log files and view more information about each individual job run, click the down-arrow adjacent to the *Job* name:

Scheduled Jobs							
s v) S							
10B ↑	SCHEDULE \uparrow	Ј ЈОВ ТҮРЕ 🥎	PREVIOUS RUN 个	CURRENT RUN 个	RUN TIMESTAMP	EXPIRATION	CREATE
✓ MonthlyExport_Bhav	Monthly	Log Export	Completed	Scheduled	May 26, 2024 00:00 AM IST	Dec 21 2024	Apr 24
				Scheduled	May 26, 2024 00:00 AM IST		
					Apr 26, 2024 00:00 AM IST		
> DailyExport_st2404_	Daily	Log Export	Completed	Scheduled	May 01, 2024 00:00 AM IST	Jul 31 2024	Apr 24
	Scheduled Jobs	Scheduled Jobs	Scheduled Jobs S S S S S S S S S S S S S	Scheduled Jobs S → S JOB ↑ SCHEDULE ↑ JOB TYPE ↑ PREVIOUS RUN ↑ > MonthlyExport_Bha\ Monthly Log Export Completed > DailyExport_st2404_ Daily Log Export Completed	Scheduled Jobs S → S JOB ↑ SCHEDULE ↑ JOB TYPE ↑ PREVIOUS RUN ↑ CURRENT RUN ↑ > MonthlyExport_Bha\ Monthly Log Export Completed Scheduled Scheduled Scheduled Completed Scheduled > DailyExport_st2404_ Daily Log Export Completed Scheduled	Scheduled Jobs S → S JOB ↑ SCHEDULE ↑ JOB TYPE ↑ PREVIOUS RUN ↑ CURRENT RUN ↑ RUN TIMESTAMP > MonthlyExport_Bha\ Monthly Log Export Completed Scheduled May 26, 2024 00:00 AM IST Scheduled May 26, 2024 00:00 AM IST Completed Apr 26, 2024 00:00 AM IST > DailyExport_st2404_ Daily Log Export Completed Scheduled	Scheduled Jobs S → S JOB ↑ SCHEDULE ↑ JOB TYPE ↑ PREVIOUS RUN ↑ CURRENT RUN ↑ RUN TIMESTAMP EXPIRATION > MonthlyExport_Bha\ Monthly Log Export Completed Scheduled May 26, 2024 00:00 AM IST Dec 21 2024 Completed Scheduled May 26, 2024 00:00 AM IST Dec 21 2024 Completed ♠ Apr 26, 2024 00:00 AM IST Dec 21 2024 Log Export Completed ♠ May 01, 2024 00:00 AM IST Jul 31 2024



Showing all job runs for a scheduled export job.



For daily/weekly/monthly frequency export jobs, *nZTA* allows for a maximum of 5 runs per scheduled export job. That is, each schedule runs a maximum of 5 times. On the sixth run, the first run is deleted (together with the log file), and so on.

As with a scheduled job, click on any of the fields in the job run row to display an info-panel at the side showing more details about the job run:

Job Run Details	÷	×
Job Run Status Completed 🗘		
Job Run Timestamp Sep 25, 2021 00:00 AM IST		
Job Details		
Job Name Access daily st1409 end2409 advfilter csv IST		
Log Export Details Columns : ALL controller is false Message ID is NWC31920 Severity is INFO raw_messages contains NAT gateway_type : zta Log Type : access Order : asc Sort By : timestamp Timezone offset : 330 Timezone : Asia/Calcutta		
Job Start Date Sep 14, 2021 05:30 AM IST		
Job Expiration Date Sep 25, 2021 05:29 AM IST		
Job Created Date Sep 14, 2021 11:20 AM IST		

The Job Run Details info-panel

To download the log file generated by the job run, click the *cloud* icon for a completed job run:

Completed 🗘

Downloading a log file

To remove a scheduled log export job, or any of the completed job runs within the job, tick the checkbox adjacent to the job/job run and then click the **Actions** menu at the top of the page:



The Job Status menu

Select from the following options:

- Delete Selected: Remove all jobs or job runs that have been selected.
- **Pause the Job**: Instruct the outstanding job runs in the schedule to become inactive. The schedule continues chronologically, but no further log export operations are completed while in this state.
- **Resume the Job**: Resume the schedule starting at the next scheduled job run.



If you choose to delete a complete job, all job runs and log download files are removed permanently.

Actionable Insights

nZTA enables you to configure actionable insights, such that when certain conditions are met a defined action is executed.

To configure an action:

1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.

The Network Overview page appears by default.

2. From the *nZTA* menu, select the **Insights** icon, then select **Actionable Insights**.

The Actionable Insights page appears.

Actionable Insights (i)		Add Actionable
Actionable Insights Logs		
Actions V SET ACTIONABLE INSIGHTS FOR*		
	THRESHOLD	ACTION

Viewing Actionable Insights

Use this page to view and configure actions that are triggered by a condition being met.

The following conditions are supported in this release:

 UEBA Threat Score: If a user's UEBA Threat score breaches a set threshold, the selected action is triggered.



The condition remains in force until the user's UEBA Threat score is manually reset. To learn more about resetting a UEBA Threat score, see <u>Viewing a Summary of UEBA Threat</u> <u>Scores for your Users</u>.

The following actions are supported in this release:

• Terminate all existing sessions for the user: If the set condition is reached, all sessions for the affected user are terminated. If that user attempts a further login, *Ivanti Secure Access Client* denies the attempt and displays a message concerning the breach, directing the user to contact their administrator. *nZTA* also records an admin log event referencing the fact (see <u>Checking the Logs</u>).

To add a new condition:

- 1. Select Add Actionable Insight.
- 2. In Set Actionable Insight for, select a condition to apply.

The configurable options for that condition are displayed.

ctionable Insights (i)	
JEBA Threat Score	
Set Threshold value $\geq \begin{bmatrix} THRESHOLD VALUE \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$	
Current Session	
Terminate all the existing sessions of this user when the UEBA threat score relations	reaches to above threshold
Subsequent Login	
Trigger Action Select action to trigger when conditions are met	
Allow the subsequent logins with a warning message that UEBA threat sc permissible threshold	.ore is beyond
Multi-Factor authentication, Offer additional authentication during subsec	quent logins
Deny the subsequent logins with a warning message that UEBA threat sco permissible threshold	ter is beyond

Add Actionable Insights

- 3. Set the required options/thresholds for the condition.
- 4. In **Trigger Action**, select the applicable action to be applied if the condition is met.
- 5. From the Subsequent Login section, select one of the following actions to trigger when conditions are met:
 - · Allow subsequent logins with a warning message
 - Offer Multi-factor Authentication during the subsequent logins
 - Deny subsequent logins with a warning message
- 6. To save your changes, select Create.

To edit or delete an actionable insight, select the check box adjacent to the desired condition and select **Actions > Delete** or **Actions > Edit** as applicable.

When the user sessions are terminated due to reaching the threshold UEBA Threat score, the admin log messages are generated in nSA. Select the **Logs** tab to view the list of log messages.

Reports

nZTA provides the ability to generate and download activity reports from pre-defined report templates or through a custom defined report. It also supports scheduling the reports, to be generated either daily, or weekly once, twice or thrice.

To access the **Reports** page:

1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see <u>Logging in as a Tenant Administrator</u>.

The Network Overview page appears by default.

2. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Insights** icon, then select **Reports**.

The *Reports* page appears, on the *Report Templates* tab.

Reports	
t to customize.	Recently updated \checkmark
Custom_Template_User_Devic	User Activity Summary Report
Template covering all the User, Device and Application	User access information summarizing the activity of individual users or user groups.
User Risk Report	
Metrics and indicators of risk level associated with users.	
	teports tto customize. Custom_Template_User_Devic Template covering all the User, Device and User Risk Report Wetrics and indicators of risk level associated with users.

Viewing report templates

The *Reports* page provides the following tabs:

• **Report Templates**: Contains all built-in and custom-saved templates upon which all reports are based, including a *Custom Report* option to enable creation of customized reports.

Built-in templates are read-only whereas custom-saved templates added by a tenant admin can be deleted. You can identify custom templates as per the following image:

Custom_Template_User_Devic) 🛈
Template covering all the User, Device and Application	

Identifying a custom-created report template from a built-in template (the delete option - indicated)

• My Reports: Contains all generated report instances:

Reports (i)							
Report Templates	My Reports	Scheduled	Reports				
Reports							
REPORT NAME 个	REPORT TEMPLATE	REPORT	↑ START DATE ↑	END DATE 1	FREQUENCY	NO. OF RECIPIENTS	ACTIONS
Custom_Report_D	Custom	admin	Jun-8-2022 12:30 -05:00	Jun-9-2022 12:30 -05:00	Daily	1	@ ⊻
User_Risk_Monthly	User Ri	admin	Jun-1-2022 12:30 -05:00	Jun-8-2022 12:30 -05:00	Weekly once	1	@ ⊻
Custom_Report_D	Custom	admin	Jun-7-2022 12:30 -05:00	Jun-8-2022 12:30 -05:00	Daily	1	@ ⊥
Custom_Report_o	Custom	admin	May-7-2022 06:51 -05:00	Jun-7-2022 06:51 -05:00	On-demand	0	@ ⊥
Custom_Report_D	Custom	admin	Jun-6-2022 12:30 -05:00	Jun-7-2022 12:30 -05:00	Daily	1	@ ⊥
User_Risk_Monthly	User Ri	admin	May-25-2022 12:30 -05:00	Jun-1-2022 12:30 -05:00	Weekly once	1	@ ⊻
User_Risk_Monthly	User Ri	admin	May-18-2022 12:30 -05:00	May-25-2022 12:30 -05:00	Weekly once	1	@ ⊥

The list of generated reports

Reports shown on this page either originate from a singular on-demand request, or represent an instance of a scheduled report run. For example, if you schedule a report to run daily, at the requisite time each day a new instance of the report is generated and placed here.

For each generated report, you can:

• Select the report name to view a summary of the configured parameters:

Report Information				TS ACTIONS
n-ac Report Template	Report Clone Name	Author Start Date	End Date	@ ⊻
Application Access Report	application-access-report	admin 12/04/2022, 08:43:16	12/05/2022, 08:43:16	
Filter				
Users	Device			
User groups User Groups (0)	V DEVICE TYPE Type (0)	~		
USER NAME User Name (0)	~			
USER LOCATION User Location (0)	~			
Gateway	Application			
Gateway Name Gateway Name (0)	Application type Application ************************************	: Type (0)		
GATEWAY LOCATION Gateway Location (0)	Application gro Application (up Group (0)		
	Application NAM	Name (0)		
Scheduled Frequency				
Start Date	End Date	Frequency		
N/A	N/A	On-demand		
Format				
Report Format Multi-Applica	ition Summary	Per Application		

Report parameters

 In the Actions column, select the download icon to view and download the report in the specified format (PDF, JSON, or CSV)

⊻

The Download icon

• In the Actions column, select the delete icon to permanently remove the report instance.

回

The Delete icon

• Scheduled Reports: Contains the list of report schedules:

eport Templates	My Reports	Schedule	ed Reports				
cheduled Rep	orts						
cheduled Rep	REPORT	REPORT				NO. OF	
Cheduled Rep	REPORT TEMPLATE 1	REPORT	↑ START DATE ↑	end date	FREQUENCY	NO. OF RECIPIENTS	ACTIONS
Cheduled Rep	PORTS REPORT TEMPLATE 1 User Ri	REPORT AUTHOR admin	↑ START DATE ↑ May-11-2022 08:25 -05:00	END DATE 1	FREQUENCY Weekly once	NO. OF RECIPIENTS	

The list of report schedules

Each entry on this page represents a scheduled report definition. For each entry, you can:

• Select the report name to view a summary of the configured parameters:

Report Templa	tes My Reports S	cheduled Reports					
chedule	Summary of User_Ris	k_Monthly					
REPORT NAME	Donort Information						ACTIONS
Jser_Risk_Mc	Report Template	Report Clone Name	Author	Start Date		End Date	۵
Custom_Rep	User Risk Report	User_Risk_Monthly	admin	11/05/2022	, 14:25:21	31/12/2022, 13:25:21	Ū
	Filter Users		Device				
	USER GROUPS User Groups (0)	~	DEVICE TYPE Type (0)		~	Ì	
	USER NAME Bngtest1, Cambridget	est1, Linuxtest1, S 🗸					
	USER LOCATION User Location (0)	~					
	Gateway		Application			_	
	Gateway Name Gateway Name (0)	~	APPLICATION TYPE Application T	ype (O)	~	·]	
	GATEWAY LOCATION Gateway Location (0)	~	APPLICATION GRO Application C	JP Group (O)	~		
			APPLICATION NAM Application N	e lame (O)	~	·)	
	Scheduled Frequer	тсу					
	Start Date 11/05/2022, 14:25:21	Enc 31/	I Date 12/2022, 13:25:2	1	Freque	ency ly once	
	Format	ser Summary		Perliee			
	PDF User	Anomalies, User Risl Authentication Failu	k, User res, Non-	User	Anomalies, N User Authenti	on-Compliance, User Risk, cation Failures	

Schedule details

• In the Actions column, select the delete icon to remove the schedule:



The Delete icon

Creating a Report

This section describes how to create a new report. You can choose to create the report based on one of the following methods:

- Create a new custom report
- Create a new report based on one of the built-in predefined report templates provided as a part of your subscription
- Create a new report based on a custom template created by a tenant admin

To configure a report:

1. On the **Report Templates** tab, choose the template option from which to create your report.

Reports (i) Report Templates My Reports Recently updated V Select a Template Choose a Report Template or start with a blank report to customize. Custom Report Custom_Template_User_Devic... User Activity Summary Report Ē 🖞 Ð + Template covering all the User, Device and Application Custom report provides a way to add additional information and it can be saved as a report template. User access information summarizing the activity of individual users or user groups. User Risk Report Application Access Report Ð Ð Metrics and indicators of risk level associated with users. Application activity information summarizing how applications are accessed and used.

To add a new custom report, select the "Custom Report" option:

Adding a new custom report

To add a report based on a template, select the built-in or custom template of your choice:

)

Adding a new report based on a template

The report wizard appears, beginning with the **Clone** step:

r Activity S	Summary Repor	t			
Clone	2 Format	3 Filter	Frequency	Share	
reate a cop	y from template				
REPORT NAME	r Activity Summan	Report			
CHERCENT INSPECT	r riourney oanning	nopore)		

Creating a report - Clone step

2. Enter a unique name for the report and click **Next** to continue.

3. In the **Format** step:

< Reports ①	
User Activity Summary Report	
Clone 🖉 Format 🖲 Filter 🕤 Frequency 🕤 Share	
Customize and format Select chart to include in the report	
Device Lut Access By Device Types Multi-Device Summary User	Selected charts to include in report Device Multi-Device Summary Access By De X
User Activity Image: Anomalies Multi-User Summary Image: User Risk Multi-User Summary Image: Anomalies Per User Image: Multi-User Summary Image: Anomalies Per User	User Multi-User Summary User Activity X Anomalies X User Risk X
Select a Report Format SELECT A REPORT FOR PDF	Per User
Save this report as a template The template will save the report Format not the Filter, Schedule and Recipients information	
	Back Next

Creating a report - Format step

• Select or deselect the required charts from the *User*, *Device*, and *Application* sections as applicable. Selected items appear in the right-hand panel.



Use your pointing device to vertically scroll the charts panel as required.

- Select the report format (PDF, JSON, or CSV).
- (Optional) select **Save this report as a template** to create a new custom template containing your selections. Enter a template name and description in the fields provided.

Click Next to continue.

4. In the **Filter** step, for each category of Users, Devices, Gateways, and Applications, select or deselect the named items you want to include. For example, within *Users*, use the drop-down controls to select specific *User Groups*, *User Names*, or *User Locations* you want to include in the report:

Clone 🖸 Format	Filter Frequence	sy 6 Share			
ilter data					
lsers	Device		Gateway		
user groups User Groups (3)	V DEVICE TYPE Type (6)	```	GATEWAY NAME Gateway Name (10)	~	
user name User Name (53)	~		GATEWAY LOCATION Gateway Location (7)	~	
user location User Location (28)	~				
pplication					
APPLICATION TYPE Application Type (4)	~				
application group Application Group (6)	~				
APPLICATION NAME	~				

Creating a report - Filter step



Objects that appear in the drop-down lists in this step are derived from those items last accessed within the previous 30 days only. Items last accessed earlier than this time are not shown.

Click Next to continue.

5. In the **Frequency** step, set the frequency with which you want this report to run:

Activity O	ummary Repor	t				
Clone	 Format 	Filter	Frequency	Share		
nedule Dur	ation					
recurring c	ate range					
4 May 2022 -	24 Jun 2022 🛗					
quency						
Dn-Demand	Re	port range 24 Apr 2022 24 1 11:08 AM 11:0	May 2022			
Dn-Demand Daily	Re	port range 24 Apr 2022 _ 24 I 11:08 AM _ 11:0	May 2022			

Creating a report - Frequency step

Choose from:

- On Demand: Run once for a specified date and time period
- Daily: Run daily at a defined time
- Weekly: Run at a specified time on certain days of the week



For Daily and Weekly, use **Set recurring date range** to set the start and end dates for which you want the schedule to run.

Click Next to continue.

6. In the Share step, add the recipients with which the report should be shared (if applicable):

er Activity S	umm	ary Repor	t									
Clone	0	Format	0	Filter	0	Frequency	0	Share				
d recipient JSER NAME JSER Name (8) elected recip) pient:	5		~								
o recipients s	select	ed										

Creating a report - Share step

7. To complete the wizard and schedule the report according to the selections made, select **Confirm and Schedule**.



i.

If you elected to save the report as a custom template during the **Format** step, the new template is displayed on the **Report Templates** tab.

Viewing Alerts and Notifications

The **Alerts** page lists all alerts and notifications that have been raised by *nZTA*.

To view the Alerts page, click the Alerts icon and then click See all Alerts:



Alerts icon

The **Alerts** page appears. For example:

Alerts (i)					°-
					TIME PERIOD All
SEVERITY 1	DATE 个	TIME 个	туре 🔶	GATEWAY NAME 1	MESSAGE 个
• Error	Mar 07, 2022	14:48	Gateway Upgrade Failed	blackthorn-bng-1	Upgrade failed on gateway blackthorn-bng
• Error	Mar 07, 2022	14:47	Gateway Upgrade Failed	blackthorn-bng-3	Upgrade failed on gateway blackthorn-bng
• Error	Mar 07, 2022	14:02	Gateway Disconnected	cambridge-esx	gateway cambridge-esx disconnected
• Error	Mar 07, 2022	13:00	Gateway Disconnected	aws-blackthorn	gateway aws-blackthorn disconnected
• Error	Mar 07, 2022	12:54	Gateway Disconnected	az-bkthrn-eastus	gateway az-bkthrn-eastus disconnected
• Error	Mar 07, 2022	11:37	Gateway Upgrade Failed	aws-blackthorn	Upgrade failed on gateway aws-blackthorn
• Error	Mar 07, 2022	09:45	Gateway Upgrade Failed	cambridge-esx	Upgrade failed on gateway cambridge-esx
• Error	Mar 07, 2022	09:35	Gateway Disconnected	blackthorn-bng-1	gateway blackthorn-bng-1 disconnected
• Error	Mar 07, 2022	08:03	Gateway Disconnected	blackthorn-bng-3	gateway blackthorn-bng-3 disconnected
• Error	Mar 07, 2022	07:59	Gateway Upgrade Failed	blackthorn-bng-1	Upgrade failed on gateway blackthorn-bng
• Error	Mar 07, 2022	07:57	Gateway Upgrade Failed	az-bkthrn-eastus	Upgrade failed on gateway az-bkthrn-east
Error	Mar 07, 2022	07:44	Gateway Upgrade Failed	cambridge-esx	Upgrade failed on gateway cambridge-esx
Rows per page: 100	Mar 07 2022	07.44	Ostaway Disconnected	bladdharn bna 2	Solution blackbare bas 2 disconnected ← 1 2 3 4 →

Alerts page

The alerts table supports the following alert types:

- AAA Config Pull Failure
- AAA Config Pull Success
- AAA Config Pull Success Failure Resolved
- AAA Journal Update Failed
- AAA Journal Update Success
- Config Sync Rule Deleted
- Config Sync Rule Updated
- Config Sync Target Cluster Deleted
- Custom Domain Certificate for mTLS Domain Due for Renewal
- Custom Domain Certificate for mTLS Domain Expired
- Custom Domain Certificate for TLS Domain Due for Renewal
- Custom Domain Certificate for TLS Domain Expired

- Device Vulnerability Risk Rating (VRR) Critical
- Device Vulnerability Risk Rating (VRR) High
- Device Vulnerability Risk Rating (VRR) Medium
- Device Vulnerability Risk Rating (VRR) Low
- Gateway Config Apply Failed
- Gateway Config Import Failed
- Gateway Disconnected
- Gateway Invalid Configurations Cleared
- Gateway Upgrade Failed

To filter the alerts table by type:

1. Click Configure Alert Rules icon.



Configure Alert Rules icon

The **Configure Alerts & Notifications** page appears.

- 2. Click Alert Types and select the required type.
- 3. Click Close.

To filter the alerts table by time period, click **Time Period** and select the required time period.

To sort the alerts table into ascending or descending order of a specific property, click on one of the following column headings in the alerts table:

- Severity
- Type
- Message Type

Setting Up Secure Access

This chapter covers the following topics:

- "Working with Gateways" on the next page
- "Working with User Authentication" on page 427
- "Working with Applications and Application Groups" on page 554
- "Creating Device Policies and Device Policy Rules" on page 576
- "Creating/Editing Secure Access Policies" on page 612

Working with Gateways

- Introduction
- <u>Configuring Networks in your Gateway Datacenter</u>
- Using Dynamic IP Addressing to Profile Client Traffic
- White-listing Required IP Addresses for your Services
- Viewing and Monitoring Gateways in the Controller
- Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability
- <u>Creating Gateway Selectors</u>
- Workflow: Creating a Gateway in VMware vSphere
- Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Amazon Web Services
- Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Microsoft Azure
- Workflow: Creating a Gateway in KVM/OpenStack
- Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Google Cloud Platform
- Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Oracle Cloud Platform
- Upgrading Gateways
- Configuring a Default Gateway for Application Discovery
- "Configuring nZTA Gateway Connection Control for Trusted Networks" on page 424

Introduction

After you have successfully logged into the *Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access (nZTA) Controller* as a Tenant Admin user (see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator), you can start the configuration of your *nZTA* platform by adding Gateways.

nZTA supports two main Gateway types, depending on your subscription:

- nZTA Gateway
- Ivanti Connect Secure (ICS) Gateway

This chapter covers functionality relating to a *nZTA Gateway* only. For details pertaining to a *ICS* Gateway, see instead the "*ICS* Tenant Admin Guide" in the *nZTA* documentation portal.

0

To learn more about *nZTA Gateways* and their relationship with the other dimensions of a *Secure Access Policy*, see <u>Deploying Gateways</u>.

A Gateway controls access to the applications at the location to which it is deployed. This location could be a physical datacenter, a private or public cloud-based service, or some hybrid combination. Each Gateway communicates with the *Controller* to ensure that access requests are authenticated. A Gateway must be contactable by both the *Controller* and the applications that reside there. See <u>Configuring</u> Networks in your Gateway Datacenter.

The process of defining a Gateway on the *Controller* produces a package of settings, known as a Gateway definition, that you publish to the Gateway virtual machine instance during deployment. These settings enable the Gateway to establish communication with the *Controller*.

0

Ensure the Gateway virtual machine instance does not exist prior to creating your Gateway definitions on the *Controller*. All *nZTA Gateways* must be deployed from the *Controller* directly. The Gateway definition file is designed to be published to a new virtual machine Gateway instance during its initial deployment.

To register a new Gateway with the *Controller*, use the Tenant Admin portal. The *Controller* requires basic identification and networking details for the Gateway instance, and in return provides a downloadable Gateway definition file.



A Gateway definition file is valid for 24 hours. If this period expires, you must replace the Gateway to generate a new Gateway definition file.

When you deploy the Gateway virtual machine instance in your on-premise or cloud infrastructure, you apply the definition file as configuration data. At launch time, the Gateway attempts to contact and register itself with the *Controller*, establishing a link between the Gateway record in the *Controller* and the actual virtual machine instance. Any subsequent policy changes made on the *Controller* are automatically synchronized out to all Gateways.

You can choose a single Gateway (or Gateway Group) to act as a *default Gateway*. A default Gateway handles all requests from applications that are not referenced by any secure access policy. See <u>Viewing</u> and <u>Monitoring Gateways in the Controller</u>.



Ivanti Secure Access Client Linux variants do no currently support the use of a default gateway.

After you have registered your Gateways with the Controller, you can:

- View performance and usage graphs
- See activity logs
- View task lists
- Establish Gateway Groups for High Availability
- Manage version upgrades
- Replace Gateway instances registered with the *Controller*

To learn more, see Viewing and Monitoring Gateways in the Controller.

High Availability

nZTA allows you to deploy multiple Gateways in front of the same set of applications or resources to support high availability. This arrangement can be used to provide scaling, redundancy, and load distribution for your application delivery. To learn more, see <u>Using Gateway Groups for High Availability</u>.

High availability is implemented in the *Controller* through **Gateway Groups**. You add individual Gateways to a group, and then associate the group with your Secure Access Policy. To learn more about adding Gateway Groups, see <u>Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability</u>.

Gateway Deployment Workflows

nZTA supports Gateway virtual machine instances deployed in the following environments:

- VMware vSphere: see Workflow: Creating a Gateway in VMware vSphere.
- Amazon Web Services (AWS): see Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Amazon Web Services.
- Microsoft Azure: see Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Microsoft Azure.
- KVM on OpenStack: see Workflow: Creating a Gateway in KVM/OpenStack.
- Google Cloud Platform: seeWorkflow: Creating a Gateway in Google Cloud Platform.

You can choose any single Gateway (at v21.1 or later) or Gateway Group to act as a *default Gateway*. A default Gateway handles all requests from applications that are not referenced by any secure access policy. See Configuring a Default Gateway for Application Discovery.

For 22.7R1.3 release, 22.7R2.2 ZTA Gateway version is not supported with Oracle, AWS, and KVM platforms.

Each process described in this chapter contains prerequisites that correspond to the latest supported Gateway versions for this release. To deploy older supported Gateway versions, substitute in the file paths and names with the version you want to use. To learn more about the supported Gateway images for this release, see the Release Notes or contact your support representative.

Configuring Networks in your Gateway Datacenter

nZTA Gateways deployed in your cloud or on-premise datacenter require the availability of a number of network interfaces and ports to operate correctly. You require the following primary interfaces defined in your Gateway virtual machine instance:

- **External network interface**: Configured with a public subnet IP address and used for external client access to the applications deployed in that datacenter. Use this IP address during the process of creating your Gateway record on the *Controller*.
- **Internal network interface**: Configured with a private subnet IP address and used for internal connections to the deployed applications, and for external communication with the *Controller*.
- **(Optional) Management network interface**: Configured with an IP address and port on a further, separate, network subnet for deployments where a specific management interface is required.

When the management port is enabled, Gateway will use management interface to communicate with Controller and NTP Server. The Gateway will still use the internal port for DNS resolution and NTP server name resolution. If the internal DNS cannot resolve the Controller domain, the internal interface will require internet access.

nZTA Gateway template images contain parameters and settings for all required interfaces. You provide suitable configuration during the Gateway deployment workflows described in this chapter.



Gateway network connections in your cloud and on-premise datacenter

nZTA Gateway deployment using this topology offers the following attack protection benefits:

- **mTLS Communication**: By using mTLS for communication with the *Controller*, your Gateways are protected from traffic originating from unauthorized and un-enrolled devices.
- **DMZ/DDoS Deployment**: *nZTA* allows customers to deploy their own DDoS (Distributed Denial of Service) mitigations, either through network firewalls or DDoS services, before traffic reaches the *nZTA Gateways* deployed in your datacenter.
- **SSL inspection**: If an administrator chooses to use SSL interception or deep inspection for traffic coming into the network or to back-end applications, this can be achieved on the internal *Private Subnet* side before traffic reaches your back-end application servers.

The *Controller* communicates with all registered Gateways to validate user sessions, and for reporting/analytics. Each Gateway maintains a timeout period of 5 minutes for validation of user sessions. If a Gateway fails to obtain a response from the *Controller* within this time limit, any new session authorization requests are denied. However, existing sessions remain connected to the applications and resources at that location until the user session expires. To learn more about user session expiry, see <u>On-Demand and Simultaneous Connection Handling</u>.

For all platforms, make sure the firewall rules for the **Public Subnet** in which your *nZTA Gateway***External Interface** resides is configured to accept inbound client connections on TCP port 443.

Furthermore, make sure you configure the **Network Gateway** serving your **Private Subnet** to allow outbound traffic to the *Controller* in the following ways:

- Allow outbound TCP traffic on port 443 to the Controller service
- Allow outbound UDP traffic to the following Network Time Protocol (NTP) services:
 - time.windows.com (port 123)
 - time.nist.gov (port 123)

i.

If you maintain your own DNS service at the datacenter, you can specify these details during Gateway deployment.

If you are planning to use your *nZTA Gateway* to serve SaaS (Software-as-a-Service) applications, configure your application to restrict inbound connections to your **network gateway** IP address. This ensures that your SaaS application can be reached only by clients connecting through the *nZTA Gateway*.

Using Dynamic IP Addressing to Profile Client Traffic

This feature is supported for VMware (ESXi) and KVM Gateway types only.

This feature is not supported for Gateway Groups.

A client establishes a secure tunnel to a Gateway in order to reach the applications and resources controlled by a Secure Access Policy. Traffic from the client passes through the tunnel to the Gateway, and from the *Internal* network interface on the Gateway to the application. The application or resource sees the client's traffic as originating from the Gateway's internal interface. This scenario is transparent to the client and application - the Gateway manages traffic back to the client using Network Address Translation (NAT) to map traffic on the internal interface to the client's source IP address.

However, in some circumstances you might want to profile or monitor end-to-end traffic for your clients. This is difficult beyond the Gateway as traffic at the application appears to originate from the same source IP address (that of the Gateway internal interface). To facilitate this, *nZTA* includes the option to specify a pool of IP addresses in a dedicated subnet that the *Controller* can dynamically assign to client sessions. As a client sends traffic to an application or resource, the Gateway establishes a mapping from the tunnel IP address to one of the free IP addresses in the pool. This dynamically-assigned IP address is then used as the source IP address when sending client traffic to the application. The Gateway again uses NAT to manage the connections to each client.

You can configure dynamic IP addressing when adding a new Gateway or by editing an existing Gateway configuration. To learn more, refer to the Gateway configuration workflows described in this chapter. To read more about how to enable Dynamic IP Addressing in an existing Gateway, see <u>On-</u> Demand and Simultaneous Connection Handling. To use dynamic IP addressing, the *Controller* requires you to define a unique address range for each applicable Gateway, using CIDR notation. For example, 192.0.2.0/24. You can add only one IP address range per Gateway.



The allowed subnet range is 8-28. Make sure you select a subnet value that provides the amount of IP addresses necessary to map the expected number of clients connecting to the Gateway. If you exhaust the IP address range, your clients can still connect, although traffic profiling is not possible.

When configuring an address range, make sure this does not overlap with dynamic IP address ranges assigned to other Gateways.

White-listing Required IP Addresses for your Services

The *Controller* service uses a series of IP addresses and ports to facilitate access to the admin and user web consoles, for user enrollment, and for connections to *nZTA Gateways*. To ensure network access, make sure the following IP addresses and ports are white-listed (or added to the *allowed list*) in your network firewalls and routing infrastructure.

Select the IP addresses and ports for your corresponding region only:

North America:

52.186.44.249 (port 443)

52.188.33.186 (port 443)

• Europe:

51.138.111.17 (port 443)

20.50.150.82 (port 443)

• APJ:

20.44.238.229 (port 443)

20.44.237.67 (port 443)
• UAE:

20.233.40.108 (port 443)

20.233.41.69 (port 443)

• Canada:

20.220.157.85 (port 443)

20.220.157.158 (port 443)

Viewing and Monitoring Gateways in the Controller

To view, configure, and monitor the health of your deployed Gateways and Gateway Groups, use the **Secure Access > Manage Gateways** section of the *Controller* Tenant Admin portal. The pages in this section remain inactive until you select a Gateway or Gateway Group.



To view detailed analytics for your deployed Gateways, see also <u>Monitoring nZTA</u> <u>Gateway Activity</u>.

To view information for a Gateways or Gateway Group:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways > Gateways List.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

Manag e Ga	tewa	ays i				
Gateways Li	st	Gateway Selectors				Create 🗸
3 GATEWAYS					J SE	ARCH Q
		GATEWAYS \uparrow	CONNECTION STATU	S VERSION	STATUS	
	ŢŢ	testgrp				
	<u>ļ</u> ļ	tesgrp1				
	<u>Q</u>	tesgrp12				
~	*	Standalone NZTA Gateways				
•	*	test	گ⁹ Not regist	tered		
•	\$ 	willowmodesx1	🖍 Connecte	ed 22.5R1-517	🛣 N/A	
•	*	willownewesxext	🖍 Connecte	ed 22.5R1-517	🛣 N/A	

Viewing All Gateways

The health and status of each Gateway instance is denoted by the indicator colors used in the left-most column; *green* for connected/ready or *red* for disconnected/not ready. Unregistered Gateways are denoted by a missing indicator. Additional status information is given under *Connection Status*, with the current software *Version*, and the *Status* of any scheduled tasks.



Use the *Search* box at the top enter a text search term to narrow the list to only matching Gateways and Gateway Groups.

3. Select a Gateway or Gateway Group from the list to view the Gateways Overview page.

This page provides further status and configuration details for the selected instance, as well as *Performance, Concurrent Sessions,* and *Throughput* usage graphs.



Viewing status, configuration, performance and Usage Graphs in the Gateway Overview page

Hover your pointer over a coordinate in each graph to view a tooltip showing detailed metrics for that moment.

For Gateway Groups:

- Edit Group: Edit details for the group, such as name, description, and load balancer public IP address.
- **Delete Group Only**: Deletes the Gateway Group record, leaving any contained Gateways intact as standalone (ungrouped) instances.
- **Delete Group and Gateways**: Deletes the Gateway Group and all Gateways contained in the group.

This option appears only if the selected Gateway is in a Gateway Group.

• Add Gateway to this Group: Add a registered standalone gateway to this group.

For Gateways:

- Edit Gateway: Edit details for the Gateway, such as name, description, and public IP address. You can also select or reset the Use Management Port property.
- **Replace Gateway**: Allows replacement of the Gateway virtual machine instance associated with this *nZTA Gateway* record. This option regenerates a Gateway definition file based on the existing networking details stored in the Gateway record, but with a new one-time token, to allow deployment and registration of a new virtual machine instance.



• Remove from Group: Removes this Gateway from a Gateway Group.



This option appears only if there are existing Gateways in the Group.

- **Delete Gateway**: Deletes the Gateway record.
- Upgrade to <version>: Upgrades the registered Gateway virtual machine instance to the specified version, see Upgrading Gateways.
- Rollback to <version>: Reverts the registered Gateway virtual machine instance to the specified version, see Upgrading Gateways.

The available menu options vary depending on whether the selected Gateway is registered and connected to the *Controller*.

Viewing Gateway Logs

The *Logs* page enables you to view the Access, Admin, and Event logs for the selected Gateway or Gateway Group.

To view Gateway logs:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways > Gateway List.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

3. Select the required Gateway or Gateway Group.

The Gateways Overview page appears for the selected Gateway/Gateway Group.

4. Select the **Logs** tab.

The Gateways Logs page appears.

This page supports the following features:

- Select the log type you want to view in the Log Type drop-down list. Choose from:
 - Access Logs
 - Admin Logs
 - Event Logs

• Set a **Time Period** over which the logs are shown. Use the time period selector to set a time period or range for your log results. Click the calendar (highlighted) to show the selector:

LOG TYPE Access	s Logs 🗸 🗸									29 2 10:5	9 Apr 2024 52 AM	- 10	30 Apr 2024):52 AN	IS 1	ST 苗
STATUS	Last 60 minutes Last 24 hours	From							То						
•	Last 7 days	мог Ма	лтн arch	٥		_{YEAR} 2024		\$	A	олтн oril	٥	;	YEAR 2024		\$
•	Last 1 month	Su	Мо	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa	Su	Mo	Tu	We	Th	Fr	Sa
•	Custom	25	26	27	28	29	1	2	31	1	2	3	4	5	6
-		3	4	5	6	7	8	9	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
0		10	11	12	13	14	15	16	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
		17	18	19	20	21	22	23	21	22	23	24	25	26	27
· ·		24	25	26	27	28	29	30	28	29	30	1	2	3	4
•		31	1	2	3	4	5	6							
•		HR 10		、 、		MIN 54		$\overline{}$)	, ,		MIN 52		$\overline{}$
•						54				,			52		
•										C	CANC	EL		APF	PLY

Setting a log time period

Set the time period you want to view using the available ranges at the top-left. Choose from:

- Last 60 minutes
- Last 24 hours (default)
- Last 7 days
- Last 1 month
- Custom

For **Custom**, set a specific *From* and *To* to denote the start and end of your custom date/time range.

The custom date/time calendar controls are enabled for only the **Custom** option. However, the calendar continues to identify the applicable start and end date-time for all predefined time periods.

To apply your changes, click **Apply**. The selected time period is displayed in the filter bar and data on the page updates accordingly.



To configure the timezone, see Setting the Timezone.

• Logs are refreshed automatically by changing the criteria. To manually refresh the log display, click the following icon:



Refreshing the page data

• To change the fields displayed for each log line, use the following icon:



Show or hide log fields

In the field selector, click a field name to toggle between show or hide. A *tick* icon indicates a displayed field. After you are finished, click the context menu icon to close the selector.

Choose from the following fields:

- Session identifier
- · Gateway identifier
- Gateway name
- Source IP address
- · User name associated with the event, where applicable
- User device identifier, if available
- A description of the event

• Use the following icon to trigger the advanced filter selection:



Applying a filter to the log display

Use the filter to narrow down the displayed log records to your selected criteria. For example, to show only those log messages with a critical severity level, or pertaining to a specific user, or both. To learn about log filtering, see <u>Filtering the Logs</u>.

• Use the following field to use search term highlighting. Enter a value into the search box, *nZTA* highlights all matches in the log display.



Highlighting a search term in the logs

• To switch between the default and denser data views, use the following icon:

=

Setting the view density

• To apply grouping to the displayed log records, click the **Group By** button.

This feature applies grouping to a selected field in the log record display, such that records are accumulated and grouped together under each unique data item identified in that field. Through grouping, an admin can quickly view the number of records of a particular type.

To learn more about record grouping, see Viewing Detailed Logs for a Chart.

 To view a single log entry in a dedicated panel, click the log message text to activate the infopanel view:

MINOR User Name : System	€ ⊙ X
Time	14:07:55
Date	2020-12-04
Source IP	127.0.0.1
Gateway Name	bnglentils
Message	ZTA Notification Channel Status c hanged from inprogress to succe ss. Host: analytics.e.lentils.pzt.de v.perfsec.com. Details: .
Message ID	SYS31867
Gateway ID	5774eb96738c40f1bba9d48c540 006b5

Viewing a single log entry in the info-panel

In the info-panel, use the arrow icons to cycle through the previous and next log entries in turn.

• To view, sort, and filter the log messages in context with all other logs in your deployment, click **VIEW IN LOGS PAGE** (see <u>Checking the Logs</u>). This page supports the following features:

Viewing Gateway Tasks

The *Tasks* page enables you to view the current task list for the selected Gateway or Gateway Group. A task is triggered when an action on a Gateway requires an update to be made to the Gateway instance. For example, if you add a Gateway to a Gateway Group, two tasks are created: A Gateway Group change, and a change of certificate on the joining Gateway.

This list is read-only and cannot be modified. To filter the displayed tasks, use the **Task Type** and **Date** controls at the top of the page. Task type contains the primary categories within which each task falls. To view all tasks for the current day, click **Clear**.

To view Gateway tasks:

- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see <u>Logging in as a Tenant Administrator</u>.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways > Gateway List.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

3. Select the required Gateway or Gateway Group.

The Gateways Overview page appears for the selected Gateway/Gateway Group.

4. Select the **Tasks** tab.

The Gateway Tasks page appears, showing the task list for the selected Gateway/Gateway Group.

5. (Optional) Select the Task Type and Date to filter the results.

Editing Gateway Configuration

The Configuration page enables you to edit the selected Gateway or Gateway Group configuration.

To edit a Gateway/Gateway Group:

- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways > Gateway List.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

3. Select the required Gateway or Gateway Group.

The Gateways Overview page appears for the selected Gateway/Gateway Group.

4. Select the **Configuration** tab, or click *Edit Gateway/Group* from the context menu at the topright. The *Gateway Configuration* page appears, showing the current settings for the selected Gateway/Gateway Group:

GATEWAYS azuregw34 Gateway Ready			:					
Gateway								
NAME azuregw34	TYPE azure	VERION 21.12R1-34						
Location								
COUNTRY India	state/region Karnataka	Crtv Bengaluru						
20.120.60.18 × DNS Server PRIMARY DNS 8.8.8.8 •	SECONDARY DNS 8.8.4.4	DNS SEARCH DOMAIN psecure.net						
 Use Dynamic Tunnel 	IP							
Custom IP Pool								
ASSIGNABLE CUSTOM IPV4 ADDRESS AD ADD Example: x.x.x/netmask netmask would be in the range of 8-28								
10.20.5.0/28 ×								
Save Changes	Cancel							

Editing a Gateway configuration

On this page, you can edit the following settings:

Editable Gateway Network Settings

Setting	Description
Public Address or CNAME	The public IP address or CNAME at which clients can externally reach the Gateway instance. To learn more, see <u>Configuring</u> <u>Networks in your Gateway Datacenter</u> .
DNS Server	Contains settings relating to the Domain Name Service (DNS). Enter your Primary DNS and Secondary DNS IP addresses, and DNS Search Domain . Note : Ensure DNS server IP of ZTA Gateway is different from that of ICS Gateway.
(vSphere Gateways only)	Allows you to manually configure IP address settings for your

Setting	Description
Use Manual Settings	Gateway Internal , External , and (optional) Management interfaces. Deselect this option to instead use DHCP.
(vSphere and KVM Gateways only) Use Dynamic Tunnel IP	Allows you to assign a pool of IP addresses that are dynamically mapped to client sessions, such that user traffic from the Gateway to the application can be identified as originating from a specific client. Enter an IP address and subnet (in the range 8- 28) in CIDR notation, then click Add . To learn more about , see _ <u>Dynamic IP Addressing to Profile Client Traffic</u> .

5. Update any required Gateway/Gateway Group details, then click Save Changes.

Troubleshooting Gateway Issues

The *Troublshooting* page provides tools that enable you to investigate issues that might be affecting your Gateway or preventing it from operating normally.



Troubleshooting is available only for fully registered Gateways, and is not supported for Gateway Groups.

To view Gateway troubleshooting tools:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways > Gateway List.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

3. Select the required Gateway or Gateway Group.

The Gateways Overview page appears for the selected Gateway/Gateway Group.

4. Click the **Troubleshooting** tab.

The *Gateway Troubleshooting* page appears, showing troubleshooting tools and options for the selected Gateway/Gateway Group.

The page content is affected by your choice of task in the **Select Troubleshooting Task** drop-down menu:



Viewing the list of available troubleshooting tasks for this Gateway

Choose from:

- **Troubleshooting Overview**: a list of all captured data based on your completed troubleshooting activities.
- Debug Log: make a trace recording of a selected process.
- TCP Dump: observe and record TCP packets on the network.
- Commands: run various common network troubleshooting commands.
- System Snapshot: take a system snapshot.



The availability of specific tasks is limited by Gateway version. Gateway instances based on versions earlier than 21.6 might have access only to a subset of this list.

Troubleshooting Overview

The *Troubleshooting Overview* contains a list of all captured data based on your completed troubleshooting activities. This shows:

- TCP dumps
- Debug logs
- System snapshots

GATEWA VSph Gatew	YS ereO1 vay Ready					:	
Trouble	eshooting Logs and S	ystem Snapshots					
SELECT T	SELECT TROUBLESHOOTING TASK Troubleshooting Overview \checkmark \bigtriangleup Various sections in troubleshooting allows Admin to upload the session to the controller. Once they finish uploading, Admin can download the files from this page. This also includes the system snapshots.						
SELECT T	ROUBLESHOOTING TYPE						
9 ITEMS	FOUND	1				DOWNLOAD	
	TYPE	DETAILS	SIZE	DATE	STATUS		
	Debug Log	Logs for tracing user issues	598 KB	16:50 Jun 21, 2021	Ready		
	Debug Log	Logs for tracing user issues	661 KB	17:15 Jun 21, 2021	Ready		
	Debug Log	Logs for tracing user issues	734 KB	17:49 Jun 21, 2021	Ready		
	Debug Log	Logs for tracing user issues	816 KB	18:30 Jun 21, 2021	Ready		
	Debug Log	Logs for tracing user issues	909 KB	19:07 Jun 21, 2021	Ready		
	Snapshot	Snapshot to troubleshoot system performance	455 KB	17:24 Jun 21, 2021	Ready		
	Snapshot	Snapshot to troubleshoot system performance	454 KB	18:38 Jun 21, 2021	Ready		
	Tcp Dump	Information on network packet headers	37 KB	16:51 Jun 21, 2021	Ready		
	Tcp Dump	Information on network packet headers	862 Bytes	18:31 Jun 21, 2021	Ready		

View a list of data files captured from previous troubleshooting activities

To filter the displayed files to a single type, use the **Select Troubleshooting Type** selector.

Debug Log

If your users are having difficulties getting access to a website or other resource, use the *Debug Log* task to make a trace recording for one or more selected processes running on the Gateway. This recording can then be uploaded to the *Controller* for offline analysis by *Ivanti* Technical Support.

CATEWAVE	
vsnhere@1	:
Gateway Ready	:
Troubleshooting Logs and System Snapshots	
SELECT TROUBLESHOOTING TASK	
Debug Log	
Various sections in troubleshooting allows Admin to upload the session to the controller. Once they finish uploading, Admin can download the files from this page. This also includes the system snapshots.	
When a user is having issues viewing a website you can make a trace recording and send it to lyanti Support for review b	lere's how
Note: the user will be aware they are being traced and that they will also have to re-sign in after the trace	leres now.
PROCESS NAMES	
exampleprocess (i)	
EVENT CODES	
INFO OPINI	
2 LOG DETALL LEVEL Include System Logs	
C Section Determined and	
Enable Debug Logs	
Upload Save Settings Cancel	

Recording a trace of a named process

Set the following fields:

- Process Names: the names of one or more Gateway processes to trace
- **Event Codes**: the event code, or codes, to observe in the trace. Only events matching these codes are appended to the log.
- Max Debug Log Size (MB): The maximum allowable size, in MB, for the log file. Choose a value between 0-250.
- Log Detail Level: The level of verbosity to include in the log. Choose a value between 0-60, from lowest to highest detail.
- **Include System Logs**: Whether or not to include Gateway system logs (event, access, and admin logs) as part of the debug log.

To activate the trace, Select **Enable Debug Logs** and select **Save Settings**. To activate the trace, select **Enable Debug Logs** and then select **Save Settings**.



Use **Cancel** to return the settings on this page to the state last saved.

After a trace has been captured, select **Upload** to upload the trace log file to the *Controller*.

TCP Dump

Use the *TCP Dump* task to inspect packet data passing through the network interfaces on your Gateway:

GATEWAYS VsphereO1 Gateway Ready	:
Troubleshooting Logs and System Snapshots	
SELECT TROUBLESHOOTING TASK V (i)	
Various sections in troubleshooting allows Admin to upload the session to the controller. Once they finish uploading, Admin can download the files from this page. This also includes the system snapshots.	
TCP Dump allows you to sniff the packet headers on the network. To check that the expected packet really reached a node, run th tcpdump utility and save the output on a dump file of your format choice.	е
Internal Or Virtual Port External Or Virtual Port Management Port	
FILTER Filter	
Output: None	
Upload Start Stop Cancel	

Inspecting TCP data packets

Select the network interfaces you want to inspect:

- Internal or Virtual Port
- External or Virtual Port
- Management Port (where applicable)

Next, set the following optional fields as required:

• **Filter**: A comma-separated filter expression for the TCP dump, based on standard UNIX TCP Dump filters. For more information, see https://www.freebsd.org/cgi/man.cgi?query=tcpdump.

The following table provides some examples:

Expression	Result
tcp port 80	Sniffs packets on TCP port 80

Example TCP dump filter expressions

Expression	Result				
port 80	Sniffs packets on TCP or UDP port 80				
ір	Sniffs the IP protocol				
tcp	Sniffs the TCP protocol				
dst #.#.#.#	Sniffs the destination IP address specified, where #.#.# is a valid IP address				
src #.#.#.#	Sniffs the source IP address specified, where #.#.# is a valid IP address				
port 80 or port 443	Sniffs on port 80 or port 443				
src #.#.#.# and dst #.#.#.#	Sniffs the source and destination IP addresses or hosts specified, where each #.#.#.# represents a valid IP address				
tcp port 80 or port 443 and dst #.#.#.# and src #.#.#.#	This example shows how to specify multiple parameters to create a filter that sniffs on TCP port 80, or on TCP or UDP port 443, and on the destination and source ports, where each #.#.#.# represents a valid IP address				

Options: Command-line options to specify with the tcpdump. Use a space-separated list in the form "-<option>". For more information on possible options, see https://www.freebsd.org/cgi/man.cgi?query=tcpdump.



The following options are NOT supported: "-C", "-B", "-D", "-G", "-F", "-V", "-w", "-W", "-r", "-E", "-h", "-I", "-J", "-L", "-m", "-p", "-U", "-z", "-Z", "-O", NULL.

• **Promiscuous Mode**: Enable or disable promiscuous mode for the data capture.

To start the TCP dump, select **Start**. Then, select **Stop** to end the process when required.

The current state is reflected in the *Output* window.



Use **Cancel** to ret-urn the settings on this page to the state last saved.

After a TCP dump has been captured, select **Upload** to upload the log file to the *Controller*.

Commands

Use the *Commands* task to trigger common networking troubleshooting commands from the Gateway. For example, using the ping command:

GATEWAYS VSphereO1 • Gateway Ready		
Troubleshooting Logs and System	n Snapshots	
SELECT TROUBLESHOOTING TASK	~ (i)	Various sections in troubleshooting allow they finish uploading, Admin can downlo snapshots.
You can run common network tro client can ping or traceroute to th	ubleshooting c e gateway and	commands such as ping, traceroute, NSk I the gateway can ping the target server,
SELECT COMMAND V (i)		
TARGET SERVER example.com		
Internal or Virtual Port	External or V	/irtual Port 🛛 🔿 Management Port
Output: None		
Start Cancel		

Running the Ping command

Use **Select Command** to select the command you want to run. Then, specify the parameters you want to use with that command.

To run the selected command with the specified parameters, select Start.

The command output is displayed in the Output window.



Use **Cancel** to return the settings on this page to the state last saved.

The following table lists the available commands with parameters applicable in each case:

Commands

Command	Parameter	Description
ping	Target Server	The target hostname or IP address
	Gateway Interface	The network interface through which to capture the command output: internal, external, or management (where applicable)

Command	Parameter	Description
nslookup	Query Type	The <i>nslookup</i> query type you want to use: ANY, A, PTR, CNAME, MX, NS, SOA, TXT, UINFO, WKS
	Query	The target IP address or FQDN.
ARP	Target Server	The target hostname or IP address
	Gateway Interface	The network interface through which to capture the command output: internal, external, or management (where applicable)
Trace route	Target Server	The target hostname or IP address
	Gateway Interface	The network interface through which to capture the command output: internal, external, or management (where applicable)
Portprobe	Target Server	The target hostname or IP address
	Target Port	Specify a valid port at the target server in the range 1- 65535.
	Select Protocol	Choose a protocol to use: TCP or UDP.
	Probe Count	The number of probes to send. Use a value between 1-100.
	Probe Timeout	The timeout value, in seconds, for each probe. Use a value between 1-180.

System Snapshot

Use the *System Snapshot* task to trigger a snapshot of your Gateway system performance as it is currently configured:

GATEWAYS vsphereO1 Gateway Ready	:
Troubleshooting Logs and System Snapshots	
Select TROUBLESHOOTING TASK System Snapshot V () Various sections in troubleshooting allows Admin to upload the session to the controller. Once they finish uploading, Admin can download the files from this page. This also includes the system snapshots.	
The 10 most recent snapshots are stored below and can be downloaded as an encrypted package you can send to Ivanti Sup troubleshoot system performance. Scheduling automatic snapshots can result in a performance hit so only do this at the rec Ivanti Support member. It is not recommended to take snapshots more frequently than once every four hours.	pport to quest of a
Snapshot Options	
✓ Include System Config ✓ Include Debug Log	
Start Snapshot(s) Cancel	

Taking a system snapshot:

Regular snapshots can result in a performance hit. *Ivanti* recommends not taking snapshots more frequently than once every four hours, unless at the request of a support representative.

Set the following fields:

i)

- **Include System Config**: Choose whether or not to include the system config with the snapshot. This includes information such as host name, cache entries on the gateway, the *Controller* it is connected to, and so on.
- **Include Debug Log**: Choose whether or not to include the current debug log file with the snapshot.



The current debug log is either created specifically by the admin through the *Debug Log* task, or in the absence of a created log, the default system debug log (generated automatically with Log level 0).

To capture the system snapshot, select **Start Snapshot(s)**.



Use **Cancel** to return the settings on this page to the state last saved.

Completed snapshots are automatically uploaded to the *Troubleshooting Overview* task page and can be downloaded as an encrypted package to send to *Ivanti* Technical Support to troubleshoot system performance.

Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability

nZTA uses **Gateway Groups** to implement *high availability* for your Gateway deployments. Grouping Gateways together ensures the *Controller* can synchronize out policy changes to all Gateways in a group, automatically. To learn more about high availability and how it can benefit your application delivery, see <u>Using Gateway Groups for High Availability</u>.

To learn more about the process of adding and registering individual Gateways with the *Controller*, see the following workflows:

- To add a Gateway in VMware vSphere, see Workflow: Creating a Gateway in VMware vSphere.
- To add a Gateway in Amazon Web Services (AWS), see <u>Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Amazon</u> <u>Web Services</u>.
- To add a Gateway in Microsoft Azure, see Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Microsoft Azure.
- To add a Gateway in KVM/OpenStack, see Workflow: Creating a Gateway in KVM/OpenStack.
- To add a Gateway in Google Cloud Platform (GCP), see <u>Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Google</u> <u>Cloud Platform</u>.

After you have created your Gateways, you can add them to a Gateway Group. A Gateway already added a group cannot be added to a further Gateway Group, and cannot be used by more than one Secure Access Policy.

To add a Gateway Group:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- 2. From the nZTA menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

3. To add a new Gateway Group, select **Create** from the top-right:

	Create 🗸
Create ZTA Gateway	
Create ZTA Gateway Group	Q

Add a new Gateway or Gateway Group

4. In the drop-down menu, click **Create ZTA Gateway Group**.

The Create ZTA Gateway Group dialog appears.

- 5. Enter a **Name** for the Gateway Group.
- 6. (Optional) Enter a **Description** for the Gateway Group.
- Enter the Load Balancer IP addresses or CNAME. That is, a list of the public IP addresses or CNAMEs of the load balancer's front-end interface that your end users connect to. Enter a value, then select Add to add it to the list. Repeat this step for each entry you want to add.
- 8. (Optional) Select the pre-existing Gateways you want to add to this group. Use the drop-down list to select a Gateway, then select **Add**. Repeat this step for each Gateway you want to add.
- 9. To add this Gateway Group, click Create Gateway Group.

A newly added Gateway Group appears on the All Gateways page alongside all ungrouped Gateways.



For cloud-based Gateways: If you plan to add multiple deployed Gateways to a Gateway Group for high availability, additional configuration is required for the public IP addresses assigned to your instances. For more details, see <u>Registering</u> an Amazon Web Services Gateway (for AWS) or <u>Creating a Gateway using the</u> Azure Template and Image Files (for Azure).

Creating Gateway Selectors

The Gateway Selector feature provides optimal gateway selection and dynamic failover when deploying multiple geographically located nZTA gateways.

Tenant admins can then manually configure policies that determine to which Gateway an end-user is sent when they access an application. Tenant admins can select Gateways/Gateway Groups and set the priorities to identify to which set of Gateways the Client should connect to access the application.

To add a Gateway Selector:

- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways > Gateway Selector.

The Gateways Selector List page appears.

3. To add a new Gateway Selector, click **Create Gateway Selector**.

The Gateway Selector Details page appears.

Nanage Gateways 🤅	
Geteways List Geteway Selectors	Create Gateway Selector
Gateway Selector Details	ŕ
Gateway Selector Information	
DESCRIPTION	
Gateway Selection Policy Recognized Networks	
There are no recognized networks. Click here to Add Recognized Network	
Default gateways to be used in order of configuration. These gateways are given lower priority than the gateways in recognized networks. Note: Default gateways can be skipped for specific networks, if needed.	
There are no Gateway Priority. Click here to Add Gateway Priority	
Can	cel (Create)

Gateway Selector Details

- 4. Enter a Name for the Gateway Selector.
- 5. (Optional) Enter a **Description** for the Gateway Selector.
- 6. In the *Gateway Selector Policy* section, you can choose or add **Recognized Networks**, and choose or add gateway priority.

- 7. To add a Recognized Network:
 - 1. Click the Add Recognized Network link.

Add Rule				×
Networks				•
Gateway Priority Available Gateways / Gateway Groups		Selected Gateways / Gateway Grou	ps	
Select All		Select All	世	
Search)	Search		
AWSGW				
esxi-21-12r1-95	>		^	
esxi-22-1r1-75	<		\checkmark	
		🔿 No Items		
			_	-
			Cancel	

Add recognized network

- 2. In the *Add Rule* dialog, from the **Networks** drop-down list select a tag for the recognized network. To learn about creating tags, see the *Associating Geographical locations to IP Addresses* section in Using the Insights Menu to Monitor User Activity and Service Usage.
- In the Gateway Priority section, select the gateways/gateway groups from the Available Gateways / Gateway Groups list.
- 4. Use the Up/Down arrows to change the priorities.
- 5. Click Add.

A newly added Recognized Network appears in the Gateway Selection Policy section.

- 8. To add Gateway Priority:
 - 1. Click the Add Gateway Priority link.

The Gateway Priority window appears.

Available Gateways / Gateway Groups		Selected Gateways / Gateway Gro	oups
Select All		Select All	団
Search)	Search	
AWSGW			
esxi-21-12r1-95	>		
esxi-22-1r1-75	<		\checkmark
		No Items	

Set Gateway priority

- Select the gateways/gateway groups from the Available Gateways / Gateway Groups list.
- 3. Use the Up/Down arrows to change the priorities.
- 4. Click Add.

A newly added Gateway Priority appears in the Gateway Selection Policy section.

9. In the Gateway Selector Details page, click Create.

A newly added Gateway Selector appears in the Gateway Selectors page.

- 10. To modify a Gateway Selector, click the adjacent three dots, then select **Edit**. In the Gateway Selector Details page, make the necessary changes and click **Update**.
- 11. To remove a Gateway Selector, click the adjacent three dots, then select **Delete**, and then confirm by clicking **Delete**.

Workflow: Creating a Gateway in VMware vSphere

Download the ZTA Gateway image and template files from the Software Download Portal https://portal.ivanti.com/customer/product-downloads. The process of registering a vSphere Gateway with *nZTA* involves two main procedures, to be completed in sequence:

- Create the Gateway record in the Controller.
- Create the Gateway virtual machine instance in VMware vSphere.

After these steps have been completed successfully, the *Controller* and Gateway establish communication with each other.

Before you start, make sure that you have the following information and files for the Gateway:

- An identifying name for the Gateway
- The public IP address for the Gateway. This is the IP address at which clients can externally reach the Gateway instance.
- The Gateway geographic location
- (Optional) The name of the *Gateway Group* to which you want to add this new Gateway record. To learn more about Gateway Groups, see <u>Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability</u>.
- Credentials for the vSphere Console.



These credentials must include sufficient permissions to create a VM from a template image.

By default, *nZTA* derives Gateway DNS and network interface settings through DHCP (provided this is configured in your vSphere environment). If, instead, you want to manually specify your Gateway DNS and network interface settings, make sure you have the following additional information:

- The internal/private subnet IP address, subnet mask, and network gateway IP address.
- The primary (and optional secondary) DNS server IP address, and search domain.
- The external interface IP address, subnet mask, and network gateway IP address.
- (Optional) The management interface IP address, subnet mask, and network gateway IP address.

If you choose to deploy a vSphere-based Gateway instance with DHCP configuration, DNS server settings are not configurable through the *nZTA* Tenant Admin UI. In this scenario, make sure you have at least a primary DNS server configured and available through DHCP (a secondary DNS server is optional). Make sure also that a DNS search domain is properly configured.

Adding a VMware vSphere Gateway

To register a Gateway on your Controller, use the Gateway Details dialog.

To begin, log into the *Controller* Tenant Admin Portal using the credentials provided in your welcome email. Two outcomes are possible:

- On unconfigured *nZTA* systems, the *Secure Access Setup* Onboarding wizard appears (see Working with the Onboarding Wizard). In this case, click **Add Gateway**.
- On configured *nZTA* systems, the *Network Overview* page appears. In this case:
 - 1. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Gateways**.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

2. To add a new Gateway, select **Create** from the top-right:

	Create 🗸
Create ZTA Gateway	
Create ZTA Gateway Group	Q

Add a new Gateway or Gateway Group

3. In the drop-down menu, click **Create ZTA Gateway**.

In both cases, the Gateway Details dialog appears.

Manage Gateways 🤅		
Gateways List Gateway Selectors		Create 🗸
Gateway Details		[]→ 5 View Gstewaye Reset fields
Gateway Information		4
NAME		
PUBLIC ADDRESS or CNAME ADD		
COUNTRY State/Region CITY Select a Country Select a State/Region Select a City	~	
ORTEWAY PLATFORM ✓ VMware vSphere ✓		
Use Management Port Ise Dynamic Tunnel IP ASSIGNABLE CUSTOM IPV4 ADDRESS ADD Example: x.x.x.x/netmask netmask would be in the range of 8-28		
Use Proxy Server for communication (3)		
Add this Gateway to a group Add gateway to any of the predefined gateway group or create a new gateway group		
Select a gateway group		
Configure MTU for the gateway		
Мти 1500 📀		

Gateway Details

Enter the following details:

- 1. Enter a **Name** for the Gateway.
- Enter one or more Public Address or CNAME (Public IP address or CNAME) for the Gateway. Select Add to add each entry to the list. To learn more about this setting, see <u>Configuring</u> <u>Networks in your Gateway Datacenter</u>.
- 3. Select the geographic location details for the Gateway.

- 4. For Gateway Platform, select "VMware vSphere".
- (Optional) To enter your vSphere Gateway instance DNS and network interface settings manually, select Use Manual Settings. To instead allow *nZTA* to use DHCP-derived settings for DNS and network interfaces, leave Use Manual Settings un-selected. To learn more about these settings, see Configuring Networks in your Gateway Datacenter.
- 6. (Optional) Select the **Use Management Port** check box to use management network ports for *nZTA* traffic rather than internal ports.

When the management port is enabled, Gateway will use management interface to communicate with *Controller* and NTP Server.



The Gateway will still use the internal port for DNS resolution and NTP server name resolution.

If the internal DNS cannot resolve the *Controller* domain, the internal interface will require internet access.

 (Optional) Select the Use Dynamic Tunnel IP check box to configure a pool of IP addresses that are dynamically mapped to client sessions with this Gateway, such that user traffic from the Gateway to an application can be identified as originating from a specific client. To learn more, see Using Dynamic IP Addressing to Profile Client Traffic.

The Custom IP Pool dialog appears:

Gateway Network Settings
✓ Use Management Port ✓ Use Dynamic Tunnel IP
Use Proxy Server for communication (i)
Proxy Server Settings
HOST PORT 8080
USERNAME PASSWORD
Custom IP Pool
ASSIGNABLE CUSTOM IPV4 ADDRESS ADD Example: x.x.x/netmask netmask would be in the range of 8-28

Gateway Details - Custom IP Pool settings

Dynamic Tunnel IP addresses are not supported in Gateway Groups.

Use the **Assignable Custom IPv4 Address** field to enter an IP address and subnet (in the range 8-28) in CIDR notation, then click **Add**. Repeat this step for each address/subnet you want to use.

8. (Optional) Select the Use proxy server for communication check box to enable nZTA to *Controller* communication via proxy server. Proxy is supported on both internal and management interfaces of the Gateway. Once enabled, enter host name and port. Optionally, if your proxy server requires further authentication, enter a username and password to log in to the proxy server.



Admin can configure proxy for existing Gateway after upgrading it to 22.4R3 version or later.

9. (Optional) Select a **Gateway Group** to which the new Gateway is to be added. To learn more about Gateway Groups, see Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability.

GATEWAY PLATFORM VMware vSphere	V Use Manua	Settings	
Internal IP			
IP ADDRESS	SUBNET MASK	GATEWAY	мти 1500
External IP			
IP ADDRESS	SUBNET MASK	GATEWAY	(мти 1500
Internal Network / Private Subn	et		
PRIMARY DNS	SECONDARY DNS	DNS SEARCH DOMAIN	
Management IP			
IP ADDRESS	SUBNET MASK	GATEWAY	Мти 1500

10. If you elected to use manual settings, the following panel appears:

Gateway Network Configuration - manual settings

Enter the following details:

- 1. Specify the internal **IP Address** for the Gateway.
- 2. Specify the internal **Subnet Mask** for the Gateway.
- 3. Specify the internal network gateway IP address as the **Gateway** setting.
- 4. Specify the MTU size between 576 and 1500.
- 5. Enter the Primary DNS IP address for the Gateway.
- 6. (Optional) Enter the Secondary DNS IP address for the Gateway.
- 7. Enter the **DNS Search Domain** for the Gateway.
- 8. Specify the external IP Address for the Gateway.
- 9. Specify the external **Subnet Mask** for the Gateway.
- 10. Specify the external network gateway IP address as the **Gateway** setting.
- 11. Specify the **MTU** size between 576 and 1500.

12. Specify the management **IP Address** for the Gateway.



Management network settings are optional, unless the **Use Management Port** check box is selected.

- 13. Specify the management **Subnet Mask** for the Gateway.
- 14. Specify the management network gateway IP address as the Gateway setting.
- 15. Specify the **MTU** size between 576 and 1500.
- 11. (Optional) Select a **Gateway Group** to which the new Gateway is to be added. To learn more about Gateway Groups, see <u>Adding Gateway Groups</u> for High Availability.
- 12. **Configure MTU for the gateway**: Configurable MTU size allows admin to modify the default setting of nZTA gateways wherever it is needed. The value allowed is in the range of 576 to 1500 (IPv4).
- 13. To add a Gateway definition based on the settings you specified in this dialog, select **Create Configuration**.

After you complete this process, an unregistered Gateway record is created on the *Controller*. You can view this Gateway record on the **Manage Gateways > Gateways List** page.

Next, create the Gateway virtual machine instance in VMware vSphere and allow it to register with the *Controller*. This links the Gateway record on the *Controller* with the actual Gateway virtual machine, see Registering a VMware vSphere Gateway.

Registering a VMware vSphere Gateway

This section describes the steps necessary to create the Gateway virtual machine in the vSphere console. To learn more about the operations included here, refer to VMware's own documentation for full details.



For reference, the recommended minimum requirements for a Gateway virtual machine instance in vSphere are:

- 4 vCPU's and 8 GB memory, or
- 8 vCPU's and 32 GB memory

After you have created an unregistered Gateway record on the **Gateways** page, you must create the Gateway instance on the *VMware vSphere Console*. This process facilitates communication between the *Controller* and the Gateway instance.

Before you start, make sure you have obtained the Gateway definition file from the *Controller*. This definition file includes the settings necessary to configure the new Gateway virtual machine with the identity and location of the *Controller*, and is used during the registration process described later in this section.

To download the Gateway definition file:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- 2. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Gateways**.

The Gateways List page appears.

- 3. Locate and select your unregistered vSphere Gateway record from the list of available Gateways.
- 4. Click the **Download** icon and select **Download gateway init config** to obtain a copy of the Gateway definition file.



The Download Icon

5. Save the downloaded text file to a location accessible from the vSphere Console.



The Gateway definition file is valid for 24 hours. If this period expires, you must replace the Gateway to generate a new Gateway definition file.

 (Optional) If you have not yet downloaded the latest version of your Gateway VM file, click the Download icon and select Download gateway VM image. Save the archive file and unpack to a local workstation. Make sure the resulting file set is accessible from the vSphere Console.

To register a Gateway:

- 1. Access the vSphere console, either from a client or a web browser.
- 2. In the vSphere console, start the *Deploy OVF Template* wizard to create a new virtual machine based on the *nZTA* vSphere Gateway template.

- 3. In the wizard:
 - Choose to deploy from a local file.
 - Locate and upload your OVF/VMDK template files.
 - Provide an identifying name and location for the new Gateway virtual machine.
 - Choose any required compute resource.
 - Choose the required storage settings.
 - Customize the *vApp properties* of your virtual machine and, in the **VA IVE Configuration** parameter, paste the raw text of your Gateway definition file. To obtain the Gateway definition file, see the process described earlier in this section.
 - Confirm all settings.
 - Finish the wizard to create the Gateway VM.
- 4. Locate the new Gateway VM in the hosts and clusters.
- 5. Start the Gateway VM by powering it on.
- 6. Wait until the power-up is complete.
- 7. Return to the Gateways List page on the Controller.
- 8. Locate the new Gateway record in the list and confirm that its status has updated to Connected.
- (Optional) After you have registered a Gateway, you can configure it (or the Gateway Group to which it belongs) as the default Gateway if required. A default Gateway handles all requests from applications that are not referenced by any secure access policy. See <u>Configuring a Default</u> <u>Gateway for Application Discovery</u>.

After this process completes, you can move to the next stage of *nZTA* configuration, which is <u>Working with User Authentication</u>.

In case of registration failure due to Gateway configuration mistakes in firewall rules, DNS, etc., you can re-register the gateway. It does not require re-deploying of Gateway. For details see "Re-registering an Amazon Web Services Gateway" on page 262

Re-registering a VMware vSphere Gateway

Re-registration of Gateway includes the following capabilities:

- Gateway triggers re-registration on every launch of the gateway if the registration with controller fails or any update is made to the configuration parameters.
- The "View registration error report" option provides the reason for failure and solution to rectify it.



- On registration failures, admin is provided with the "Register" option to trigger the registration
 manually along with the existing debugging options such as networking tools, reboot, etc. This
 option can be used after rectifying any external issues such as network reach issue or Firewall
 rules following controller traffic from Gateway.
- To rectify registration failure due to the config error, first update the config settings in the Controller and download the config file. Then shut down Gateway VM, update downloaded config, and then boot Gateway.

Summary Monitor	Cor	nfigure	Per	missions	5 0	Datastores Net	works Snapsh	ots			
Settings VM SDRS Rules VApp Options	Prop	perties	EDIT	SET	ALUE	DELETE					
Alarm Definitions		Key	т	Label	Ŧ	Value	Ŧ	Default Value	Ŧ	Category T	Туре
Policies Guest User Mappings	•	yalVE 9	Confi	ZTA G ay Cor ration	atew nfigu	valPAddress=5.5.9 55.255.255.0;vaGe aExternalPAddres vaExternalNetmas	5.3;vaNetmask=2 ateway=5.5.5.1;v ss=10.96.142.141; sk=255.255.255.255 way=10.96.142.1;	valPAddress=;vaNetri =;vaGateway=;vaDefi Vlan=;vaPrimaryDNS SecondaryDNS=;vaD omain=:vaDNSTraffir	nask ault =;va NSD	ZTAGatew ayConfig	string
						vaManagement/P/ 50.123;vaManager 55.255.255.0;vaM way=10.96.250.1;v	Address=10.96.2 nentNetmask=2 anagementGate aPrimaryDNS=8.	face=;vaWINSServer= AdminUsername=;va. inPassword=;vaComm Name=;vaOrganizatio	=;va Adm non m=;		

Sample screen: Update Config Value



An option is provided to regenerate and download the gateway init config from the controller admin interface.

Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Amazon Web Services

Download the ZTA Gateway image and template files from the Software Download Portal https://portal.ivanti.com/customer/product-downloads.

The process of registering an AWS Gateway with *nZTA* involves two main procedures, to be completed in sequence:

- Create the Gateway record in the Controller.
- Create the Gateway virtual machine instance in Amazon Web Services (AWS).

After these steps have been completed successfully, the *Controller* and Gateway establish communication with each other.

Before you start, make sure that you have the following information and files for the Gateway:

- An identifying name for the Gateway
- The public IP address for the Gateway. This is the IP address at which clients can externally reach the Gateway instance, typically an elastic IP address provided by AWS.
- The Gateway geographic location.
- (Optional) The name of the *Gateway Group* to which you want to add this new Gateway record. To learn more about Gateway Groups, see <u>Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability</u>.
- The primary (and optional secondary) DNS server IP address, and search domain.
• The Gateway AMI identifier. *nZTA* gateway AMIs are available in all AWS regions (except China).

In most cases, after the Gateway image becomes available in the AWS Marketplace, the AMI applicable to your region is automatically selected. Alternatively, to perform a manual search, follow these steps:

- 1. Log into the AWS console.
- 2. Navigate to EC2 > Images > AMIs.
- 3. Select "Public Images".
- 4. Search for the image corresponding to your selected hypervisor:
 - Nitro: "ISA-V-NITRO-ZTA-22.7R2.2-607.1.img"
- 5. Make a note of the corresponding AMI ID.
- Credentials for the AWS Management Console.



These credentials must include sufficient permissions to create a stack.

• The SSH key pair file that you are using with the AWS Management Console.

Adding an Amazon Web Services Gateway

To registering a Gateway on your Controller, use the Gateway Details dialog.

To begin, log into the *Controller* Tenant Admin Portal using the credentials provided in your welcome email. Two outcomes are possible:

 On unconfigured *nZTA* systems, the *Secure Access Setup* Onboarding wizard appears (see <u>Working with the Onboarding Wizard</u>). In this case, click **Add Gateway**.

- On configured *nZTA* systems, the *Network Overview* page appears. In this case:
 - 1. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Gateways**.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

2. To add a new Gateway, select **Create** from the top-right:

	Create 🗸
Create ZTA Gateway	
Create ZTA Gateway Group	Q

Add a new Gateway or Gateway Group

3. In the drop-down menu, click **Create ZTA Gateway**.

In both cases, the Gateway Details dialog appears.

Manage Gateways (i)		
Gateways List Gateway Selectors		Create 🗸
Gateway Details		Hara S View Gatewaye Reset fields
Gateway Information		
NAME		
PUBLIC ADDRESS or CNAME ADD		
CODUNTRY Select a Country State/Region OITY Select a City	~	
Amazon Web Services		
Internal Network / Private Subnet		
PRIMARY DNS SECONDARY DNS DNS SEARCH DOMAIN		
Gateway Network Settings		
✓ Use Management Port		
Use Proxy Server for communication (i)		
Add this Gateway to a group		
Add gateway to any of the predefined gateway group or create a new gateway group		
eateway group ✓ CREATE GATEWAY GROUP		
Configure MTU for the gateway		
мти 1500		
	CANCE	Create Configuration
	CANCEL	

Gateway Details

Enter the following details:

- 1. Enter a **Name** for the Gateway.
- Enter one or more **Public Address or CNAME** (Public IP address or CNAME) for the Gateway. Select **Add** to add each entry to the list. To learn more about this setting, see <u>Configuring</u> <u>Networks in your Gateway Datacenter</u>.

- 3. Select the geographic location details for the Gateway.
- 4. For Gateway Platform, select "Amazon Web Services".
- 5. Enter the Primary DNS IP address for the Gateway.
- 6. (Optional) Enter the Secondary DNS IP address for the Gateway.
- 7. Enter the DNS Search Domain for the Gateway.



Make sure the specified DNS service can resolve the IP address of your *Controller*. Issues here can cause registration of the Gateway with the *Controller* to fail.

8. (Optional) Select the **Use Management Port** check box to use management network ports for *nZTA* traffic rather than internal ports.

When the management port is enabled, Gateway will use management interface to communicate with *Controller* and NTP Server.



The Gateway will still use the internal port for DNS resolution and NTP server name resolution.

If the internal DNS cannot resolve the *Controller* domain, the internal interface will require internet access.

9. (Optional) Select the Use proxy server for communication check box to enable nZTA to *Controller* communication via proxy server. Proxy is supported on both internal and management interfaces of the Gateway. Once enabled, enter host name and port. Optionally, if your proxy server requires further authentication, enter a username and password to log in to the proxy server.



Admin can configure proxy for existing Gateway after upgrading it to 22.4R3 version or later.

- 10. (Optional) Select a **Gateway Group** to which the new Gateway is to be added. To learn more about Gateway Groups, see <u>Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability</u>.
- 11. **Configure MTU for the gateway**: Configurable MTU size allows admin to modify the default setting of nZTA gateways wherever it is needed. The value allowed is in the range of 576 to 1500 (IPv4).

To add a Gateway definition based on the settings you specified in this dialog, select **Create Configuration**.

After you complete the first part of this workflow, an unregistered Gateway record is created on the *Controller*. This Gateway record can be seen on the **Manage Gateways > Gateways List** page.

Next, create the Gateway virtual machine instance on AWS and allow it to register with the *Controller*. This links the Gateway record on the *Controller* with the actual Gateway virtual machine, see <u>Registering</u> an Amazon Web Services Gateway.

Registering an Amazon Web Services Gateway

This section describes the steps necessary to create the Gateway virtual machine in the AWS management console. To learn more about the operations included here, refer to Amazon's own documentation for full details.

After you have created an unregistered Gateway record on the **Gateways** page, you must create the Gateway instance on the *AWS Management Console*. This process facilitates communication between the *Controller* and the Gateway instance.

Before you start, make sure you have obtained the Gateway definition file from the *Controller*. This definition file includes the settings necessary to configure the new Gateway virtual machine with the identity and location of the *Controller*.

To download the Gateway definition file:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- 2. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Gateways**.

The Gateways List page appears.

- 3. Locate and select your unregistered AWS Gateway record from the list of available Gateways.
- 4. Click the **Download** icon to obtain a copy of the Gateway definition file.



The Download Icon

5. Save the downloaded text file to a location accessible from the AWS Management Console.



The Gateway definition file is valid for 24 hours. If this period expires, you must replace the Gateway to generate a new Gateway definition file.

 (Optional) If you have not yet downloaded the latest version of your Gateway VM file, click the Download icon and select Download gateway VM image. Save the archive file and unpack to a local workstation. Make sure the resulting file set is accessible from the AWS Management Console.

To register a Gateway:

- 1. Access the AWS Management Console and log in using your credentials.
- 2. In the AWS Services menu, select CloudFormation.

The CloudFormation home page appears.

3. Click Create Stack and then, from the sub-menu, select With new resources (standard).

The Specify template step of the Create Stack wizard appears.

- 4. Under Prerequisite prepare template, select the Template is ready option.
- 5. Under Specify Template, select the Upload a template file template source option.
- 6. Under **Upload a template file**, click **Choose File** and select the Gateway template file that you downloaded at the start of this process.

The file uploads, and the AWS S3 URL for the uploaded template file appears automatically.

7. Click Next.

The **Specify stack details** step of the **Create Stack** wizard appears. This page displays the details and parameters required by the Gateway template.

- 8. Enter a **Stack name**.
- 9. Specify the parameters as appropriate for your deployment:
 - If you are deploying the Gateway instance into a *new VPC*, you can accept the default values used for all parameters.
 - If you are deploying the instance into an *existing VPC*, you must manually specify the details of your existing VPC into the parameters on the page. For more information, contact *Ivanti* Technical Support.
- 10. Under **ZTAGateway Configuration**, identify the Gateway AMI using its **ZTAGateway AMI ID**. Choose the designated AMI for the region in which you are deploying the Gateway instance.

11. For **Instance Type**, select the instance type that fits your hypervisor choice (Xen or Nitro) and minimum requirements, based on the following recommended types:

For reference, the recommended minimum requirements for a Gateway virtual machine instance in AWS are:

For Nitro hypervisor-based instances, use M5 types:

- A
- m5.large (2 vCPU, 8 GB Memory) (2NIC min)
- m5.xlarge (4 vCPU, 16 GB Memory) (3NIC min)
- m5.2xlarge (8 vCPU, 32 GB Memory)
- m5.4xlarge (16 vCPU, 64 GB Memory)
- 12. For **ZTAGateway Config Data**, paste in the raw text of your Gateway definition file. To obtain the Gateway definition file, see the process described earlier in this section.
- 13. For SSH Key Name, specify your existing SSH key pair name.

14. For **Load Balancer Configuration**, If you plan to deploy multiple Gateways inside a Gateway Group, select "Yes" to deploy a new internet-facing network load balancer instance alongside the Gateway. Select "No" to launch only this Gateway instance.



This option is applicable only for new VPC templates.

If you elect to launch a load balancer, the following pre-configuration is applied:

- An Elastic IP address is assigned to the load balancer.
- A TCP listener is configured on port 443.
- An IP-based Target Group is created and the private IP address of the deployed Gateway's external network interface is added as a target.
- A health-check is configured on TCP port 443.
- Stickiness is enabled on the Target Group.

After you have deployed the Gateway and Load Balancer, you must return to the Tenant Admin Portal on the *Controller* and update the Gateway Group **Load Balancer IP ADDRESS** setting to be the Load Balancer's public IP address.

If you want to configure the Load Balancer to balance across further Gateway instances from the Gateway Group, you must deploy each subsequent Gateway into an existing VPC and then update the Load Balancer Target Group.



With new VPC templates, a NAT gateway is deployed for routing outbound Internet traffic from the Gateway's internal network interface in order for the Gateway to be able to reach the *Controller*.



Public IP addresses are not automatically assigned to any of your Gateway's network interfaces. If you are deploying a Gateway into an existing VPC, in order for the Gateway to be able to reach the *Controller* from it's internal network interface, make sure you allow outbound Internet traffic from the Private Subnet for the deployed Gateway.

To learn more about high availability and Gateway Groups, see <u>Adding Gateway Groups for High</u> <u>Availability</u> and <u>Using Gateway Groups for High Availability</u>. 15. Click Next.

The **Configure stack options** step of the **Create Stack** wizard appears. All properties that were specified either in the template or in earlier steps are populated automatically.

No changes or new inputs are required.

- 16. Click Next.
- 17. The Review step of the Create Stack wizard appears.
- 18. Confirm all displayed details.
- 19. Click Create stack.

The **Stacks** page appears. The new stack is listed using the **Stack name** you specified during the wizard. The new stack has a status of *CREATE_IN_PROGRESS*.

- 20. Wait for the status of the new stack to reach CREATE_COMPLETE.
- 21. (This step is required only if you have not deployed your Gateway with a Load Balancer or NAT at the front-end) Elastic IP addresses are not automatically assigned to any of the Gateway's network interfaces. Therefore, before you can access the new Gateway instance from the *Controller*, you must associate a new Public IP address with the external interface of the Gateway. Then, return to the *Controller* Tenant Admin Portal and update the Gateway *Public IP Address* setting to match this address.
- 22. In the Tenant Admin Portal **Secure Access > Gateways > Gateways List** page, make sure the new Gateway has a confirmed status of *Connected*.



You can directly access your AWS instance over SSH using AWS EC2 Instance Connect. To configure AWS EC2 Instance Connect, refer to the Amazon Web Service Documentation. You can then connect to the instance directly as a serial console using SSH from inside the AWS Management Console, refer to the Amazon Web Service Documentation.

23. (Optional) After you have registered a Gateway, you can configure it (or the Gateway Group to which it belongs) as the default Gateway if required. A default Gateway handles all requests from applications that are not referenced by any secure access policy. See <u>Configuring a Default</u> <u>Gateway for Application Discovery</u>.

After this process completes, you can move to the next stage of *nZTA* configuration, which is <u>Working</u> <u>with User Authentication</u>.

In case of registration failure due to Gateway configuration mistakes in firewall rules, DNS, etc., you can re-register the gateway. It does not require re-deploying of Gateway. For details see "Re-registering an Amazon Web Services Gateway" below.

Re-registering an Amazon Web Services Gateway

Re-registration of Gateway includes the following capabilities:

- Gateway triggers re-registration on every launch of the gateway if the registration with controller fails or any update is made to the configuration parameters.
- The "View registration error report" option provides the reason for failure and solution to rectify it.

```
Current version: 22.4R1 (build 277)
Reset version: 22.4R1 (build 277)
Licensing Hardware ID: VASPH55UIOB3TQVES
Please choose from among the following options:
1. Network Settings and Tools
2. Display log/status
3. System Operations
4. System Maintenance
5. Register
6. View registration error report
Choice:
```

- On registration failures, admin is provided with the "Register" option to trigger the registration
 manually along with the existing debugging options such as networking tools, reboot, etc. This
 option can be used after rectifying any external issues such as network reach issue or Firewall
 rules following controller traffic from Gateway.
- To rectify registration failure due to the config error, first update the config settings in the Controller and download the config file. Then shut down Gateway VM, update downloaded config, and then boot Gateway.

Edit user data Info	
Instance ID	
i-04c53ada96d5953d3 (e2e-auto-mgmt-vpc-ZTAvAWS)	
Current user data User data currently associated with this instance	
<pre><pulse-config><primary-dns>8.8.8.8</primary-dns>8.8.8.8secon domain>psecure.net<cert-common-name>a blue.pzt.dev.perfsec.com</cert-common-name><accept-lice <config-download-url>'https://tenant2.navy-blue.pzt.dev.p 6697b89a004d/orchestration/initial-config? t=eyJleHBpcmVzljogMTYxMjYwOTk4OS43NTg3MzksICJkYX</config-download-url></accept-lice </pulse-config></pre>	dary-dns>8.8.4.4 <dns- ws-119.g.tenant2.e.navy- ense-agreement>y perfsec.com/api/gateways/197cd8f2-d65e-4297-8125- RhljogeyJ0ZW5hbnRfaWQiOiAxOTEyMDYzNDQyNDAz</dns-
Copy user data New user data This user data will replace the current user data	
 Modify user data as text Add your user data below 	 Modify user data by importing a file Description of importing a file and what will happen to it
<pre><pulse-config><primary-dns>8.8.8.8</primary-dns><secon domain>psecure.net<cert-common-name>a blue.pzt.dev.perfsec.com</cert-common-name><accept-lice <config-download-url>'https://tenant2.navy-blue.pzt.dev.p 6697b89a004d/orchestration/initial-config? t=eyJleHBpcmVzIjogMTYxMjYwOTk4OS43NTg3MzksICJkYX</config-download-url></accept-lice </secon </pulse-config></pre>	dary-dns>8.8.4.4 <dns- ws-119.g.tenant2.e.navy- ense-agreement>y berfsec.com/api/gateways/197cd8f2-d65e-4297-8125- kRhljogeyJ0ZW5hbnRfaWQiOiAxOTEyMDYzNDQyNDAz</dns-

Sample screen: Update Config Value



An option is provided to regenerate and download the gateway init config from the controller admin interface.

Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Microsoft Azure

Download the ZTA Gateway image and template files from the Software Download Portal https://portal.ivanti.com/customer/product-downloads.

The process of registering an Azure Gateway with *nZTA* involves two main procedures, to be completed in sequence:

- 1. Create a Gateway record in the *Controller*.
- 2. Create a Gateway virtual machine instance in Azure and register it with the Controller.

Azure offers two methods for launching a Gateway virtual machine instance:

- Through the Azure Marketplace
- Using the provided template and image files

Before you start, make sure that you have the following information and files for the Gateway:

- An identifying name for the Gateway
- The Gateway geographic location.
- (Optional) The name of the *Gateway Group* to which you want to add this new Gateway record. To learn more about Gateway Groups, see <u>Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability</u>.
- The primary (and optional secondary) DNS server IP address, and search domain.
- The SSH public key that you are using with the Azure Portal or Management Console.

SSH keys can be generated using sshkeygen on Linux and MacOS, or PuTTyGen on Windows. For further details about generating SSH key pairs, see:



- For Windows: <u>https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-</u> machines/linux/ssh-from-windows
- For MacOS and Linux: https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-machines/linux/mac-create-ssh-keys
- Credentials for the Azure Portal or Management Console.



These credentials must include sufficient permissions to create a virtual machine.

Additionally, if you are deploying a Gateway instance directly from the template and image files (as opposed to using the Azure Marketplace):

• A public IP address or CNAME for the Gateway. This is the IP address or CNAME at which client devices can externally reach the Gateway instance.



CNAMEs are not currently supported on *Ivanti Secure Access Client* Linux variants.

Adding an Azure Gateway

To registering a Gateway on your Controller, use the Gateway Details dialog.

To begin, log into the *Controller* Tenant Admin Portal using the credentials provided in your welcome email. Two outcomes are possible:

- On unconfigured *nZTA* systems, the *Secure Access Setup* Onboarding wizard appears (see Working with the Onboarding Wizard). In this case, click **Add Gateway**.
- On configured *nZTA* systems, the *Network Overview* page appears. In this case:
 - 1. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Gateways**.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

2. To add a new Gateway, select Create from the top-right:

	Create 🗸
Create ZTA Gateway	
Create ZTA Gateway Group	Q

Add a new Gateway or Gateway Group

3. In the drop-down menu, click Create ZTA Gateway.

In both cases, the Gateway Details dialog appears.

Manage Gateways (i)		
Gateways List Gateway Selectors		Create 🗸
Gateway Details		¶্ট্র ঠ View Getewaye Reset fields
Gateway Information		
NAME		
PUBLIC ADDRESS or CNAME ADD		
COUNTRY Select a Country Oity Select a Country Select a State/Region Select a City	~	
Azure VISe Manual Settings		
Internal Network / Private Subnet		
PRIMARY DNS SECONDARY DNS DNS SEARCH DOMAIN		
Gateway Network Settings		
☑ Use Management Port		
Use Proxy Server for communication (i)		
Add this Gateway to a group		
Add gateway to any of the predefined gateway group or create a new gateway group		
CREATE GATEWAY GROUP		
Configure MTU for the gateway		
мти 1500		
	CANCEL	Create Configuration

Gateway Details

Enter the following details:

- 1. Enter a **Name** for the Gateway.
- Enter one or more **Public Address or CNAME** (Public IP address or CNAME) for the Gateway. Select **Add** to add each entry to the list. To learn more about this setting, see <u>Configuring</u> Networks in your Gateway Datacenter.

For Azure Marketplace deployments, a public IP address or CNAME is typically allocated at deployment time through the Azure Portal. Therefore, if you do not yet know the expected address/CNAME, enter a dummy value in this field now and update the setting after you have deployed and registered the Gateway instance. For more details on this process, see <u>Creating a Gateway through Azure Marketplace</u>.

- 3. Select the geographic location details for the Gateway.
- 4. For Gateway Platform, select "Azure".
- 5. Enter the Primary DNS IP address for the Gateway.
- 6. (Optional) Enter the Secondary DNS IP address for the Gateway.
- 7. Enter the DNS Search Domain for the Gateway.



Make sure the specified DNS service can resolve the IP address of your *Controller*. Issues here can cause registration of the Gateway with the *Controller* to fail.

8. (Optional) Select the **Use Management Port** check box to use management network ports for *nZTA* traffic rather than internal ports.

When the management port is enabled, Gateway will use management interface to communicate with *Controller* and NTP Server.



The Gateway will still use the internal port for DNS resolution and NTP server name resolution.

If the internal DNS cannot resolve the *Controller* domain, the internal interface will require internet access.

9. (Optional) Select the Use proxy server for communication check box to enable nZTA to *Controller* communication via proxy server. Proxy is supported on both internal and management interfaces of the Gateway. Once enabled, enter host name and port. Optionally, if your proxy server requires further authentication, enter a username and password to log in to the proxy server.



Admin can configure proxy for existing Gateway after upgrading it to 22.4R3 version or later.

- 10. (Optional) Select a Gateway **Group** to which the new Gateway is to be added. To learn more about Gateway Groups, see <u>Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability</u>.
- 11. **Configure MTU for the gateway**: Configurable MTU size allows admin to modify the default setting of nZTA gateways wherever it is needed. The value allowed is in the range of 576 to 1500 (IPv4).

To add a Gateway definition based on the settings you specified in this dialog, select **Create Configuration**.

After you complete the first part of this workflow, an unregistered Gateway record is created on the *Controller*. This Gateway record can be seen on the **Manage Gateways > Gateways List** page.

Next, create the Gateway virtual machine instance on Azure and allow it to register with the *Controller*. This links the Gateway record on the *Controller* with the actual Gateway virtual machine. Choose to register the Gateway instance through the Azure Marketplace (see <u>Creating a Gateway through Azure</u> <u>Marketplace</u>.) or through the Azure management console (see <u>Creating a Gateway using the Azure</u> <u>Template and Image Files</u>).

Creating a Gateway through Azure Marketplace

This section describes the steps necessary to create the Gateway virtual machine in Microsoft Azure by using the Azure Marketplace. To learn more about the operations included here, refer also to Microsoft's own Azure documentation (https://docs.microsoft.com/azure) for full details.

After you have created an unregistered Gateway record on the **Gateways** page, you must create the Gateway instance in the *Azure portal*. This process facilitates communication between the *Controller* and the Gateway instance.

Before you start, you must obtain the Gateway definition file from the *Controller*. This definition file includes the settings necessary to configure the new Gateway virtual machine with the identity and location of the *Controller*.

To download the Gateway definition file:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways > Gateways List.

The Gateways List page appears.

- 3. Locate and select your unregistered Azure Gateway record from the list of available Gateways.
- 4. Click the **Download** icon to obtain a copy of the Gateway definition file.



The Download Icon

5. Save the downloaded text file to a location accessible from the Microsoft Azure Portal.



The Gateway definition file is valid for 24 hours. If this period expires, you must replace the Gateway to generate a new Gateway definition file.

 (Optional) If you have not yet downloaded the latest version of your Gateway VM file, click the Download icon and select Download gateway VM image. Save the archive file and unpack to a local workstation. Make sure the resulting file set is accessible from the Microsoft Azure Portal.

To create a Gateway instance from Azure Marketplace:

nZTA Gateways in Azure Marketplace are limited to version 21.3R1 at the present time. To use a Gateway version later than 21.3R1, either launch the Azure Marketplace version and upgrade in-place to the latest version (see <u>Upgrading Gateways</u>) or use the alternate procedure described in <u>Creating a Gateway using the Azure Template and Image Files</u> to launch a Gateway instance using the template and image files.

- 1. Log into the Microsoft Azure Portal (http://portal.azure.com).
- 2. Navigate to the Azure Marketplace by clicking Create a resource.
- 3. In the Search the Marketplace text box, enter "Ivanti".

Azure Marketplace presents the results relevant to your search term.

4. Locate Ivanti Neurons Zero Trust Access Gateway and click Create.

- 5. In the drop-down list, choose the option that is applicable to your needs:
 - Ivanti Neurons Zero Trust Access Gateway BYOL 3 NIC: Includes 3 network interfaces (internal, external, and management)
 - Ivanti Neurons Zero Trust Access Gateway BYOL 2 NIC: Includes 2 network interfaces (internal and external)



To first learn more about *Ivanti Neurons Zero Trust Access Gateway*, click the product banner and view the associated information page. You can launch a new Gateway instance from this page.

The Create Ivanti Neurons Zero Trust Access Gateway process appears.

- 6. On the Basics tab, enter the following details:
 - **Subscription**: If you are using the "PZT_Dev" subscription, leave this field as the default value. Otherwise, enter your subscription name.
 - **Resource Group**: Specify the resource group in which the Gateway needs to be deployed, or create a new resource group using the link provided. An Azure Resource Group is a container for a collection of connected assets that you assign to a virtual machine. To learn more, see the Azure documentation (https://docs.microsoft.com/azure).
 - Region: Specify the geographic region in which the Gateway instance is deployed.
 - Ivanti Neurons Zero Trust Access Gateway VM Name: Enter a suitable name for your Gateway instance. This name must be 1-9 characters long, using only lowercase letters or numbers.
 - SSH Public Key Source: Select "Use existing public key".
 - SSH Public Key: Copy and paste an RSA public key in a single-line format or the multiline PEM format.

SSH keys can be generated using sshkeygen on Linux or MacOS, or PuTTyGen on Windows. For further details about generating SSH key pairs, see:



- For Windows: <u>https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-</u> machines/linux/ssh-from-windows
- For Linux or MacOS: <u>https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-</u> machines/linux/mac-create-ssh-keys

To continue, click Next: Network Settings >.

- 7. On the Network Settings page, enter the following details:
 - Virtual Network: A virtual network is a logical isolation of the Azure cloud dedicated to your services. The value you enter here affects the IP address and subnet allocations for all network interfaces shown on this page. Azure pre-populates this field with a new virtual network name, although you can select your own predefined virtual network as necessary.

To create a new virtual network, perform the following steps:

1. Click the Create New link under the Virtual Network setting.

The Create virtual network dialog appears.

- 2. Enter a virtual network name.
- 3. Enter an address space in CIDR notation (for example, 192.0.2.0/24).
- 4. For each interface subnet, use the automatically-populated name and address values provided, or enter your own details. Each subnet must be contained by the address space entered in the previous setting.
- 5. To save your changes, click **OK**.

Your new virtual network settings are populated into the corresponding interface settings in the main *Network Settings* page.

- **Internal Subnet**: The subnet identifier for the Internal network, pre-populated by either the selected Virtual Network or your newly-entered virtual network settings.
- **External Subnet**: The subnet identifier for the External network, pre-populated by either the selected Virtual Network or your newly-entered virtual network settings.
- (For 3 NIC instances only) Management Subnet: The subnet for the Management network, pre-populated by either the selected Virtual Network or your newly-entered virtual network settings.

 Public IP for Ivanti Neurons Zero Trust Access Gateway external interface LB: The public IP address identifier at which clients can externally reach the Gateway instance, typically provided by Azure.

Before you can connect to the new Gateway instance from the *Controller*, you must update the *Controller* with the Public IP address or CNAME assigned to the external interface of the Gateway load balancer. This process is described later.

- DNS prefix for external interface LB: The unique DNS name for the public IP address specified for the external interface load balancer.
- **Public IP for NAT Gateway**: The public IP address identifier of a NAT Gateway for the virtual machine to communicate with the *Controller* and other public resources.
- **DNS prefix for NAT Gateway public IP**: The unique DNS name for the public IP address specified for the internal interface NAT Gateway.
- Deploy Ivanti Neurons Zero Trust Access Gateway with Load Balancer: To deploy this Gateway with a load balancer, select "Yes" from the drop-down list. The front-end IP address of the load balancer is then used as the public IP address for your Gateway.



1

If you select "No" to not deploy a load balancer, you must create and associate a public IP address to the external interface of your instance after deployment is complete.

In all cases, on completion of this process, you must update the *Controller* Gateway definition with the correct public IP address for your Azure Gateway instance.

To continue, click Next: Instance Configuration >.

- 8. On the Instance Configuration page, enter the following details:
 - Ivanti Neurons Zero Trust Access Gateway VM Size: This is the specification of the virtual machine. Choose from:
 - For 2nic instances, select "1 x Standard DS2 v2"
 - For 3nic instances, select "1 x Standard DS4 v2"
 - **Diagnostic storage account**: The storage account for the virtual machine diagnostics. The default value is a new account based on your VM name.
 - **Ivanti Neurons Zero Trust Access Gateway Version**: Specify the version applicable to the current *nZTA* version, or the version you require. *Ivanti* recommends you select the latest available version.
 - **Ivanti Neurons Zero Trust Access Gateway Config Data**: Paste in the raw text of your Gateway definition file. To obtain the Gateway definition file, see the process described earlier in this section.

To continue, click Next: Review + create >.

9. On the *Review* + *create* page, verify the proposed configuration is validated successfully, and then click **Create** to create your new Gateway instance.

After a short wait, your instance is created and deployed.

10. Access the virtual machine settings for your new Gateway instance, and click **Networking** from the *Settings* menu.

The *Networking* dialog appears, showing your attached network interfaces (internal, external, and (optionally) management).

11. Click the tab that corresponds to the *external* network interface.

The settings for the external network interface appear.

12. Locate the **NIC Public IP** field and make a note of the IP address shown there. This is the public IP address you use to reconfigure the *Controller* record for this Gateway.

If no public IP address is shown, determine if a load balancer was deployed together with your Gateway instance by selecting the **Load balancing** tab.

- If a load balancer was deployed, make a note of the **Frontend IP address** displayed in this tab and use this as the Gateway public IP address on the *Controller*.
- If a load balancer was not deployed, create a public IP address and associate it with the *external* interface. Then, use this IP address as the Gateway public IP address on the *Controller*.



To learn about configuring IP addresses in the Azure portal, see the Microsoft Azure documentation.

13. Return to the *nZTA* Tenant Admin Portal, and click Secure Access > Gateways > Gateways List.

The All Gateways page appears.

14. Select your new Azure Gateway from the list.

The Gateways Overview page appears.

- 15. Make sure the new Azure Gateway instance is shown in the list of configured Gateways and is connected (Status is *Online* and State is *Registered*).
- 16. Select Secure Access > Manage Gateways > Gateway > Configuration, and locate Gateway Network Settings. Enter the Public IP address you noted from the Azure virtual machine settings. Make sure you remove any previously-entered dummy values.
- 17. To save your changes, click **Save Changes**.



This completes the Azure Gateway registration process. Your enrolled client devices should now be able to connect to the Gateway.

You can view all Gateways that are deployed in your *nZTA* service (see <u>Viewing and Monitoring</u> <u>Gateways in the Controller</u>) or you can move to the next stage of *nZTA* configuration, which is <u>Working</u> with User Authentication.

Workflow: Creating a Gateway in KVM/OpenStack

Download the ZTA Gateway image and template files from the Software Download Portal https://portal.ivanti.com/customer/product-downloads.

For setting up a KVM Gateway in OpenStack, follow these processes that must be performed in sequence:

- Preparing to create a KVM gateway, see Preparing to Create a KVM Gateway.
- Creating the gateway record in the Controller, see "Adding a KVM Gateway" on the next page.
- Preparing Metadata for OpenStack, see Preparing Metadata for OpenStack.
- Creating the KVM Gateway virtual machine instance in OpenStack, see <u>Creating the KVM</u> <u>Gateway Virtual Machine Instance in OpenStack</u>.

After these steps have been completed successfully, the *Controller* and Gateway establish communication with each other.

Preparing to Create a KVM Gateway

Before you start, make sure you have the following information and files:

- An identifying name for the Gateway
- The public IP address for the Gateway. This is the IP address at which clients can externally reach the Gateway instance.
- The Gateway geographic location
- (Optional) The name of the *Gateway Group* to which you want to add this new Gateway record. To learn more about Gateway Groups, see the *Tenant Admin Guide*.

Additionally, to manually specify KVM Gateway network interface settings:

- The primary (and optional secondary) DNS server IP address, and search domain.
- The required internal/private subnetworks must already be defined on OpenStack. Please refer to the OpenStack documentation for details.
- The required external subnetworks must already be defined on OpenStack. Please refer to the OpenStack documentation for details.

- *(Optional)* Any required management subnetwork must already be defined on OpenStack. Please refer to the OpenStack documentation for details.
- Credentials for the OpenStack Console.



These credentials must include sufficient permissions to create a virtual machine from a template image.

After you have all required information, you can set up a *nZTA* KVM gateway, see "Adding a KVM Gateway" below.

Adding a KVM Gateway

To registering a Gateway on your Controller, use the Gateway Details dialog.

To begin, log into the *Controller* Tenant Admin Portal using the credentials provided in your welcome email. Two outcomes are possible:

- On unconfigured *nZTA* systems, the *Secure Access Setup* Onboarding wizard appears (see Working with the Onboarding Wizard). In this case, click **Add Gateway**.
- On configured *nZTA* systems, the *Network Overview* page appears. In this case:
 - 1. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Gateways**.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

2. To add a new Gateway, select **Create** from the top-right:

	Create 🗸
Create ZTA Gateway	
Create ZTA Gateway Group	Q

Add a new Gateway or Gateway Group

3. In the drop-down menu, click **Create ZTA Gateway**.

The **Gateway Details** dialog appears.

Manage Gateways ()	
Geteways List Geteway Selectors	Create 🗸
Gateway Details	[]→ う View Geteways Reset fields
Gateway Information	
NAME	
PUBLIC ADDRESS or CNAME ADD	
Cocurrer Select a Country Select a State/Region Corr Select a City	$\overline{}$
SMTEWAY PLATFORM V Use Manual Settings	
Internal Network / Private Subnet	
PRIMARY DNS SECONDARY DNS DNS SEARCH DOMAIN	
Gateway Network Settings	
Use Management Port Vise Dynamic Tunnel IP	
ASSIGNABLE CUSTOM IPV4 ADDRESS Example: x.x.x.v/netmask netmask would be in the range of 8-28	
Use Proxy Server for communication	
Add this Gateway to a group Add gateway to any of the predefined gateway group or create a new gateway group	
CREATE GATEWAY GROUP CREATE GATEWAY GROUP	
Configure MTU for the gateway	
мти 1450	

Gateway Details

Enter the following details:

- 1. Enter a **Name** for the Gateway.
- Enter one or more Public Address or CNAME (Public IP address or CNAME) for the Gateway. Select Add to add each entry to the list. To learn more about this setting, see <u>Configuring</u> Networks in your Gateway Datacenter.
- 3. Select the geographic location details for the Gateway.
- 4. For Gateway Platform, select "KVM".

- 5. Enter the Primary DNS IP address for the Gateway.
- 6. (Optional) Enter the Secondary DNS IP address for the Gateway.
- 7. Enter the DNS Search Domain for the Gateway.



Make sure the specified DNS service can resolve the IP address of your *Controller*. Issues here can cause registration of the Gateway with the *Controller* to fail.

8. (Optional) Select the **Use Management Port** check box to use management network ports for *nZTA* traffic rather than internal ports.

When the management port is enabled, Gateway will use management interface to communicate with *Controller* and NTP Server.



The Gateway will still use the internal port for DNS resolution and NTP server name resolution.

If the internal DNS cannot resolve the *Controller* domain, the internal interface will require internet access.

 (Optional) Select the Use Dynamic Tunnel IP check box to configure a pool of IP addresses that are dynamically mapped to client sessions with this Gateway, such that user traffic from the Gateway to an application can be identified as originating from a specific client. To learn more, see Using Dynamic IP Addressing to Profile Client Traffic.

The Custom IP Pool dialog appears:

Gateway Network Settings
☑ Use Management Port ☑ Use Dynamic Tunnel IP
☑ Use Proxy Server for communication (i)
Proxy Server Settings
HOST PORT 8080
USERNAME
Custom IP Pool
ASSIGNABLE CUSTOM IPV4 ADDRESS ADD Example: x.x.x/netmask netmask would be in the range of 8-28

Gateway Details - Custom IP Pool settings

Dynamic Tunnel IP addresses are not supported in Gateway Groups.

Use the **Assignable Custom IPv4 Address** field to enter an IP address and subnet (in the range 8-28) in CIDR notation, then click **Add**. Repeat this step for each address/subnet you want to use.

10. (Optional) Select the **Use proxy server for communication** check box to enable nZTA to *Controller* communication via proxy server. Proxy is supported on both internal and management interfaces of the Gateway. Once enabled, enter host name and port. Optionally, if your proxy server requires further authentication, enter a username and password to log in to the proxy server.



Admin can configure proxy for existing Gateway after upgrading it to 22.4R3 version or later.

11. (Optional) Select a Gateway **Group** to which the new Gateway is to be added. To learn more about Gateway Groups, see Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability.

- 12. **Configure MTU for the gateway**: Configurable MTU size allows admin to modify the default setting of nZTA gateways wherever it is needed. The value allowed is in the range of 576 to 1450 (IPv4).
- 13. To add a Gateway definition based on the settings you specified in this dialog, select **Create Configuration**.

After you complete the first part of this workflow, an unregistered Gateway record is created on the *Controller*. This Gateway record can be seen on the **Gateways > Gateways List** page.

You can now prepare your metadata, see Preparing Metadata for OpenStack.

Preparing Metadata for OpenStack

The preparation of metadata for use on OpenStack currently requires some manual steps:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways > Gateways
 List.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

3. locate and select your KVM Gateway.

The Gateways Overview page appears.

4. Click the **Download** icon to obtain a copy of the Gateway definition file.



The Download Icon

5. Specify a save location for your Gateway definition file.



The Gateway definition file is valid for 24 hours. If this period expires, you must replace the Gateway to generate a new Gateway definition file.

- 6. (Optional) If you have not yet downloaded the latest version of your Gateway VM file, click the **Download** icon and select **Download gateway VM image**. Save the archive file and unpack to a local workstation. Make sure the resulting file set is accessible from the OpenStack Management Portal.
- 7. View the gateway definition file in a text editor.

8. Start a separate text editor file, and paste the following template text block into it:

```
<pulse-config>
  <config-download-url>
      '<insert vaConfigURL value here>'
  </config-download-url>
  <appliance-id>
      <insert vaApplianceID value here>
  <secondary-dns>
      <insert vaSecondaryDNS here>
  </secondary-dns>
  <primary-dns>
      <insert vaPrimaryDNS here>
  </primary-dns>
  <dns-domain>
      <insert vaDnsSearchDomain here>
  </dns-domain>
  </appliance-id>
  <cert-common-name>
      <insert vaCommonName value here>
  </cert-common-name>
  <accept-license-agreement>
      V
  </accept-license-agreement>
  <controller-enrolled-hostname>
      <insert va|CTR name|EnrolledHostname value here>
  </controller-enrolled-hostname>
  <dns-search-domain>
      <insert vaDnsSearchDomain value here>
  </dns-search-domain>
  <controller-hostname>
      <insert va|CTR name|Hostname value here>
  </controller-hostname>
</pulse-config>
```

- 9. For each parameter block in the template text block file:
 - Locate the required metadata property for the line.

For example, in the following block:

```
<appliance-id>
<insert vaApplianceID value here>
</appliance-id>
```

You require the vaApplianceID value from the gateway definitions file.

• Locate the required value in the gateway definitions file.

For example, the vaApplianceID value is 99ce3aa3c9494cbabb51c085c9c3f6ad.

• Copy and paste this value from the gateway definitions file into the template text file.

For example, the <appliance-id> block will now read as follows:

```
<appliance-id>
99ce3aa3c9494cbabb51c085c9c3f6ad
</appliance-id>
```



You do not need to change the <accept-license-agreement> block, and can retain its *y* setting.

10. After you have added all required text to the template text file, save that file for use in the next section.

You can now create a KVM gateway VM in Openstack, see <u>Creating the KVM Gateway Virtual Machine</u> Instance in OpenStack.

Creating the KVM Gateway Virtual Machine Instance in OpenStack

To create a KVM VM instance in OpenStack:

1. Access the *OpenStack Management Portal*, either from a client or a web browser, and log in using your OpenStack credentials.

In the OpenStack console, the **Overview** page appears.

2. In the left menu, click **Compute > Images**.

The **Images** page appears. This shows a list of images.

3. Above the list of images, click **Create Image**.

The **Create Image** wizard appears. In this wizard, you upload a KVM gateway image for use.

- 4. Under Image Details:
 - Enter an **Image Name**. Typically, this incorporates a version number. For example, *ZTA_GWY_100*.
 - Enter an Image Description. For example: ZTA KVM Image.
 - Under **Image Source**, click **Browse** and select the unpacked KVM disc image file. Then, click **Format** and select *QCOW2 QEMU Emulator*.
 - Under Image Requirements, set Minimum Disk (GB) to 40 and Minimum RAM (KB) to 2048.
 - Set **Visibility Setting** as required. *Public* will enable the image to be used in other projects. *Private* will not.
 - Set Image Sharing as required.
 - Use the default settings for all other properties.
- 5. Click Next.

The **Metadata** page of the wizard appears. No action is required on this page, all properties can use their default settings.

6. Click Create Image.

The wizard closes, and the new KVM gateway image is added to the **Images** page.

7. Wait until the image has been uploaded and processed and shows as Active.



The upload image process typically takes 15-20 minutes.

8. After the image has uploaded and is *Active*, click its **Launch** button.

The first page of the **Launch Instance** wizard appears. In this wizard, you create a KVM gateway instance.

- 9. Under Details:
 - Enter an Instance Name. This will be the displayed name of the gateway in nZTA.
 - Enter a **Description** for the KVM gateway. For example *ZTA KVM Gateway*.
 - Use the default settings for all other properties.
- 10. Click Next.

The **Source** page of the wizard appears. This page lists the selected disk image and selected/default settings for the instance. No action is required on this page, all properties can use their displayed settings.

11. Click Next.

The **Flavor** page of the wizard appears. This page lists the available types of gateway you can create.

- 12. Locate the ISA4000-V entry and click its "up arrow" button to select it.
- 13. Click Next.

The **Networks** page of the wizard appears. This page lists the available networks (and associated subnetworks) for the gateway. It enables you to select the required subnetworks for your gateway.

14. In the available list, locate the required subnetworks.

For example, you may require a subnetwork for internal ports and a subnetwork for external ports, but not a subnetwork for management interfaces.



If the required subnetworks do not yet exist, you must define them. Please refer to the OpenStack documentation for details of this process.

15. Click the "up arrow" button for each subnetwork to select it.



For each selected subnetwork, a fixed IP address is added automatically to the gateway. These appear later in this process, so that they can be assigned to floating IP addresses.

16. Click Next.

The **Network Ports** page of the wizard appears. No action is required on this page, all properties can use their displayed settings.

17. Click Next.

The **Security Groups** page of the wizard appears. No action is required on this page, all properties can use their displayed settings.



If there is no default security group defined, you must define one. Please refer to the OpenStack documentation for details of this process.

18. Click Next.

The **Key Pair** page of the wizard appears. No action is required on this page, all properties can use their displayed settings.

19. Click Next.

The **Configuration** page of the wizard appears. This page enables you to configure the gateway instance using metadata you prepared earlier, see <u>Preparing Metadata for OpenStack</u>.

- 20. Open your template text file and copy the entire text block that starts with <pulse-config> and ends with </pulse-config>.
- 21. Paste the text block into the **Customization Script** block.



You cannot directly paste metadata for your gateway from *nZTA*. You must prepare a suitable text block from the metadata, see <u>Preparing Metadata for OpenStack</u>.

- 22. Enable the **Configuration Drive** check box.
- 23. Click Launch Instance.

The wizard closes, and the new KVM gateway instance is added.

24. Access the Instances page.

The new KVM gateway instance is listed on this page.

25. Wait until the **Power State** of the gateway instance is *Running*.



This process may take several minutes.

26. After the instance state changes to *Running*, make a note of the subnetworks and their automatically-assigned fixed IP addresses in the **IP Address** column for the instance. For example:

	Instance Name	Image Name	IP Address	Flavor
0	kvmgw3	ZTA_GW _ ⁶⁸	ext-port-2 5.5.10.64 int-port-2 4.4.10.83	

Unassociated KVM Ports

In this example, floating IP addresses are listed after the fixed IP addresses, so all are unassociated:

- The fixed IP address on the *int-port-2* subnetwork is 4.4.10.83.
- The fixed IP address on the *ext-port-2* subnetwork is 5.5.10.64.
- 27. Access the **Network > Floating IPs** page.

The **Floating** IPs page shows the floating IP addresses associated with your account. Both associated and unassociated floating IP addresses are listed.



Associated floating IPs have a Mapped Fixed IP Address listed.

- 28. Identify an unassociated floating IP address that you want to associate with a fixed IP address.
- 29. Click the Associate button for the fixed IP address.

The Manage Floating IP Associations dialog appears.

- 30. Select a fixed **port to be associated** for the selected floating IP address.
- 31. Click Associate to conform the association.
- 32. Repeat the association process until each of the fixed IP addresses for your gateway instance is associated with a floating IP address.
- 33. Wait until the status of these floating IP addresses all show as Active.
- 34. Return to the **Compute > Instances** page.

This page now shows a fixed IP address associated with floating IP address for each port. For example:

	Instance Name	Image Name	Address	Flavor
0	kvmgw3	ZTA_GW _68	ext-port-2 5.5.10.64, 10.96.145.196 int-port-2 4.4.10.83, 10.96.145.156	

Associated KVM Ports

35. Click the **Console** tab.

A console monitor view shows the ongoing boot-up process for the instance.

36. Wait until the instance shows a screen similar to the following:



KVM Instance Console Monitor

37. Return to the Gateways List page on the Controller.

Locate the new Gateway record in the list and confirm that its status has updated to *Connected*.
 For example:

ALL (GATE	VAYS	i			Search	~	Add 🗸
Gate	eways L	ist						
			GATEWAYS	CONNECTION STATUS	VERSION	STATUS		
>	•	<u>ēē</u>	GCP					
~		Å	Standalone NZTA Gateways					
	•	\bigcirc	aws265	Disconnected	21.3R3-265			
	•	\bigcirc	awsnew171	S ³ Connected	21.6R1-171			
	•	*	esxgw111	♂ ³ Connected	21.3R3-265			
	•	\bigcirc	gcp195	♂ ³ Connected	21.6R1-169			
		\bigcirc	gcpnew	♂ ³ Not registered				
	•	•=	kvmgw3	ి Connected	21.6R1-171			
		*	skaws	ጾ³ Not registered				
	•	*	vsphere01	S ³ Connected	21.6R1-169			

KVM Gateway Connected

39. (Optional) After you have registered a Gateway, you can configure it (or the Gateway Group to which it belongs) as the default Gateway if required. A default Gateway handles all requests from applications that are not referenced by any secure access policy. See <u>Configuring a Default</u> Gateway for Application Discovery.

Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Google Cloud Platform

Download the ZTA Gateway image and template files from the Software Download Portal https://portal.ivanti.com/customer/product-downloads.

For setting up a Gateway on the Google Cloud Platform (GCP), follow these processes that must be performed in sequence:

- Preparing to create a GCP gateway, see Preparing to Create a GCP Gateway.
- Creating the gateway record in the Controller, see "Adding a GCP Gateway" on page 294.
- Downloading Metadata for Google Cloud Platform, see <u>Downloading Metadata for Google</u> <u>Cloud Platform</u>.
- Uploading the GCP Image onto the Google Cloud Platform, see <u>Uploading the GCP Virtual</u> Machine Image onto the Google Cloud Platform.

- Creating a VM Instance of the GCP image. Either:
 - Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded GCP Image Manually, see <u>Creating a VM Instance</u> of the Uploaded GCP Image Manually.
 - Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded GCP Image Using a Script/Template, see <u>Creating</u> a VM Instance of the Uploaded GCP Image Using a Script/Template.
- Completing the Configuration of the Controller, see Completing the Configuration of the Controller.

After these steps have been completed successfully, the *Controller* and Gateway establish communication with each other.

Preparing to Create a GCP Gateway

Before you start, make sure you have the following information and files:

- An identifying name for the Gateway.
- The public IP address for the Gateway. This is the IP address at which clients can externally reach the Gateway instance, such as an LB/NAT or Datacenter network forward rules.



If you want Google Cloud platform to allocated a public IP address automatically, you can use a dummy IP address (for example, *1.1.1.1*) when you create the Gateway on *nZTA*. You must then update the *Controller* with the allocated public IP address afterwards.

- The Gateway geographic location.
- (Optional) The name of the *Gateway Group* to which you want to add this new Gateway record. To learn more about Gateway Groups, see "Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability" on page 237



Gateway Group may have a defined public IP address, which you can specify during the creation of the Gateway.

• Credentials for the Google Cloud Platform Console.



These credentials must include sufficient permissions to create a virtual machine from a template image.

Additionally, to manually specify GCP Gateway network interface settings:

- The primary (and optional secondary) DNS server IP address, and search domain.
- The required internal/private subnetworks must already be defined on Google Cloud Platform, including firewall settings. All required firewall settings for this interface are shown below.

	Google Cloud	l Platform	pcs-project	t -	Q Search produ	ucts and resources			
11	← Netwo	ork interfac	e details						
8	Firewall an	d routes de	etails TA FIREWA	ALL RULES	ROUTES				
55	= Filter	Filter table							
24	Name	Туре	Targets	Filters	Protocols/ports	Action	Priority	Network 🛧	Logs
∽ X	fw- backend- svr	Ingress	Apply to all	IP ranges	tcp:80,443,22,5001 icmp	Allow	1000	vpc- network- private- darumuga	Off
⊕_ P	fw-pcs- int-port	Ingress	Apply to all	IP ranges	tcp:80,443,830,11000- 11099,4808- 4809,4900-4910 udp:4803-4804,4500 icmp	Allow	1000	vpc- network- private- darumuga	Off
	ingress- pzt-int- port	Ingress	ingress-pzt-i	IP ranges	tcp:6667	Allow	1000	vpc- network- private- darumuga	Off

Internal/Private Firewall Rules

Refer to the Google Cloud Platform documentation for details.

• The required external/public subnetworks must already be defined on Google Cloud Platform, including firewall settings. All required firewall settings for this interface are shown below.

≡	Google Cloud	l Platform	pcs-project	•	Q Search products a	ind resources					
11	← Netwo	ork interfac	e details								
8	Firewall and routes details FIREWALL POLICIES BETA FIREWALL RULES ROUTES Filter Filter table										
88											
**	Name	Туре	Targets	Filters	Protocols/ports	Action	Priority	Network 个	Logs		
~ ×	egress- pcs-ext- port	Ingress	egress-pzt-e	IP ranges: 12	all	Deny	1000	vpc- network- public- darumuga	Off		
<u>مت</u>	egress- pzt-ext- port	Ingress	egress-pzt-e	IP ranges: 12	all	Deny	1000	vpc- network- public- darumuga	Off		
481	a-firewall- rule	Ingress	Apply to all	IP ranges: 0.(tcp:80,7001,443,6667,22	Allow	1000	vpc- network- public- darumuga	Off		
	default1- allow1- ssh	Ingress	Apply to all	IP ranges: 0.(tcp:6666	Allow	1000	vpc- network- public- darumuga	Off		
	fw-pcs- ext-port	Ingress	Apply to all	IP ranges: 0.(tcp:80,443 udp:4500 icmp	Allow	1000	vpc- network- public- darumuga	Off		
	ingress- pzt-ext- port	Ingress	ingress-pzt-	IP ranges: 0.(tcp:443	Allow	1000	vpc- network- public- darumuga	Off		

External/Public Firewall Rules

Refer to the Google Cloud Platform documentation for details.

 (Optional) Any required management subnetwork must already be defined on Google Cloud Platform, including firewall settings. All required firewall settings for this interface are shown below.

=	Google Cloud	Platform	🐉 pcs-project	•	Q Search pr				
11	 Netwo 	ork interfac	e details						
8	Firewall and	d routes de	etails						
C [®]	FIREWALL POLICIES BETA FIREWALL RULES			ROUTES					
88	= Filter Filter table								
* *	Name	Туре	Targets	Filters	Protocols/ports	Action	Priority	Network 个	Logs
\$	fw-pcs- mgmt-port	Ingress	Apply to all	IP ranges	tcp:80,443,830,22 icmp	Allow	1000	vpc-network- mgmt- darumuga	Off
⊗	ingress- pzt-mgmt- port	Ingress	ingress-pzt-r	IP ranges	tcp:6667	Allow	1000	vpc-network- mgmt- darumuga	Off

Management Firewall Rules

Refer to the Google Cloud Platform documentation for details.

After you have all required information, you can set up a *nZTA* GCP gateway, see "Adding a GCP Gateway" below.

Adding a GCP Gateway

To registering a Gateway on your Controller, use the Gateway Details dialog.

To begin, log into the *Controller* Tenant Admin Portal using the credentials provided in your welcome email. Two outcomes are possible:

- On unconfigured *nZTA* systems, the *Secure Access Setup* Onboarding wizard appears (see Working with the Onboarding Wizard). In this case, click **Add Gateway**.
- On configured *nZTA* systems, the *Network Overview* page appears. In this case:
 - From the nZTA menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*

2. To add a new Gateway, select Create from the top-right:

Add a new Gateway or Gateway Group

	Create 🗸
Create ZTA Gateway	
Create ZTA Gateway Group	Q

3. In the drop-down menu, click **Create ZTA Gateway**.

The Gateway Details dialog appears.

Manage Gateways 🚯	
Gateways List Gateway Selectors	Create 🗸
Gateway Details	শীু →
Gateway Information	
NAME	
PUBLIC ADDRESS or CNAME ADD	
Couvirier State/Region Conv Select a Country Select a State/Region Select a City	
Google Cloud Platform	
Internal Network / Private Subnet	
PRIMARY DNS SECONDARY DNS DNS SEARCH DOMAIN	
Gateway Network Settings	
S Use Management Port	
Use Proxy Server for communication	
Add this Gateway to a group	
Add gateway to any of the predefined gateway group or create a new gateway group	
Select a gateway group V CREATE GATEWAY GROUP	
Configure MTU for the gateway	
мти 1.460	
CANCEL	Create Configuration

Gateway Details

Enter the following details:

- 1. Enter a **Name** for the Gateway.
- Enter one or more **Public Address or CNAME** (Public IP address or CNAME) for the Gateway. Select **Add** to add each entry to the list. To learn more about this setting, see <u>Configuring</u> Networks in your Gateway Datacenter.



If you want Google Cloud Platform to allocate a public IP address automatically, you can use a dummy IP address (for example, 1.1.1.1) at this point. You must then update the *Controller* with the allocated public IP address after the GCP VM instance is created, see <u>Completing the Configuration of the Controller</u>.

- 3. Select the geographic location details for the Gateway.
- 4. For Gateway Platform, select "Google Cloud Platform".
- 5. Enter the Primary DNS IP address for the Gateway.
- 6. (Optional) Enter the Secondary DNS IP address for the Gateway.
- 7. Enter the DNS Search Domain for the Gateway.
- 8. (Optional) Select the **Use Management Port** check box to use management network ports for *nZTA* traffic rather than internal ports.

When the management port is enabled, Gateway will use management interface to communicate with *Controller* and NTP Server.



The Gateway will still use the internal port for DNS resolution and NTP server name resolution.

If the internal DNS cannot resolve the *Controller* domain, the internal interface will require internet access.

9. (Optional) Select the Use proxy server for communication check box to enable nZTA to Controller communication via proxy server. Proxy is supported on both internal and management interfaces of the Gateway. Once enabled, enter host name and port. Optionally, if your proxy server requires further authentication, enter a username and password to log in to the proxy server.



Admin can configure proxy for existing Gateway after upgrading it to 22.4R3 version or later.

10. (Optional) Select a **Gateway Group** to which the new Gateway is to be added. To learn more about Gateway Groups, see <u>Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability</u>.



A Gateway Group may have a defined public IP address, which you can specify as the **Public Address**.

11. **Configure MTU for the gateway**: Configurable MTU size allows admin to modify the default setting of nZTA gateways wherever it is needed. The value allowed is in the range of 576 to 1460 (IPv4).

To add a Gateway definition based on the settings you specified in this dialog, select **Create Configuration**.

You can now download your metadata, see Downloading Metadata for Google Cloud Platform.

In case of registration failure due to Gateway configuration mistakes in firewall rules, DNS, etc., you can re-register the gateway. It does not require re-deploying of Gateway. For details see "Re-registering a GCP Gateway" below.

Re-registering a GCP Gateway

Re-registration of Gateway includes the following capabilities:

- Gateway triggers re-registration on every launch of the gateway if the registration with controller fails or any update is made to the configuration parameters.
- The "View registration error report" option provides the reason for failure and solution to rectify it.

```
Current version: 22.4R1 (build 277)
Reset version: 22.4R1 (build 277)
Licensing Hardware ID: VASPH55UIOB3TQVES
Please choose from among the following options:
1. Network Settings and Tools
2. Display log/status
3. System Operations
4. System Maintenance
5. Register
6. View registration error report
Choice: _
```

- On registration failures, admin is provided with the "Register" option to trigger the registration
 manually along with the existing debugging options such as networking tools, reboot, etc. This
 option can be used after rectifying any external issues such as network reach issue or Firewall
 rules following controller traffic from Gateway.
- To rectify registration failure due to the config error, first update the config settings in the Controller and download the config file. Then edit the Gateway instance and update the Custom metadata with the downloaded config file, and then reboot Gateway.

Custom metadata

Key pulse-config

<pulse-config><primary-dns>8.8.8.8.8</primary-dns><secondary-dns>8.8.4.4</secondary-dns><dns-domain>ivanti.com</dns-</pre>

Sample screen: Update Config Value



An option is provided to regenerate and download the gateway init config from the controller admin interface.

Downloading Metadata for Google Cloud Platform

Value

The preparation of metadata for use on Google Cloud Platform currently requires some manual steps:

- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways > Gateways
 List.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

3. Locate and select your GCP Gateway.

The Gateways Overview page appears.

4. Click the **Download** icon, then choose **Download gateway init config** to obtain a copy of the Gateway definition file.



The Download Icon

5. Specify a save location for your Gateway definition file.



The Gateway definition file is valid for 24 hours. If this period expires, you must replace the Gateway to generate a new Gateway definition file.

 (Optional) If you have not yet downloaded the latest version of your Gateway VM image and optional YAML templates, click the **Download** icon and select **Download gateway VM image**. Save the archive file and unpack to a local workstation. Make sure the resulting file set is accessible from the Google Cloud Platform Management Portal.

You can now create a GCP gateway VM in Google Cloud Platform, see <u>Uploading the GCP Virtual</u> Machine Image onto the Google Cloud Platform.

Uploading the GCP Virtual Machine Image onto the Google Cloud Platform

To upload a GCP Gateway virtual machine image into Google Cloud Platform:

- 1. Access the *Google Cloud Platform Management Portal*, either from a client or a web browser, and log in using your Google Cloud Platform credentials.
- 2. In the Google Cloud Platform console, select your required project from the pull-down list on the title bar. For example:



3. Click the Navigation menu, and then select Cloud Storage > Browser.

A list of GCP storage buckets appears.

4. Select the bucket into which you wish to place the GCP image.

A page listing the current contents of the bucket appears.

- 5. (Optional) Navigate to the required folder within the bucket.
- 6. Click Upload Files. For example:

	Google Cloud Platform 💲 pcs-project 👻			× 5	0 🚺 i 🚇					
	← Bucket details			G	REFRESH 🗢 LEARN					
 ■ ■ 	bucket-california	RETENTION LIFECYCLE								
۵										
	Filter by name prefix only Filter bitter objects									
	Name Size Type IV PSA-V-GC 10.4 GB application/x-gzip	Dec 31, 2020, Standard	Dec 31, 20 C	Google-managed key	- ± :					

GCP Upload Files

An upload dialog appears.

 Select the ZTA Gateway GCP virtual machine image .tar file from your local workstation (see <u>Preparing to Create a GCP Gateway</u>.), and click **Open**.



If you want to use the provided YAML templates to automate the creation of your VM instance (see <u>Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded GCP Image Using a</u> <u>Script/Template.</u>), select these in addition to the image archive.

The image archive and any selected template files are added to the bucket.

- 8. Wait until the upload completes. This may take several minutes.
- 9. Start a command line session from the title bar. For example:



GCP Upload Files

A command line session starts.

- 10. Navigate to the project folder.
- 11. Create an image from the *nZTA Gateway* image archive using the following command:

gcloud compute images create <instance_name> --source-uri=gs://<bucket_ name>/<optional_path>/<image_name>.tar --guest-os-features MULTI_IP_SUBNET

You can now create a VM instance of the uploaded GCP image. To do this, either:

- Perform the task manually, see Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded GCP Image Manually.
- Perform the task with a script/template, see <u>Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded GCP Image</u> Using a Script/Template.

Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded GCP Image Manually

This section describes how to manually create a virtual machine instance of the *nZTA Gateway* image inside Google Cloud Platform. You can also perform this process automatically using a script/template, see Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded GCP Image Using a Script/Template.

1. Click the Navigation menu, and then select Compute Engine > Images.

The **Images** page appears. For example:

≡	Google Cloud Pla	atform 💲 pcs-project 👻	Q Search produc
۲	Images	[+] CREATE IMAGE CREFRESH	DELETE
•	IMAGES	IMAGE IMPORT HISTORY IMAGE EXP	ORT HISTORY
A	Filter table		
	Status	Name	Location
8		bld451	US

GCP Images Page

2. Locate the new image in the list of images.

3. At the end of the image entry, click the action menu and select **Create Instance**.

The **Create Instance** page appears. For example:

	Google Cloud Platform 🐤 pcs	-project 🔻	٩	Search products	and resources			
~	Create an instance							
To cr	eate a VM instance, select one of the options:		Name Name is permanent					
A	New VM instance Create a single VM instance from scratch	>	instance-4 Labels @ (Optional)	+ Add Ia	abel			
ŧ	New VM instance from template Create a single VM instance from an existing template		Region Region is permanent us-central1 (lowa)	Z Z	one one one is permanent us-central1-a		•	
	New VM instance from machine image		Machine configuration Machine family General-purpose	Compute-optimised	Memory-optimised	GPU		
	Create a single VM instance from an existing machine image		Machine types for co	mmon workloads, optim	ised for cost and flexibil	ity		
*	Marketplace Deploy a ready-to-go solution onto	E	E2 CPU platform selection based on availability Machine type					
	a vivi ilistance		e2-medium (2 vCF	PU, 4 GB memory)		-	-	

GCP Create Instance

- 4. On the **Create Instance** page:
 - Enter a **Name** for the new instance.
 - Select a **Region** and **Zone**.
 - Under Machine configuration:
 - For **Series**, select *N1*.
 - For Machine Type, select a minimum of N1-Standard-n2 for 2-NIC, minimum of N1-Standard-n4 for 3-NIC.
 - For Boot Disk, confirm that the correct image is already selected.
 - For **Firewall**, select the required HTTP/HTTPS options.
 - Expand the Management, security, disks, networking, sole tenancy options.
 - Select the Management tab.
 - Under Metadata:
 - For **Key**, enter *pulse-config*.
 - For Value, paste the text of the metadata file you downloaded earlier.
 - Select the Networking tab.
 - Under Network interfaces, click the Edit icon to change the default network interface selection.

The Network interface options appear.

- Under Network interface, specify a private (internal) network interface:
 - For Network, select the required private VPC.
 - For **Subnetwork**, select the required subnetwork.
 - Click **Done** to confirm the settings for the private network interface.
- Under Network interfaces, click Add network interface.

The Network interface options appear.

- Under Network interface, specify a public (external) network interface:
 - For **Network**, select the required public VPC.
 - For Subnetwork, select the required subnetwork.
 - Click **Done** to confirm the settings for the public network interface.
- (Optional) Click Add network interface and specify a management network interface.
- Click **Create** to confirm the settings and instantiate a VM instance of the image.

The **VM Instances** page appears. This page shows the new VM instance of the image. For example:

≡	Google Cloud Platform	🐤 pcs-project 👻					
۲	VM instances	CREATE INSTANCE	A IMPORT VM	C REFRESH	► START/RESUME	■ • ■ • ঊ	MANAGE ACCESS
A	= Filter VM instances						Columns •
	Name A	Zone	Recommendation	In use by	Internal IP	External IP	Connect
	🗌 🔮 vm-skupgrade153	asia-south1-b			10.200. (nic0)	None	SSH 👻 🚦
8	0	us-central1-a			10.128. (nic0)	None	SSH 👻
	0	us-west2-a			10.100. (nic0)	None	SSH -

GCP Create Instance

- 5. On the **VM Instances** page, wait until the creation of the VM instance completes. This may take several minutes.
- 6. After the VM instance is created, click on it in the list of VM instances.

The VM instance details page appears for the instance.

- 7. Confirm the details for the VM instance, including the number of network interfaces.
- 8. Make a note of the public IP address of the EXT interface (typically, this is *nic1*. This is required inside *nZTA*.

- 9. Under **Network interfaces**, confirm that the firewall settings from your VPCs are present for your specified network interfaces:
 - Click *nic0*. A summary page for this network interface appears.

Under **Firewall and route details**, click the **Firewall Rules** tab and confirm that the following firewall rules are defined.

≡	Google Cloud	l Platform	pcs-project	t -	Q Search produ	ucts and resou	irces		
11	Netwo	ork interfac	e details						
8	Firewall an	d routes d	etails						
C	FIREWALL	FIREWALL POLICIES BETA FIREWALL RULES							
88	= Filter Filter table								
N¢	Name	Туре	Targets	Filters	Protocols/ports	Action	Priority	Network 个	Logs
∿ X	fw- backend- svr	Ingress	Apply to all	IP ranges	tcp:80,443,22,5001 icmp	Allow	1000	vpc- network- private- darumuga	Off
چ <u>ې</u> ت	fw-pcs- int-port	Ingress	Apply to all	IP ranges	tcp:80,443,830,11000- 11099,4808- 4809,4900-4910 udp:4803-4804,4500 icmp	Allow	1000	vpc- network- private- darumuga	Off
	ingress- pzt-int- port	Ingress	ingress-pzt-i	IP ranges	tcp:6667	Allow	1000	vpc- network- private- darumuga	Off

NIC0 Firewall Rules

• Click *nic1*. A summary page for this network interface appears.

Under **Firewall and route details**, click the **Firewall Rules** tab and confirm that the following firewall rules are defined.

	Google Cloud	l Platform	pcs-project	-	Q Search products a	and resources				
11	← Netwo	ork interfac	e details							
8	Firewall an	d routes de	etails TA FIREWA	ILL RULES	ROUTES					
	= Filter Filter table									
N	Name	Туре	Targets	Filters	Protocols/ports	Action	Priority	Network 个	Logs	
~ X	egress- pcs-ext- port	Ingress	egress-pzt-e	IP ranges: 12	all	Deny	1000	vpc- network- public- darumuga	Off	
÷	egress- pzt-ext- port	Ingress	egress-pzt-e	IP ranges: 12	all	Deny	1000	vpc- network- public- darumuga	Off	
	a-firewall- rule	Ingress	Apply to all	IP ranges: 0.(tcp:80,7001,443,6667,22	Allow	1000	vpc- network- public- darumuga	Off	
	default1- allow1- ssh	Ingress	Apply to all	IP ranges: 0.(tcp:6666	Allow	1000	vpc- network- public- darumuga	Off	
	fw-pcs- ext-port	Ingress	Apply to all	IP ranges: 0.(tcp:80,443 udp:4500 icmp	Allow	1000	vpc- network- public- darumuga	Off	
	ingress- pzt-ext- port	Ingress	ingress-pzt-	IP ranges: 0.(tcp:443	Allow	1000	vpc- network- public- darumuga	Off	

NIC1 Firewall Rules

• (Optional) Click nic2. A summary page for this optional network interface appears.

Under **Firewall and route details**, click the **Firewall Rules** tab and confirm that the following firewall rules are defined.

	Google Cloud	Platform	pcs-project	•	Q Search pr	oducts and res			
11	← Netwo	rk interfac	e details						
811 C°	Firewall and		etails TA FIREWA	LL RULES	ROUTES				
	च Filter F	ilter table							
N	Name	Туре	Targets	Filters	Protocols/ports	Action	Priority	Network 个	Logs
\$	fw-pcs- mgmt-port	Ingress	Apply to all	IP ranges	tcp:80,443,830,22 icmp	Allow	1000	vpc-network- mgmt- darumuga	Off
×	ingress- pzt-mgmt- port	Ingress	ingress-pzt-r	IP ranges	tcp:6667	Allow	1000	vpc-network- mgmt- darumuga	Off

NIC2 Firewall Rules

10. The VM instance details* page, click Connect to serial console

A console monitor view (in a separate browser tab) shows the ongoing boot-up process for the instance.

11. Wait until the instance boot up is complete, and shows a screen similar to the following:

Welcome to the Pulse Zero Trust Access Serial Console!
Current version: 21.2R1 (build 153) Rollback version: 21.2R1 (build 107) Reset version: 21.2R1 (build 107)
Licensing Hardware ID: VASPH80EQ02HBPTES
Please choose from among the following options: 1. Network Settings and Tools 2. Create admin username and password 3. Display log/status 4. System Operations 5. Toggle password protection for the console (Off) 6. Create a Super Admin session
 Create a Super Romin Session. 7. System Maintenance 8. Reset allowed encryption strength for SSL
Choice:



You can then complete this process by updating the Gateway details on the *Controller*, see <u>Completing</u> the Configuration of the Controller.

Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded GCP Image Using a Script/Template

This section describes how to automatically create a virtual machine instance of the *nZTA Gateway* image inside Google Cloud Platform using a script/template. You can also perform this process manually, see <u>Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded GCP Image Manually</u>.

Ivanti provides YAML-based templates to create an instance of the *nZTA Gateway* image in the following configurations:

- Two network interfaces in an *existing* VPC.
- Three network interfaces in an existing VPC.

Download:

https://pulsezta.blob.core.windows.net/gateway/templates/GCP/25-4-579/ivanti-zta-2-nicsexisting-vpc.zip

https://pulsezta.blob.core.windows.net/gateway/templates/GCP/25-4-579/ivanti-zta-3-nicsexisting-vpc.zip

- Two network interfaces in a new VPC.
- Three network interfaces in a new VPC.

Download:

https://pulsezta.blob.core.windows.net/gateway/templates/GCP/25-4-579/ivanti-zta-2-nicsnew-vpc.zip

https://pulsezta.blob.core.windows.net/gateway/templates/GCP/25-4-579/ivanti-zta-3-nicsnew-vpc.zip



You can obtain these templates through the links given here, or as part of the archive file set provided through the *Download* link on the **Gateways Overview** page in the *nZTA* Tenant Admin Portal after you have defined a Gateway record.

To use a template:

- 1. Download the required template archive file to your local workstation.
- Unpack the downloaded archive file to a location that is accessible from Google Cloud Platform. Each archive contains three files. For example, for the two-interface (existing VPC) version of the archive:

```
pulsesecure-zta-2nics-existing-vpc.jinja
pulsesecure-zta-2nics-existing-vpc.jinja.scheme
pulsesecure-zta-2nics-existing-vpc.yaml
```

 Edit the YAML file properties section to reflect your project and instance requirements, including the user_data property.

An example of an *existing VPC* YAML file is provided here:

```
imports:
  - path: pulsesecure-zta-2-nics-existing-vpc.jinja
resources:
  - name: my-vm
   properties:
     project: zta-gw-263035
      email: admin@example.com
      region: asia-south1
      zone: asia-south1-b
      image: ztagcp123
      machine type: n1-standard-2
     int network:
      ext network:
     int subnetwork:
     ext subnetwork:
     user data:
    type: pulsesecure-zta-2-nics-existing-vpc.jinja
```

An example of a new VPC YAML file is provided here:

```
imports:
- path: pulsesecure-zta-2-nics-new-vpc.jinja
resources:
- name: my-vm
properties:
    deploy_with_lb: yes
    project: zta-gw-263035
    email: admin@example.com
    region: asia-south1
    zone: asia-south1-b
    image: ztagcp123
    machine_type: n1-standard-2
    user data: <pulse-config><primary-dns>8.8.8.8<\primary-dns> ...
```

```
int_cidr: 192.0.2.0/24
ext_cidr: 192.0.2.0/24
type: pulsesecure-zta-2-nics-new-vpc.jinja
```



Where you are specifying a new VPC for your virtual machine instance, make sure you use properties (for example, networking settings) that do not conflict with an existing VPC.

The following table lists all possible template properties and their meaning:

Property	Description	ExampleValue
project	Project Identifier	myproject
email	Registered service account email address	email@example.com
region	Thename of the region in which you want to deploy your VM instance	asia-east1
zone	The name of the zone in which you want to deploy your VM instance	asia-east1-b
image	Virtual machine image name	gwimage
machine_type	GCP machine type	For 2-nic: N1-Standard-n2 minimum For 3-nic: N1-Standard-n4 minimum
int_network	VPC network name for internal network	nw1-private
ext_network	VPC network name for external network	nw1-public
mgmt_network	VPC network name for management network	nw1-mgmt
int_subnetwork	Subnet name for internal VPC	int-nw1

Property	Description	ExampleValue
ext_subnetwork	Subnet name for external VPC	ext-nw1
mgmt_subnetwork	Subnet name for management VPC	mgmt-nw1
user_data	The Gateway config file downloaded from the <i>nZTA</i> controller	<pulse-config> config></pulse-config>
int_cidr	IP address range for the internal subnet	192.0.2.0/24
ext_cidr	IP address range for the external subnet	198.51.100.0/24
mgmt_cidr	IP address range for the management subnet	203.0.113.0/24
health_check	Health check rule name with port 443	hc1
ingress_pzt_int_port	Firewall rule for inbound internal network	ing-int
ingress_pzt_ext_port	Firewall rule for inbound external network	ing-ext
egress_pzt_ext_port	Firewall rule for outbound external network	egress
ingress_pzt_mgmt_ port	Firewall rule for inbound management network	ing-mgmt
vm_name	Virtual machine instance Name	vm77
router_int	Cloud router name for the internal interface	rtr1
nat_int	NAT Gateway name for the internal interface	nat1
router_mgmt	Cloud router name for the management interface	rtr-mgmt1

Property	operty Description	
nat_mgmt	NAT Gateway name for the management interface	nat-mgmt
ip_address	Load balancer front-end IP address	3nic
instance_group Instance group name		group1
load_balancer Load balancer name		lb
max_connections	The number of maximum connections	2
target_proxy	Targeted proxy name	proxy1
front_end Load balancer front-end profile name		front1

- 4. Save the YAML file.
- 5. On the Google Cloud Platform, start a command line session from the title bar. For example:



GCP Upload Files

A command line session starts.

6. Select the required project:

gcloud config set project <project-name>

- 7. Within the project folder, create a *deploymentmanager* folder.
- 8. Copy the three script files to this folder.

9. Create a VM instance from the nZTA Gateway image archive file using the following command:

```
gcloud deployment-manager deployments create <vm-name> --config
<yaml file>
```

For example:

```
gcloud deployment-manager deployments create vm-gcp-123 --config pulsesecure-zta-3-nics-existing-vpc.yaml
```

- 10. Wait until the command completes.
- 11. On the VM Instances page, click on the new VM in the list of VM instances.

The VM instance details page appears for the instance.

- 12. Confirm the details for the VM instance, including the number of network interfaces.
- 13. Make a note of the public IP address of the INT interface (typically, this is *nic0*. This is required inside *nZTA*.

You can now complete this process by updating the Gateway details on the *Controller*, see <u>Completing</u> the Configuration of the Controller.

Completing the Configuration of the Controller

If you specified a dummy public IP address (for example, *1.1.1.1*) when you created the Gateway on the *Controller*, you now need to update the *Controller* with the allocated public IP address for the Gateway VM instance on Google Cloud Platform.



You do not need to perform the following procedure if you specified the correct public IP address when you created the Gateway on the *Controller*, see "Adding a GCP Gateway" on page 294.

- 1. Return to the **Gateways List** page in the *nZTA* Tenant Admin Portal.
- 2. Locate the new Gateway record in the list and confirm that its status has updated to Connected.
- Click the Gateway and then select Secure Access > Manage Gateways > Gateway > Configuration.
- 4. Under **Gateway Network Settings**, delete the current public IP setting and replace it with the public IP address if the nic1 (external) interface for the VM instance.

 (Optional) After you have registered a Gateway, you can configure it (or the Gateway Group to which it belongs) as the default Gateway if required. A default Gateway handles all requests from applications that are not referenced by any secure access policy. See <u>Configuring a Default</u> <u>Gateway for Application Discovery</u>.

Workflow: Creating a Gateway in Oracle Cloud Platform

Download the ZTA Gateway image and template files from the Software Download Portal https://portal.ivanti.com/customer/product-downloads.

For setting up a Gateway on the Oracle Cloud Platform(OCI), follow these processes that must be performed in sequence:

- Preparing to create an Oracle gateway, see "Preparing to Create an Oracle Gateway" below.
- Creating the gateway record in the Controller, see "Adding an Oracle Gateway" on the next page.
- Downloading Metadata for Oracle Cloud Platform, see "Downloading Metadata for Oracle Cloud Platform" on page 321.
- Uploading the Oracle Image onto the Oracle Cloud Platform, see "Uploading the Oracle Virtual Machine Image onto the Oracle Cloud Platform" on page 322.
- Creating a VM Instance of the OCI image:
 - Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded Oracle Image Using a Script/Template, see "Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded OCI Image Using Terraform Script" on page 326.
 - Refer Terraform Configurations for details on the configuration, see "Terraform Configurations" on page 328.
- Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded OCI Image Using any Other Methods, see "Creating Gateway Selectors" on page 238

Preparing to Create an Oracle Gateway

Before you start, make sure you have the following information and files:

- An identifying name for the Gateway.
- The public IP address for the Gateway. This is the IP address at which clients can externally reach the Gateway instance, such as an LB/NAT or Datacenter network forward rules.

If you want Oracle Cloud platform to allocate a public IP address automatically, you can use a dummy IP address (for example, 1.1.1.1) when you create the Gateway on nZTA.

- The Gateway geographic location.
- (Optional) The name of the Gateway Group to which you want to add this new Gateway record. To learn more about Gateway Groups, see "Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability" on page 237.

Gateway Group may have a defined public IP address, which you can specify during the creation of the Gateway.

• Credentials for the Oracle Cloud Platform Console.

These credentials must include sufficient permissions to create a virtual machine using terraform scripts.

• The primary (and optional secondary) DNS server IP address, and search domain.

Adding an Oracle Gateway

To register a Gateway on your Controller, use the Gateway Details dialog. To begin, log into the Controller Tenant Admin Portal using the credentials provided in your welcome email. Two outcomes are possible:

 On unconfigured nZTA systems, the Secure Access Setup Onboarding wizard appears (see "Working with the Onboarding Wizard" on page 57). In this case, click Add Gateway.

- On configured nZTA systems, the Network Overview page appears. In this case:
 - 1. From the nZTA menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways.

The Gateways List page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the Controller.

2. To add a new Gateway, select **Create** from the top-right.

3. From the drop-down menu, click **Create ZTA Gateway**.

	Create 🗸
Create ZTA Gateway	
Create ZTA Gateway Group	Q

The Gateway Details dialog appears.

Manage Gateways 🚯		
Gateways List Gateway Selectors		
Gateway Details		년 View Ge
Gateway Information		
NAME		
PUBLIC ADDRESS or CNAME ADD		
OOUNTRY Select a Country State/Region Oity Select a City	~	
GATEWAY PLATFORM Oracle Cloud Platform		
Internal Network / Private Subnet		
PRIMARY DNS SECONDARY DNS DNS SEARCH DOMAIN		
Gateway Network Settings		
✓ Use Management Port		
Use Proxy Server for communication (i)		
Add this Gateway to a group		
Add gateway to any of the predefined gateway group or create a new gateway group		
Select a gateway group V CREATE GATEWAY GROUP		
Configure MTU for the gateway		
МТU 1280		
	CANCEL	Create Confi

Enter the following details:

- 1. Enter a **Name** for the Gateway.
- 2. Enter one or more **Public Address or CNAME** (Public IP address or CNAME) for the Gateway.

3. Select **Add** to add each entry to the list. To learn more about this setting, see "Configuring Networks in your Gateway Datacenter" on page 213.

If you want Oracle Cloud Platform to allocate a public IP address automatically, you can use a dummy IP address (for example, 1.1.1.1) at this point. You must then update the Controller with the allocated public IP address after the Oracle VM instance is created (if it is not updated automatically).

- 4. Select the geographic location details for the Gateway.
- 5. For Gateway Platform, select Oracle Cloud Platform.
- 6. Enter the Primary DNS IP address for the Gateway.
- 7. (Optional) Enter the Secondary DNS IP address for the Gateway.
- 8. Enter the DNS Search Domain for the Gateway.
- 9. (Optional) Select the **Use Management Port** check box to use management network ports for nZTA traffic rather than internal ports.

When the management port is enabled, Gateway will use management interface to communicate with Controller and NTP Server.

The Gateway will still use the internal port for DNS resolution and NTP server name resolution.

If the internal DNS cannot resolve the Controller domain, the internal interface will require internet access.

10. (Optional) Select the **Use proxy server for communication** check box to enable nZTA to Controller communication via proxy server.

Proxy is supported on both internal and management interfaces of the Gateway. Once enabled, enter host name and port.

Optionally, if your proxy server requires further authentication, enter a username and password to log in to the proxy server.

11. (Optional) Select a Gateway Group to which the new Gateway is to be added. To learn more about Gateway Groups, see "Adding Gateway Groups for High Availability" on page 237.

A Gateway Group may have a defined public IP address, which you can specify as the Public Address.

- 12. **Configure MTU for the gateway**: Configurable MTU size allows admin to modify the default setting of nZTA gateways wherever it is needed. The value allowed is in the range of 576 to 1500 (IPv4).
- 13. To add a Gateway definition based on the settings you specified in this dialog, select **Create Configuration**.

You can now download your metadata, see "Downloading Metadata for Oracle Cloud Platform" below.

In case of registration failure due to Gateway configuration mistakes in firewall rules, DNS, etc., you can re-register the gateway. It does not require re-deploying of Gateway.

Downloading Metadata for Oracle Cloud Platform

The preparation of metadata for use on Oracle Cloud Platform currently requires some manual steps:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the nZTA menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways > Gateways List.

The Gateways List page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the Controller.

3. Locate and select your Oracle cloud Gateway.

The Gateways Overview page appears.

4. Click the Download icon, then choose **Download gateway init config** to obtain a copy of the Gateway definition file.



5. Specify a save location for your Gateway definition file.

The Gateway definition file is valid for 24 hours. If this period expires, you must replace the Gateway to generate a new Gateway definition file.

 (Optional) If you have not yet downloaded the latest version of your Gateway VM image and optional YAML templates, click the Download icon and select Download gateway VM image. Save the archive file and unpack to a local workstation. Make sure the resulting file set is accessible from the Oracle Cloud Platform Management Portal.

You can now create an Oracle cloud gateway VM in Oracle Cloud Platform, see "Uploading the Oracle Virtual Machine Image onto the Oracle Cloud Platform" below.

Uploading the Oracle Virtual Machine Image onto the Oracle Cloud Platform

To upload a Oracle Gateway virtual machine image into Oracle Cloud Platform:

- 1. Access the Oracle Cloud Platform Management Portal, either from a client or a web browser, and log in using your Oracle Cloud Platform credentials.
- 2. Click the Navigation menu, and then select **Storage > Buckets**.

X ORACLE Cloud		
Q Search	II Storage	
Home Compute Storage	Block Storage Block Volumes Block Volume Backups Block Volume Replicas	Object Storage & Archive Storage Buckets
Networking	Volume Groups	
Oracle Database Databases	Volume Group Backups Volume Group Replicas	
Analytics & Al	File Storage	
Identity & Security	File Systems Mount Targets	
Observability & Management Hybrid	9	
Migration & Disaster Recovery		
Billing & Cost Management		
Marketolace		

- 3. Select the right compartment and then the list of OCI storage buckets appears as below.
- 4. Select the bucket into which you wish to place the OCI image.

A page listing the current list of the files from the bucket appears.

5. Click Upload.

An upload dialog appears.

ORACLE Cloud	Search resources, services, docume	ntation, and Marketplace	India South (Hyderabad) 🗸	0	۵	?
	Approximate Size: 73.2 Uncommitted Multipart	Upload Objects				
	Uncommitted Multipart	Object Name Prefix Optional				
		Storage Tier				
Resources	Objects	Standard				
Objects	Upload More Action	Choose Files from your Computer				
Metrics	Name	ζ_{\uparrow} Drop files here of	r <u>select files</u>			
Pre-Authenticated Requests	gcp-debug-bu	ैङ Show Optional Response Headers and Metadata				
Work Requests						
Lifecycle Policy Rules						
Replication Policy	oci-debug-bui					
Retention Rules	oci-debug-bui					
Uncommitted Multipart Uploads	🗌 🗌 oci-debug-bui					
Logs	🗌 🗍 oci-debug-bui					
	🗌 🗌 oci-debug-bui					

- 6. Select the *ZTA Gateway* OCI virtual machine image.tar file from your local workstation and click **Open**.
- 7. Wait until the upload completes. This may take several minutes.
- 8. Once upload completes. Create an image from the bucket using the following method:

1. Click the Navigation menu, and then select **Compute > Custom Images**.



2. Select the right compartment and then the list of current images appears.
| | gronia, arra <u>orning, your ornin</u> | Traine to the croud. | | |
|--------------------------|--|--|---|---|
| Import image | | | | |
| Name | State | Original image | Billable size (GB) (i) | Created |
| | | | | |
| oci-226-r1-408 | Available | | 11 | Fri, Sep 1,
UTC |
| asi 1080 dahua | Augilabla | | | Sun, Aug |
| ocr-rooo-debog | Available | | | UTC |
| imported-image-20230826- | Available | | 11 | Sat, Aug 2 |
| 0939 | - Thumasia | | | UTC |
| oci-1044-debug | Available | | 11 | Thu, Aug
UTC |
| gcp-1044-debug | Available | | 11 | Wed, Aug
UTC |
| | | | | Tue Ave |
| | Import image Name oci-228-r1-408 oci-1080-debug imported-image-20230828-
0939 oci-1044-debug gco-1044-debug | Import image Name State oci-226-r1-408 • Available oci-1060-debug • Available imported-image-20230826-
0939 • Available oci-1044-debug • Available gcp-1044-debug • Available | Import image Name State Original image oci-226-r1-403 Available - oci-1080-debug Available - imported-image-20230826-
0932 Available - oci-1044-debug Available - gcp-1044-debug Available - | Import image State Original image Billable size (GB) ① oci-226-r1-408 - Available - 11 oci-1080-debug - Available - 11 imported-image-20230826-
09332 - Available - 11 oci-1044-debug - Available - 11 gcp-1044-debug - Available - 11 |

- 3. Click on **Import image**. An import dialog will appear and then choose the .tar file that was uploaded in the bucket. Refer to the below screenshots.
 - Ensure the OS is selected as CentoS.
 - Ensure Launch mode is chosen as Paravirtualized mode.
 - Ensure Image type is chosen as QCOW2.

Import image	
Create in compartment	
oracleivantiztaproject (root)	
Name	
imported-image-20230903-1512	
Operating system	
CentOS	
 Import from an Object Storage bucket Import from an Object Storage URL 	
Bucket in oracleivantiztaproject (root) (Change compartment)	
✓ ztaproject	
Object name	
oci-debug-build-1062ISA-V-OCI-ZTA-22.5R1-1062.1.tar.gz	
Image type	
○ VMDK	
Virtual machine disk file format. For disk images used in virtual machines.	
For disk image files used by QEMU.	

• Wait until the import completes. This may take several minutes.

You can now create a VM instance of the uploaded OCI image. To do this, either:

- Perform the task manually, see "Working with Gateways" on page 210.
- Perform the task with a script, see "Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded OCI Image Using Terraform Script" below.

Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded OCI Image Using Terraform Script

Pre-requisites: Ensure OCI configurations required for CLI access is enabled. This is one-time process. Please see here for details:

- 1. Download the required template archive file to your local workstation.
- 2. Upload all the scripts to Oracle cloud shell as below:

1. Open the cloud shell using the option as shown below.



2. Upload the terraform scripts using the upload option from the cloud shell settings as shown below. Once it is uploaded, the scripts will be present in the user's home directory.

	h resources, services, docu	mentation, and N	farketplace				India Se	outh (Hyderabad)~ 🖸	Į
Compute	Instances in oracleivantiztaproject (root) compartment An instance is a compute host. Choose between virtual machines (VMs) and bare metal instances. The image that you use to launch an instance determ system and other software.									
Instances	Create instance Ta	ble settings								
Dedicated Virtual Machine Hosts Instance Configurations	Name	State	Public IP	Private IP	e IP Shape VM.Stan	OCPU count	Memory (GB)	Availability domain	Fault domain	
Instance Pools	nZTA Oracle GW7	Terminated				3			FD-3	
Cluster Networks	instance-20230901-1938	Running	68.233.107.90	10.0.0.17	VM.Stan	1	16	AD-1	FD-3	
View V Network: Public	~									
Cloud Shell										
iqbalbadus@cloudshell:~ (ap-hyderabad-1) jobalbadus@cloudshell:~ (ap-hyderabad-1)	\$ S pwd								4	
/home/iqbalbadus iqbalbadus@cloudshell:~ (ap-hyderabad-1)	\$								Î	
iqbalbadusgcloudsnell:~ (ap-hyderabad-1) config.auto.vars deploy.tf nzta_update iqbalbadusgcloudshell:~ (ap-hyderabad-1)	şıs _ip.py terraform.tfstate Ş∐	terraform.tfs	tate.backup <mark>ter</mark>	raform.tfstat	te.d variable	is.tf				
									010 101	

- 3. Edit the *config.auto.vars* file as per the intended deployment. Refer "Terraform Configurations" on the next page for details on the configuration.
- 3. Run terraform init.
- 4. Run **terraform validate**. This will let the admin know if there are any issues with the configurations.
- 5. Run terraform apply. This will trigger the deployment process.
- 6. If any resource deployment fails, retry running the command Terraform apply again.

Terraform Configurations

D e s c r i t i o n	Sample Value
1eT nhai bseemain agemei tnZ T	enable_management = true

Des cri pti on	Sample Value
A n e	
e d s	
a n	
a d d i	
t i o n	
a I	

	D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
	n t f a c	
2	i T n h t i e s r n d a e l a e t s t	internal_existing_vcn = false

	Sample Value

D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
o b e u s e d f o r i n t e	

D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
e t h e e d t t o p r	

	Description	Sample Value
3e *	T h	external_existing_vcn = false
	i	
	S	
h	d	
	f	
	i	
	e	
	s	
	'	
i	i	
	T	
h		

D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
e x i s t i n g V C N t o b	

e c c t i o n	Sample Value			
n a l n t e r f a c e I f t r u				

Descri Pti on	Sample Value
i guration external -vcn	

	D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
4	mT a h	management_existing_vcn = false
	n i	
	a s	
	9	
	e u me	
	e f	
	n i	
	t n	
	e s	
	¥ ,	
	l c i	
	t f	
	i	
	h	
	¥	
	\downarrow	
	¢	

D e s c r i t i o n	Sample Value
n e x i s t i n g V C N t o b	

D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
e m e n t i n t e r f a c e I f t	

Description	Sample Value
n f i g u r a t i o n a n a g e m e n t -	

D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
5uT sh ei s nd te ef ri ae ls - ' V ci nf - fi on	use_internal_vcn_for_all = false

Description	Sample Value
ternal VCN to be used	

Description	Sample Value
external/management).	

	D s c r i p t i o n	D e s c r i Sample Value p t i	
6i	Т	T internal_existing_subnet = false	
	h i	h	
6	e s	s	
r r	n d	d	
5	e e	e	
	т . і	T Î	
	e n	n	
i	s	s	
l s	; ,	,	
i	i	i 4	
))	ſ	
5	e x	e x	
ļ	ı i	i	
	os nt	s t	
e	e i	i	
	g	9	
	S	s	
	u b	u b Copyri	ght © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. <mark>Privacy and Legal</mark> .
	n	n	

		Description	Sample Value	
	7€	еT	external_existing_subnet = false	
		ch		
		e s		
		h d		
	5	ае		
		f		
		e n		
	×	e e		
		s ; ,		
		ו ר f		
	ļ)		
	-	e s x		
	ļ	ıi		
		os nt		
	€	e i		
		n g		
1	\square	s u		
		b	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.	
		n		

	Sample Value
8m1	management_existing_subnet = false
ał.	
n i a s	
9	
e c me	
e f	
hi tr	
ļ	
e s	
î ′	
s i t f	
i	
n e g x	
ļi	
s s u t	
b i	
n r	
S	
k	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.
r	

	D e s c r i p t i o n	D e s c r i Sample Value p t i	
9¢ 	T h ei ed e mf	T create_management_nat = true h s d e f	
r ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ;	n n a e g s e , m e i n f	n e s	
 r #	N A T n e e d s	N A T e e d	
	t o	t o Copyrig	ght © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. <mark>Privacy and Legal</mark> .

D e c r i t i o n	Sample Value
1cT ei as tde if n es n if n n at n n t n n n t n n n n n n n n n n n n n	create_internal_nat = true
0	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
1 c 1 r e a t e x t e r n a l - e x t e r n a l - e	This defines, if internet g	create_external_ig = true
	a t e	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	D s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
11	I T	use_static_external_ip = false
2s و	e i	
s	5	
t a	d n e	
i	f i	
¢	n e	
e x	es	
t	e i	
r	f	
8	ns t	
-	. a	
F	c D i	
	С	
	p r ;	
	v a t	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	D s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
1ı 2,	ı T	use_static_internal_ip = false
55 6	e i	
s	S	
t e	d n e	
t	f i	
¢	n e	
i	s 1,	
t	, i	
r	f	
8	n n s	
-	t a	
i	t Di	
	с	
	p r i	
	v a t	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

		De s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
1	u -	T	use_static_management_ip = false
	e i	n i	
		s	
	ŧ	d	
	a e t 1	e f	
	i i	i	
		n e	
	m	s	
	n,	'	
	a i q 1	i f	
	e		
	e 1	s t	
		a t	
	ļi	i	
	i (p	с	
		p r	
	i i i	v a t	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

e s c r i i i o n	Sample Value
1 u T 5 s h e i o d a e d f i b n a e f s a , n c i s e f r l o a d f	use_load_balancer = false

	Sample Value
k a l a r c e r c e r c s t c c s t c c k e e	

	Sample Value		
i i r t f c c			

D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
1u T 6s h	use_existing_lb_for_ext_nic = false
ei _s e	
x d i e	
st ti in	
ne gs	
bi	
f oe	
rx _i es	
x t t i	
n g	
c I o a d	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
1 u 7 s e - e x i s t i n 0 - b s - f 0 r - e x t - n i c	This defines, if existing ba	use_existing_bs_for_ext_nic = false
	a c k	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value	
11	I T	use_existing_ls_for_ext_nic = false	
88 ¢	h ei		
	S		
×	d		
i	e f		
t	i		
i	n n e		
ç	g s		
I	. /		
s	i f		
f			
ſ	ре х		
	i		
×	t		
t	i n		
r	n g	3	
i	: 1		
	i s t	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.	

D e c r i p t o n	Sample Value		
1c T 9o h me p C t l m D e n o t f - t l d h e o t f c o m p a r t m c o m p a r t n c o m p	compartment_id = "ocid1.tenancy.oc1aaaaaaaarod5yc3653ujwgvjbqui3s6r6ntfbs3d4uwxlkitku5flcbkrety"		
w h	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.		
	D s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value	
--------	--	--------------------------------	--
2γ	, D	vm_display_name = "skrn-new-2"	
On	ni s		
¢	l p		
i s	l a	a	
p	у у		
a	n	n	
у	′a m	a m	
n	n e	2	
a n	nf	-	
e	e o r		
	t h		
	e		
	n	n	
	Z T	Z T	
	A	4	
	g	g	
	a t	a Copyric	ht © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.
	e		

	Description	Sample Value
2i	C mC al p p f d t h e i m a g e t o u s e f o r	image_id = "ocid1.image.oc1.ap-hyderabad-1.aaaaaaaapw7vnd4fqbp3heuk5kikfhlmhpcxjhcrl7tz7a3ln52gg7jr3l
	r t	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

		D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
-	2s 21	V n M	shape = "VM.Standard.E4.Flex"
	8) S	
	€	e h a	
		p e	
		f o r	
		t h e	
		n	
		Z T A	
		g a	
		t e w	
		a y	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
2	t N ou t m a b l e f l o e f l o e f l o e f V i s r Q e V i s r O e f O e f U i s f o C Q U i s f o C Q V i s f o c c q v i s f o c c q v i s f o c c c q o c c c c c c c c c c c c c c	total_flex_OCPUs = 3
	o r	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	D s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
2t 4c t 1 1 4 1 4 1 1 4 5 7 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8	R A M s i z e f o r M t h e f l e x V M	total_flex_RAM = 16

D e c r i c r i t i o n	Sample Value
a A v v a a i i l a a b b i i i l a b b i i i t t y d d o m m a a i i n n w h e r e t h	availability_domain = "bsUY:AP-HYDERABAD-1-AD-1"
h e	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
2	i I nntteerrnnaa II-VCI cDR-Cibl rcbk the kr	internal_vcn_cidr_block = "10.0.0.0/16"
	i n	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	D s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
2i	D	internal_vcn_display_name = "ZTA_internal_vnc_2"
7h	ı i	
e	e p	
r	Ι	
h	n a V	
l	у	
+	n	
Y	a m	
ĥ	n e	
ł		
0 i	іт 0	
s	r	
p) +	
a	h	
у	e	
	i	
a	n	
n	nt	
e	e e r	
	n	
	a	Convight © 2025 Juanti All Pights Deserved Privacy and Legal
	I	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti, An Nights Reserved. Frivacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
	On C I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	internal_vcn_id = "ocid1.vcn.oc1.ap-hyderabad-1.amaaaaaatgkbhxyaia3zy75gt3cqxqotgdagfsw7vdy2sylscjvavr
	u s	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
2i 9r t e f r s t t t t	C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	internal_subnet_id = "ocid1.subnet.oc1.ap-hyderabad-1.aaaaaaaafscfkn7nzwsnv5xgjscybresi55fyxreqrqeu67um
	o r	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

E e s c r i t t	Sample Value
Bi C t C t C t C t C t C t C t C t	internal_subnet_cidr_block = "10.0.0.0/18"
s	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
3i	D	internal_subnet_display_name = "internal_Subnet_2"
11	n i 's	
6	e p	
	· n a	
á	ау	
	n	
	s a	
	u m	
	n	
6	e f	
	_ r	
	t k	
	s h	
	рe	
ĺ	a i	
3	/ n	
	ne	
á	a r	
	e a I	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	D e c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
3i 2n t e r n a l - r t - n a n e	D D i s p l n a m a n y n a m i v y r o u t i n g	internal_rt_name = "internal_rt_name"
	t a	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
3i	D	internal_nat_name = "internal_nat_name"
3I t	1 I : S	
¢	e p · I	
ľ	n a a v	
I	. ,	
r	n na	
t	am :e	
ľ	1 0	
æ	a f	
¢	e t	
	h e	
	n	
	a t	
	ć	
	ť O	
	r t h	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	D e r i p t i o n	Sample Value
3i	D	internal_nic_display_name = "internal"
4r t	nı s	
•	ер	
r	י ה a	
5	зу	
-	n	
r	ם ח m	
¢	e e	
¢	d f	
i	o r	
	5	
5	t a h	
у	/ e	
ľ	ni	
8	a n nt	
•	e e	
	r n	
	a	Convright © 2025 Ivanti All Rights Reserved Privacy and Legal
	1	copyright @ 2023, Wanti, Air Nights Reserved. Thracy and Legal.

	D e s c r i Sample Value p t i	
Bi Sin t a central cen	S internal_ip_address = "10.1.1.2" t a t i c I P a d d r e s s s o f t h e i n t	
t e r	t e Cop r	right © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. <mark>Privacy and Legal</mark> .

	Description	Sample Value
3i	T h h f f f f f f f m e e e d	internal_is_public_ip_enabled = false
e ds	s s	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

D e c r i t i o n	Sample Value
3i D 7ni epray nay na geno af ethe network	internal_nsg_name = "internal_nsg_name"
s e	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value	
s t e r a - r s c - r u e s		destination = "0.0.0.0/0" source = "0.0.0.0/0" min_dstport = 6667 max_dstport = 0 max_srcport = 0 description = "internal ingess" direction = "INGRESS"	
			Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

		Description	Sample Value
3	e	E	External_vcn_cidr_block = "10.0.0.0/16"
	t ·	x t	
	e r	e r	
	n a	n a	
	I	I	
	ļ	C	
	n	D	
	¢		
	d	b	
	ľ	o c	
	b	k	
	0	f o	
	k	r	
		t h	
		e x	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

		Description	Sample Value
ľ	40	e D	external_vcn_display_name = "ZTA_external_vnc_2"
	0	(i	
		e p	
	1	·I	
		na av	
		,	
		n	
		, a c m	
		n e	
		- d f	
	i	0	
		s r	
		t	
		a h	
		/ e	
	1	пe	
		a x mt	
		e e	
		r	
		a	
		Ι	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
4€ 1×	e O (C	external_vcn_id = "ocid1.vcn.oc1.ap-hyderabad-1.amaaaaaatgkbhxyaia3zy75gt3cqxqotgdagfsw7vdy2sylscjvavn
t €	: I e D	
	n o a f	
	t	
	/ h : e	
	ו _ e	
¢	x i t s	
	t i	
	n g	
	v	
	c n	
	t o	
	u	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.
	S	

	Description	Sample Value
	e C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	external_subnet_id = "ocid1.subnet.oc1.ap-hyderabad-1.aaaaaaaafscfkn7nzwsnv5xgjscybresi55fyxreqrqeu67un
	r	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
4	e C	external_subnet_cidr_block = "10.0.0/18"
	t D e R	
	r n b	
	al Io	
	s k	
	bf no	
	er t	
	ch ie	
	d re	
	bt t	
	or cn ka	
	s u	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

D P S C T I P t I O N	Sample Value
4eD 4xi ts ep rl na ay	external_subnet_display_name = "external_Subnet_2"
_ n sa um be n ef	
to _r dit sh pe	
a e y x _ t n e a r mn e a	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
4 e 5 x e r r a t r t r	e D i s p l n a m a m i o m f e t h e r o u t i n g	external_rt_name = "external_rt_name"
	t a	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Sample Value	
4e I	D external_ig_name = "external_ig_name"	
6xi ts	5	
e I	0	
n a	a	
a y I	<i>y</i>	
1 i	n a	
g ı		
h h	~	
a o m1	D F	
e 1	t	
	~	
1	n	
t	t e	
1		
	a	
	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.	
9	g	

		Description	Sample Value
F	4	e D	external_nic_display_name = "external"
	7>	¢i	
		e p	
		·	
		а у	
		n	
		- '' n a	
	i	m ce	
		-	
	i	tt o	
		s r	
		b t	
		a h	
		-	
		n e a x	
		nt	
		e e r	
		n	
		a I	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	D e c r i t n	Sample Value	
4	e S	external_ip_address = "10.1.1.2"	
8	х t t a		
	et ri		
	n c a		
	 P		
	i pa		
	d ad		
	dr de		
	rs es		
	s s o		
	f		
	t h		
	e		
	e x		
	t e r	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.	

	Description	Sample Value
4e 9x t	T h i s	external_is_public_ip_enabled = true
r n a	d e f	
+ S + - D	i n e s	
	i f	
c i P	w e n	
e n a D	e d t	
e d	o s s	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

E e s c r i t t	Sample Value
5 e C 5 e C 1 s e p r l n a y e t n a g e t n a f e t h e t h e t v c r k	external_nsg_name = "external_nsg_name"
s e	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value	
5e 1x t e r n a I - n s 9 - r u I e s		protocol = "6"//TCP destination = "0.0.0./0" min_dstport = 6667 max_dstport = 6667 min_srcport = 0 description = "external ingess" direction = "INGRESS"	
			Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

		D e c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
1	5m	nm	management_vcn_cidr_block = "10.0.0/16"
4	2a n	a	
	a	а	
	g	l g e	
	n	nm	
	e	e n	
	ł	t	
	ł	С	
	c	Ι	
		R	
	c	h	
	þ		
	r	0	
	þ	o k	
		o f	
	¢	0	
	k	r	
	+	t	
		n e	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	D e s c r i P t i o n	Sample Value
5m 3a a 9 e m e n t - v c n - d i s P i a y - n a m e	nD i s p l a ny e n a f o l r t h e m a n a m m e m m	management_vcn_display_name = "ZTA_management_vnc_2"
e	e m e n	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. <u>Privacy and Legal</u> .

	Description	Sample Value
	mO a C n I a D o mf e t i c e n x i s t i n g v c n t o	management_vcn_id = "ocid1.vcn.oc1.ap-hyderabad-1.amaaaaaatgkbhxyaia3zy75gt3cqxqotgdagfsw7vdy2sylso
	u s	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
5r 5a	mO a C n I a D	management_subnet_id = "ocid1.subnet.oc1.ap-hyderabad-1.aaaaaaaafscfkn7nzwsnv5xgjscybresi55fyxreqrqeu
¢ r	g eo mf	
t	nt h e	
l k r	us bu bb en	
t	t t	
	o u s e	
	f o r	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.
	D e s c i p t i o n	Sample Value
---	--	---
5	mC	management_subnet_cidr_block = "10.0.0.0/18"
6	a I n D	
	a R	
	g e b	
	ml	
	e o n c	
1	t k	
-	s f	
	uо	
	br n	
	e t	
1	th e	
	с С	
	l m da	
	n	
	a	
	e e	
	o m	
	k n t	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
5mD 7ai ns ap gl ea my e nn ta - m se u bf no er t dh i e s pr la an ya - g ne am	management_subnet_display_name = "management_Subnet_2"
a m me e n	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
5m	nD :	management_rt_name = "management_rt_name"
oa n	I S	
g	р 	
e n	ny	
n	n	
	m	
t	0	
n a	f	
n e	nt h	
	e	
	r o	
	u t	
	i n	
	g t a	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

E S C T I I I C C T	Sample Value
5m [management_nat_name = "management_nat_name"
9ai ns	
a r	
g I e a	
my	,
e nr	
t a	
l r n e	
a	
t c	
ĥ	
at mh	
e e	
r	
a	
t	
f	
r	
t ł	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
6m	١D	management_nic_display_name = "management"
Oa	i	
n a	s p	
g	I	
e	a	
e	' y	
h	n	
t	a m	
ĥ	е	
i	f	
	0	
þ	r	
5	t	
р	h	
	e	
y	m	
ł	а	
h a	n a	
m	g	
e	e m	
	е	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.
	n	

6 mS management_ip_address = "10.1.1.2" 1 a t n a a t g i e c m e l n P t a
1a t n a a t g i e c m e l n P t - a
a t g i e c m e l n P t t
e c m e l n P t t
e I I n P I t I _ a
a e d s
e o s f
s t
h e
a Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. <u>Privacy and Legal</u> .

	D e c r i p t	Sample Value
	6mT	management_is_public_ip_enabled = false
	2ah ni	
	as g	
	e d	
	e f	
	n i t n	
	_ e i s	
	s,	
	рі	
	uf b	
	l w i e	
	c	
	i e	
	pe d	
	e nt	
+	ao	
	D Is	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.
	e s	

	D e s c i p t i n	Sample Value
6	mD ai saplea my ennta mh eenta mh eentw ork	management_nsg_name = "management_nsg_name"
	s e	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

F F C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	Sample Value	
6 m 4 a 9 e n e n t - n s 9 - r u e s	protocol = "6"//TCP destination = "0.0.0./0" source = "0.0.0./0" min_dstport = 6667 max_dstport = 0 max_srcport = 0 description = "management ingess" direction = "INGRESS"	
		Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

 i c i c i c i c i c i c i c i c i c i c	Sample Value	
5 n r i i t t c c o c n r f f i i g g t h a t r z T V i i l	 "PHB1bHNILWI pbj48Y2VydC1j W5zZS1hZ3JIZV UzNDMzYi9vcn QWp2c2JEWGL pYWDdOa2Y5S ZTUFmY1E4YTN UF4TT0nPC9jb2 XIucHp0LmRIdi bGVkLWhvc3Ru PjwvcHVsc2UtY 	VvbmZpZz48cHJpbWFyeS1kbnM+OC44LjguODwvcHJpbWFyeS1kbnM+PHNIY29uZGFyeS1kb21tb24tbmFtZT5za3JuLW9jaS5nLmUyZTIuZS5qdW5pcGVyLnB6dC5kZXYucGVyZnNIYy5jb2(V1lbnQ+PGNvbmZpZy1kb3dubG9hZC11cmw+J2h0dHBzOi8vZTJIIMi5qdW5pcGVyLnB6dC5k vNoZXN0cmF0aW9uL2luaXRpYWwtY29uZmlnP3Q9Z0FBQUFBQmstQUFmYXlwYjgtNXowMX JzcnA1X2VmU3Joc1ISWTM1SU96WmE3dlZsaDRXalNSQ3ZXa3JFVkVVek5mOTdqeDI1T1A1VI TZIWUctUWI0aHRENzNOZnZyYjhzNmRYZGo0WUllaXltdXA0YnJ5d1l0dUdiVThuZ20zR3ZWar d5MmRFUIQ1OVhWM3p4QkRvakIQQ1l1RINtbExCd2NKckRjZC1oTVMwSmpxYUE1NHhLMDI 25maWctZG93bmxvYWQtdXJsPjxhcHBsaWFuY2UtaWQ+MGNhM2U2ZTBmZjEyNDUxN2FhNj 5wZXJmc2VjLmNvbTwvY29udHJvbGxlci1ob3N0bmFtZT48Y29udHJvbGxlci1lbnJvbGxlZC1ob3 JWM1IPjxkbnMtc2VhcmNoLWRvbWFpbj5wc2VjdXJILm5IdDwvZG5zLXNIYXJjaC1kb21haW4+F 29uZmlnPg=="
r i c		Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	D e s c r i p t i o n	Sample Value
6	l D b i	lb_display_name = "external_lb_name"
	s	
	d p i I	
	s a	
	ру I	
	an	
	ya m	1
	n e	
	mo	
	e f	
	t	
	h e	
	0	
	a d	
	ŭ	
	b a	
		Convicte © 2025 Iventi All Dichte Deserved Drivery and Less
	n n	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
6 7 8 1 e n e r - d i s P I a Y - n a m e	Display name of the listene	listener_display_name = ("external_ls_name_443" , "external_ls_name_80")
	r t	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
6 b 8 s d i s P I a y - n a m e	D i s p l a y n a m e o f t h e b a c k e n d	bs_display_name = ["external_bs_name_443","external_bs_name_80"]
	s e	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
6 9 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	e C c C i i i i d o c f c h e c h e c h e c h e c h e c h e c h e c h e c h e c h e c h e c h e c h e c h e c h e c h e c h c h e c h c h e c h c c h c c h c c c c c c c c c c c c c	external_lb_id = "ocid1.networkloadbalancer.oc1.ap-hyderabad-1.amaaaaaatgkbhxyanzrjec4irpjuumytyuk5qug
	b a I	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

Image: Comparison of the second descent												
sample Value ports = (443,80) ports = (443,80) c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c									t	0c		
Sample Value ports = [443,80]	l i	t h e	f o r	p o r t s	e r	n c	l a	b a	d	D D D O a	r t i o n	D e s c r i p
	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.									ports = [443,80]		Sample Value

	D e c r i t n	Sample Value
7	bВ	bs_policy = "FIVE_TUPLE"
1	s a c	
	pk oe	
	l n i d	
	c v c	
	e	
	t	
	p o	
	i	
	с У	
	t	
	h a	
	t	
	s h	
	o u	
	l d	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. Privacy and Legal.

	Description	Sample Value
	7р Т	protocol = "TCP"
Ź	2r C o P	
	t oi	
	c s o	
	n	
	y	
	p r	
	o t	
	o c	
	0 	
	s	
	u p	
	р о	
	r t d	Copyright © 2025, Ivanti. All Rights Reserved. <u>Privacy and Legal</u> .

Creating a VM Instance of the Uploaded OCI Image Using any Other Methods

Deploy a VM with nZTA Gateway image uploaded to the OCI, with following requisites:

- 1. Configure 2 nic's in the order Internal, External, if the Management port is not required for the nZTA Gateway deployment.
- 2. Configure 3 nic's in the order Internal, External and Management. If management port is configured for the nZTA Gateway deployment.
- Ensure custom metadata "pulse-config" is configured for the VM. The value of pulse-config metadata needs to be taken from the init file downloaded from the nZTA Controller interface as explained in admin guide section "Downloading Metadata for Oracle Cloud Platform" on page 321.
- 4. Ensure internal NIC can access the controller present in the azure cloud and application resources.
- 5. Ensure external NIC public ip is reachable by the ISAC clients over the port 443.
- 6. Ensure management NIC can access the controller present in the azure cloud , if management port is enabled for controller communication.
- 7. Ensure load balancer ip is reachable by the ISAC clients over port 443, if load balancer is used for gateway deployment.
- 8. Recommended Firewall rules:
 - Internal INGRESS (TCP: 6667), EGRESS (TCP: ANY, UDP: ANY)
 - External INGRESS (TCP: 443)
 - Management INGRESS (TCP: 6667), EGRESS (TCP: ANY, UDP: ANY)

Upgrading Gateways

Ivanti periodically creates and releases new Gateway software versions to address updates and issues, and to improve performance. As new version packages become available, you can trigger an upgrade for your Gateways through the *Controller* to take advantage of the updates available in the new version. Gateway updates can be applied manually, or, in the case of ungrouped Gateways, applied at a scheduled time. The **Installation Packages** page displays a list of the available Gateway installation packages and controls the update schedule. To trigger a manual upgrade for a specific Gateway or Gateway Group, use the **Gateways Overview** page (see <u>Checking a Current Gateway Version and Applying an Individual Update</u>).



The upgrade process requires a Gateway instance to become unavailable for a short time while the upgrade package is applied. *Ivanti* recommends performing Gateway upgrades ONLY at a time of least impact to your services.

Gateways that are part of a group (for high availability) can be safely upgraded provided the remaining group members remain connected and available.



Upgrading the ZTA Gateway to the versions 22.7R1 or 22.6R1.8 or 22.5R1.7 is recommended for the ZTA Controller version 22.7R1. Please be advised that there is no download package option available for versions 22.6R1.8 and 22.5R1.7. As an alternative, ZTA Gateways with the versions 22.5R1 or 22.6R1.2 can be downloaded and subsequently upgraded to the versions 22.5R1.7, 22.6R1.8 and 22.7R1.

To view the list of available Gateway installation packages and to configure a update schedule:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Administration icon, then select Upgrade > Installation Packages.

The Installation Packages page appears.

3. Click the Gateways tab.

The list of available Gateway installation packages is displayed:

Installation Packages (Ð		
Ivanti Secure Access Client ES	AP Gateways		
Set a default version of installatio PM - 05:30 PM local time. O Always auto update to latest v	n packages for your Gateways. Note: The de rersion () Auto update to the version I choose	fault maintenance window is Saturday, 01:30	SET MAINTENANCE WINDOW
4 GATEWAY PACKAGE(S)			SEARCH ~
BUILD VERSION 1		RELEASE DATE 1	
() 22.7R1.2-525		22-04-2024 10:06:43 AM IST	
() 22.7R2-521		22-04-2024 09:54:46 AM IST	
() 22.5R1.7-591		15-02-2024 10:10:45 AM IST	
() 22.6R1.8-695		14-02-2024 08:56:46 AM IST	

View a list of available Gateway installation packages and set a schedule for upgrades

Use the following controls to set the Gateway upgrade policy:

- Always auto update to the latest version: Update your Gateways to the latest available version according to the defined maintenance window.
- I will choose the version: Select a specific package from the list of available packages to be applied to your Gateways according to the defined maintenance window.
- **Do not set a default version**: Do not automatically schedule an update, and leave your Gateways running the current version.

4. To set the default maintenance window for Gateway updates, click **SET MAINTENANCE WINDOW**.

The Maintenance Window dialog appears:

Ø	Set Maintenanc	e Wind	ow									
Mainte 8AM - also se	Maintenance window is the period when jobs are executed. The default maintenance window is Saturday, 8AM - 12PM UTC. You can use the fields below to customize maintenance window in your local time. You can also select multiple days if you want. Note: the chosen day(s) are the days when maintenance begins. Also, if a job cannot be completed in a											
Note: 1 single	the chosen day(s) a maintenance wind s OF WEEK turday	re the da ow, it wi	ays when mai	nte the	END TIME	s. A	llso, if a	job cannot	be completed in a			
	(diddy		00.00		10.00							
								CANCEL	Save Changes			

Set the default maintenance window for Gateways

Use the settings provided to configure your maintenance window, during which your nongrouped Gateways are updated to the selected package version. *Ivanti* recommends setting this at a time of least convenience to your services.



If a scheduled update does not complete within the maintenance window, it continues at the next available maintenance window. However, if a scheduled update fails, try updating the Gateway manually (for more information, see <u>Checking a Current Gateway Version and Applying an Individual Update</u>).

Checking a Current Gateway Version and Applying an Individual Update

To check the current version for a Gateway, and to apply an update:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways > Gateway List.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

3. Select the required Gateway from the list.

The *Gateways Overview* page appears. The summary at the top of the page displays details pertaining to this Gateway, including the current version:

GATEWAYS aws265 • Gateway Not Ready			:
aws265			^
STATUS	Offline		
VERSION	21.3R3-265		
STATE	Registered		
PLATFORM	Amazon Web Services		
UPDATED	1d4h 37m ago		
IP ADDRESS	65.2.7.129		
PRIMARY DNS	8.8.8.8	-	
SECONDARY DNS	8.8.4.4	(p)	
DNS SEARCH DOMAIN	psecure.net		
NTP PRIMARY SERVER	N/A		
NTP SECONDARY SERVER	N/A		

Viewing the current Gateway version

4. Click the context menu icon at the top-right to access the Edit options applicable to the selected Gateway:

If an update is available for this Gateway, a corresponding link is displayed in the drop-down menu:

\$ A @	@ <u>^</u>
	:
Edit Gateway	^
Reboot Gateway	igo
Replace Gateway	
Take Gateway Snap	shot
Delete Gateway	
Rollback to 20.12R1	-215

Viewing Gateway version upgrade options



i i

In some cases, there might be more than one version available. Select the version you want, or contact your support representative for details.

5. To start the upgrade, click the **Upgrade to <version>** link.

An upgrade task is added in the **Tasks** page for this Gateway, with a status of "Pending". As the task becomes due, the upgrade process starts and the task status changes to "In Progress". The status description describes the current phase of the upgrade, *Downloading*, *Installing*, or *Rebooting*, together with the percentage complete.

During the first two phases, your Gateway remains operating on the current version and continues to serve traffic. Then, in the reboot phase, the Gateway becomes unavailable for a short time.

After the reboot is complete, the Gateway automatically re-establishes connection to the *Controller*. If the procedure is successful, the upgrade task is marked with a status of "Success" and the new software version is displayed in the Gateway summary in the **Gateways Overview** page.

The time taken for an upgrade to complete is based on factors such as the number of previous pending tasks and network connection speed. Check on progress using the status description or through the host platform management console.

0

The *Controller* UI displays the upgrade phase progress indicator (downloading, installing or rebooting) only for Gateway upgrades from base version 21.2 upwards. For base Gateway versions earlier than 21.2, an indication of the current progress is available only from the host platform management console.

To troubleshoot issues related to upgrading your Gateway, view the Event Log (see <u>Checking the Logs</u>). Furthermore, if a Gateway fails to initiate a reboot at the end of the upgrade process, but is still accessible, check the log file on the Gateway instance using the following steps:

- 1. Use ssh to access the Gateway instance command line.
- 2. Locate and open the file /tmp/doUpgrade.log.

Rolling Back a Gateway to a Previous Version

Your *ZTA Gateway*s can be rolled back to a previously-installed version through the Tenant Admin Portal. You might want to return to an earlier version if, for example, you encounter an unforeseen issue with a newly-upgrading Gateway instance, or for testing purposes.

You can roll back a Gateway version only where that Gateway instance has been previously upgraded through the Tenant Admin Portal, and only to the previously-installed version.

To roll back a Gateway to an earlier version:

- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Gateways > Gateway List.

The *Gateways List* page appears, showing the full list of Gateway Groups and standalone Gateways currently configured on the *Controller*.

3. Select the required Gateway from the list.

The *Gateways Overview* page appears. The summary at the top of the page displays details pertaining to this Gateway, including the current version.

4. Click the context menu icon at the top-right to access the Edit options applicable to the selected Gateway:

If a rollback function is available for this Gateway, a corresponding link is displayed in the dropdown menu:

Gateways 🚯	\oplus	esx02 • Gateway Ready Overview Logs Tasks Configuration	:
Search	~	Summary Edit Gateway Status: Online Version: 21.2R1-153 State: Registered Reboot Gateway IP ADDRESS: 12.3.4 PRIMARY DNS: 8.8.8.8 SECONDARY DNS: Replace Gateway	^ 3m
GSLB Standalone ZTA Gateways		172.21.0.15 Take Gateway Snap	shot
esx01 21:R1-87 esx01 21:2R1-153	Q	Performance Delete Gateway	89
esx02 ● 21.2R1-153	Q	e ² 0 12:00 18:00 Mar 03 Rollback to 21.2R1-13	37

Viewing the Gateway version rollback option

5. Select the rollback link.

A rollback task is added in the **Tasks** page for this Gateway, with a status of "Pending". As the task becomes due, the rollback process starts and the task status changes to "In Progress".

After the reboot is complete, the Gateway automatically re-establishes connection to the *Controller*. If the procedure is successful, the upgrade task is marked with a status of "Success" and the new software version is displayed in the Gateway summary in the **Gateways Overview** page.

As the process starts, your Gateway remains operating on the current version and continues to serve traffic. Then, after the earlier version is reinstated, the Gateway reboots and becomes unavailable for a short time.

Configuring a Default Gateway for Application Discovery

nZTA directs requests from each application towards the Gateway defined in the secure access policy for the application.

For requests for applications not referenced by a secure access policy, you can define a *default Gateway* on the *Controller*. This enables packet analysis to be conducted on requests passing through the Gateway to assess the validity of the requests.

To view usage metrics for application and resource requests handled by the default Gateway, see Reviewing Application Usage.

Two default Gateway scenarios are supported:

- Any single Gateway at v21.1 (or later) can be assigned to act as the default Gateway. This Gateway is used exclusively as the default Gateway.
- Alternatively, any Gateway Group whose Gateways are all at v21.1 (or later) can be assigned to act as the default Gateway. In this scenario, all Gateways in the group are used exclusively as the default Gateway. The Gateway Group is typically fronted by a load balancer to enable the required distribution of requests across the Gateways in the group.

To configure a default *nZTA Gateway*, you must edit and update the built-in *Application discovery* secure access policy to reference a single Gateway or Gateway Group.

The default Gateway (or Gateway Group) then handles all requests from applications on enrolled devices that are not referenced by any other secure access policy.



Ivanti Secure Access Client version 21.1 is required to work with application discovery and a default Gateway.



Ivanti Secure Access Client Linux variants do not currently support the use of a default gateway.

To assign a Gateway (or Gateway Group) as the default Gateway:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- 2. From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Secure Access Policies.

The Secure Access Policies page appears. This lists all current secure access policies.

- 3. Locate the Application discovery secure access policy and examine its **Enabled** property:
 - If the policy is enabled, select the check box for the policy and then click **Disable**.

4. Select the check box for the Application discovery secure access policy and click Edit.

The Edit Secure Access Policy dialog appears.

Lan occure neocoort	blicy			
A Secure Access Policy	defines how end users can conr	nect to nSA to access applicat	ions.	
To create a Secure Acc Selector.	ess Policy, user has to define App	plication/Application Group, D	evice Policy, User Group	and Gateway/Gateway Group/Gateway
Optional Selections: De	evice Policy and Gateways			
	2	3	4	5
Applications/Application	Groups Device Policies	User Groups	Gateways/Gatew Groups/Gatewa	way Summary y Selectors
facebook	None	accounts-auth	None	
APPLICATIONS A	ND APPLICATION GROUP	°S		
APPLICATIONS AND AP	PLICATION GROUPS			
NAME	TYPE	APPLIC	ATION DETAILS	APPLICATION GROUP
facebook	single	https	://www.facebook.com	



The **Application Type** and **Application** cannot be changed.

- 5. Click **Device Policy** and select the required device policy.
- 6. Click **User Group** for the required user group. All users identified in this group will be able to access the default Gateway.
- 7. (Optional) For a default Gateway that is a single Gateway:
 - Ensure Gateway Type is set to Single.
 - Click **Select a Gateway** and select the required default Gateway.



This Gateway must be at (v21.1 or later), and cannot already be referenced by another secure access policy.

• Click Save. The Secure Access Policies page updates to reflect the selection.

- 8. (Optional) For a default Gateway that is a Gateway Group:
 - Ensure **Gateway Type** is set to *Group*.
 - Click Select a Gateway Group and select the required default Gateway Group.



All Gateways in this Gateway Group must be at (v21.1 or later), and cannot already be referenced by any other secure access policies.

- Click Save. The Secure Access Policies page updates to reflect the selection.
- 9. Select the check box for the Application discovery secure access policy and click Enable.

The **Secure Access Policies** page updates to reflect the selection. The policy is pushed to the selected Gateway or Gateway Group.

The default gateway configuration is complete, and the default Gateway can be used by any enrolled macOS/Windows desktop device to support application discovery after it accepts the new policy.

To enroll and use Ivanti Secure Access Client on a device, see Enrolling Mobile/Desktop Clients.

Configuring nZTA Gateway Connection Control for Trusted Networks

nZTA Gateway can sometimes be bypassed so that users can connect directly to specific applications. For example, you might want users to bypass nZTA for a specific application if they are connected directly to your trusted corporate network. nZTA Gateway tunnel creation will be bypassed on the endpoint since resource access will go through the physical interface.

In the Gateway Selector, a network tag must be created for Known Networks (On-Prem) and this network tag must be marked to bypass the default gateway in the Gateway Selector so that all traffic from known network will be bypassed.



Device Posture evaluation is not done when nZTA Gateway is bypassed.

No analytics data will be displayed on any dashboards when nZTA Gateway is bypassed.

To configure bypass settings for nZTA:

1. Create Network Tags for Known Network. For example, On-Prem.

	ivanti ivanti neur	ONS FOR	ZTA					ຳ	₽	ø	0	<mark>د</mark> ۳
		\odot	Cus	tom Geo IP 🔅 🕀								
Ţ	Insights	~	5 ITE	MS				EC	DIT	DEL	.ETE	:=
θ	Secure Access	~	0	IP ADDRESS	COUNTRY	STATE	СЛТҮ	TAG				
ڻي ا	Integrations	~	0	202.54.0.0/16	India	Karnataka	Bengaluru	bn	g-lab			
୍ଭ	Administration	^	Ο	14.97.55.154/32	India	Karnataka	Bengaluru	ZT	A_Bypa	ss_Netw	/ork	
Upg	grade	^	Ο	49.36.0.0/32	India	Maharashtra	Mumbai					
Ir	nstallation Packages		Ο	185.115.0.0/16	United Kingdom	England	Cambridge	car	nbridg	e lab		
Adn	Admin Roles Subscriptions Custom Geo IP		0	64.13.174.137/32	United States	California	San Jose	sj	ab			
Sub												
Cus												

2. Click **Manage Gateways**, under Gateway Selectors, enter the Gateway information, Add Rules for Recognized Networks.

	ivanti IVANTI NEURO	INS FOR ZI	TA		5	@ @	0	Å
		0	Manage Gateways (i)			(Create	~
0 0	Insights Secure Access	~	Gateways List Gateway Selectors					
Sect	ure Access Policies		Gateway Selector Details					^
Onb	boarding		Gateway Selector Information					
Man	nage Users		NAME Zie bydess dw					
Man	nage Devices							
Man	nege Applications		Bypess ZTA for known networks					
Man	nage Applications (New)							
Man	nage Gateways		Gateway Selection Policy					
0	Integrations	~	Recognized Networks					
96	Administration	~	Recognized Network		+ Add Rule			
			NETWORKS	GATEWAY PRIORITY				
			= sjlab	t2-willow-aws			^	
			= cambridgelab	cambridge-esx				
			= bnglab	test			~	
			Default gateways to be used in order of cor than the gateways in recognized networks.	figuration. These gateways are given lower priority	A Sela Casana Brinda	(a) a		
			Note: Default gateways can be skipped for spe	cific networks, if needed.	Conclusive endering			
			GATEWAYS PRICRITY	NETWORKS				
			tenant2-azwillow	Bypess_ZTA				
					Cancel		date	~

3. Specify the default gateways to be skipped if needed and click **Update**. The traffic will be bypassed through nZTA Gateway and it will be passed through physical interface.

Available Gateways / Gateway Groups Selected Gateways / Gateway Groups Select All Select All Search Search test tenant2-azwillow	
Select All Search test aws01 Select All tenant2-azwillow	
Search Search test tenant2-azwillow aws01 Image: Constraint of the search	
test tenant2-azwillow aws01 >	
aws01	\sim
T bnggw-standalone	/
Cambridge-esx	
debug-esx-gw	
☐ debug-esxi	
☐ t2-willow-aws	

Working with User Authentication

- Introduction
- Viewing User Authentication Methods
- Viewing User Authentication Policies
- <u>Creating User Rules and User Groups</u>
- "Role-based Access Control for Admin Users" on page 440
- Workflow: Creating a Local Authentication Policy
- Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy With Azure AD
- Workflow: Creating an Authentication Policy for On-Premises ICS SAML
- Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy for Okta
- Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy for Ping Identity
- Workflow: Adding TOTP to an Authentication Policy

Introduction

After you have logged into the *Controller* for the first time (see <u>Logging in as a Tenant Administrator</u>), you can create **authentication methods** and apply them to the **authentication policies** you define in your *Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access (nZTA*) deployment. You then apply an authentication policy, together with **user rules**, to a **user group**. A user group forms part of a *Secure Access Policy*.



To learn more about secure access policies, see <u>Creating/Editing Secure Access</u> <u>Policies</u>.

To view user authentication methods currently defined on the *Controller*, see <u>Viewing User</u> <u>Authentication Methods</u>. To view user authentication policies, see <u>Viewing User Authentication Policies</u>.

This chapter includes workflows for configuring user authentication according to each supported authentication type. *nZTA* supports the following types:

- Local authentication: An authentication system that is internal to the *Controller*. You must create all users manually on the *Controller*, and update any required authentication policies. see Workflow: Creating a Local Authentication Policy.
- **Azure AD SAML authentication**: An existing remote SAML authentication system based on an Azure AD server. See Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy With Azure AD.
- On-premICSSAML authentication: An existing remote SAML authentication system based on an on-premises ICS server. See <u>Workflow: Creating an Authentication Policy for On-Premises ICS</u> <u>SAML</u>.
- **Okta SAML authentication**: An existing remote SAML authentication system based on Okta. See Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy for Okta.
- **PingID SAML authentication**: An existing remote SAML authentication system based on PingID. See Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy for Ping Identity.
- **TOTP authentication**: Time-based One Time Password (TOTP) authentication as a secondary mechanism in *Multi-Factor Authentication* deployments. See <u>Workflow: Adding TOTP to an</u> Authentication Policy.

After you have created the required authentication methods and updated your user authentication policies, you create user rules and user groups, see <u>Creating User Rules and User Groups</u>.

Optionally, you can associate each user group with an *admin role*, see <u>Associating User Groups with</u> Admin Roles.

Viewing User Authentication Methods

To view the user authentication methods defined on the *Controller*, select the **Secure Access** icon in the *nZTA* menu, then select **Manage Users > Authentication Servers**.

The Authentication Servers page appears, showing all user authentication methods:

lanage Users (ì					
User Groups	User Rules User Policies	Authentication Servers				
Authenticat	ion Servers which default OR l Intication Servers which have o	linked to any User Policy , wi one or more users linked to	II be disabled from deleti them will be disabled from	on. n deletion.		
Actions 🗸		+ Create Author	entication Server	earch	0 7	000
STATUS	NAME 🛧		AUTHENTICATION METHOD	USERS		
$\Box \rightarrow$	Admin Auth	\odot	Local	79 Users		
$\Box \rightarrow$	auth-test		Local	1 Users		
$\Box \rightarrow$	az-saml-auth-ProdScript		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A		
$\Box \rightarrow$	az-saml-enroll-ProdScript		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A		
	or outh the dfa		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A		
$\Box \rightarrow$	az_autii_zta_uis		0/11/2 (/12010 /12)			

User Authentication Methods

From this page, you can:

- Add a new authentication method by selecting Create Authentication Server.
- Edit an existing authentication method by selecting the adjacent check box, then selecting
 Actions > Edit. Make any required updates and save the changes.
- Delete an unused authentication method by selecting the adjacent check box, then selecting
 Actions > Delete. You must confirm the deletion.
- View the configured attributes for a SAML authentication method, where that method is configured for use with an authentication policy. To do this, select the arrow indicator to the left of the method name, where shown.

Viewing User Authentication Policies

To view the user authentication policies defined on the *Controller*, select the **Secure Access** icon in the *nZTA* menu, then select **Manage Users > User Policies**.

The User Policies page appears, showing all user authentication policies.

Man	Manage Users 🛈									
Use	Jser Groups User Rules User Policies Authentication Servers						Create User Policy			
Not To c User	Note To create a User Policy, you need a prerequisite entity - Authentication Servers. User Policies which are default OR linked to any User Group will be disabled from selection.									
14 TOTAL ③ SEARCH Q ·								🗒 Batch Delete		
	STATUS	NAME 🛧	DEFAULT 🔶	POLICY USER	ACCESS URL	SERVER	SERVER TYPE	DEVICE POLICY		
0	>	accounts-auth		user	*/login/accounts/	account-a	SAML (Azu	:		
	>	accounts-enrollment		enroll	*/login/accountsenro	account-e	SAML (Azu	:		
		Admin Signin	\odot	admin	*/login/admin/	Admin Auth	Local	:		
		схо		admin	*/login/cxo/	схо	Local	:		
		cxoics		admin	*/login/cxoics/	cxoics	Local	:		
	>	Enrollment Signin	\odot	enroll	*/login/enroll/	AzureAD-E	SAML (Azu	:		
	>	kan_mfa		admin	*/login/QA/	kan-samla	SAML (Azu	:		
		netadmin		admin	*/login/netadmin/	net-admin	Local	:		

User Authentication Policies

nZTA provides following default/built-in authentication policies, indicated by a tick in the **Default** column, suitable for the primary use-cases of administrative sign-in, user enrollment, and user sign-in:

- Admin SignIn. This policy is used whenever admin users log in. That is, for connection requests to the */login/admin/ URL. It is referenced by the ALLADMINUSERS user rule, which associates it with the ADMINISTRATORS user rule group.
- User SignIn. This policy can be used as the primary connection endpoint for all user device sign-in and enrollment requests. That is, for connection requests to the */login/ URL. It is referenced by the ALLUSERS user rule, which associates it with the USERS user rule group.a

These policies are fixed and cannot be deleted. However, you can edit them to reference specific authentication methods.

Furthermore, you can create additional custom authentication policies to enable bespoke authentication for specific groups of users or parts of your organization. Each policy should contain a unique access URL to which your users connect, and each should then be configured to link to authentication methods applicable for that purpose (for more information, see <u>Adding Custom</u> <u>Authentication Policies</u>).

To learn more about how user authentication policies are used in a *nZTA* service, see <u>Defining User</u> <u>Authentication</u>.

From this page, you can:

- (For SAML authentication) Download policy metadata files that are required for external SAML enrollment or sign-in apps. To do this, select the check box for the required policy and select **Download**. Save the file to your local workstation.
- View the configured attributes for a SAML-authenticated policy, where that policy is configured with a valid SAML authentication method. To do this, select the arrow indicator to the left of the policy name, where shown.
- Add an authentication policy by selecting Create User Policy.
- Edit an existing authentication policy by selecting the adjacent check box, then selecting Actions
 Edit. Make any required updates and save the changes.
- Delete an unused authentication policy by selecting the adjacent check box, then selecting
 Actions > Delete. You must confirm the deletion.

Creating User Rules and User Groups

After your authentication method is established and associated with an authentication policy, you can set up any required *user rules* and *user groups*. A user rule identifies one or more users based on a test against a selected attribute present in a user credential or profile, checked against either a local authentication record or from a SAML authentication service. For information about creating user rules, see <u>Creating User Rules</u>.



Performing authentication through a User Group

You associate one or more user rules with an *authentication policy* to form a *user group* (see <u>Creating</u> <u>User Groups</u>). Users requesting authorization for a service controlled by a Secure Access Policy must pass all the rules contained in the User Group attached to the policy.

A user group is required when defining a *secure access policy*. The user group identifies the users and the authentication policy to which a secure access policy applies, see <u>Creating/Editing Secure Access</u> <u>Policies</u>.

Optionally, you can associate each user group with an admin role, see <u>Associating User Groups with</u> <u>Admin Roles</u>.

Creating User Rules

Through user rules, an admin can construct a test to provide authorization to only those users of a particular name, role, group, or some other stored attribute. In the rule configuration, you select the user attribute on which you want a test to be performed.

nZTA includes following default user rules:

- *ALLADMINUSERS*. This matches all users, and is referenced by the default *ADMINISTRATORS* user group, which associates it with the built-in *Admin Signin* authentication policy.
- *ALLUSERS*. This matches all users, and is referenced by the default *USERS* user group, which associates it with the built-in *User Signin* authentication policy.



To read more about default user groups, see <u>Creating User Groups</u>. To read more about built-in authentication policies, see <u>Viewing User Authentication Policies</u>.

This preset configuration of rules, groups, and policies is suitable for typical use cases involving wholeorganization authorization needs. In other words, where you require only a single user authorization path that matches all users. For scenarios where you require more specific user authorization checks, you can create additional rules to match specific types of users.

When you create a rule, you select the user attribute with which you want this rule to test. *nZTA* provides the following rule attribute types:

- **username**: For local authentication methods, choose this attribute type to match against locallydefined user names.
- **SAML (Azure AD)**: For SAML authentication methods, choose this attribute type to match against user names or groups provided by the SAML service.
• **Custom**: For SAML authentication methods, choose this attribute type to match against a custom SAML attribute expression.

To create a user rule:

1. From the *nZTA* menu, select the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Users > User Rules**.

The User Rules page appears. This page lists all user rules.

2. Click Create User Rule.

The Create User Rule form appears.

Create User Rule			the second se
ach user rule identifies one d hree built-in user rules: AllAdi	r more users, either from a local user authenticat minUsers, AllEnrollmentUsers and AllUsers.	on method or from a SAML user authentication	method, nSA includes
Rule Name*	()		
SELECT ATTRIBUTE TYPE	\sim 0		
osomano) Ü		
MATCHING	✓) ③ (***********************************	()	



At any point during this process, you can reset the form data by clicking Reset Fields.

3. Enter a Rule Name.

- 4. Select Select Attribute Type and select one of the available options:
 - *Username*: Matches user names in a local authentication method. When you select this option, you must then:
 - Select an Expression type, either Matching or Not Matching.
 - For the **User** value, enter a match expression for the selected **Expression** type. For the value:
 - A comma-separated list of items is supported where required.
 - Wildcard matches are supported.
 - Special characters are supported.
 - Single and double quotes are not supported.



Ivanti recommends that a basic asterisk wildcard is not used when you intend to associate admin roles with user groups. Instead, a more-specific wildcard that only includes admin users is required in this case to prevent all users having total access rights.

- *SAML (Azure AD)*: Matches user names or groups in a SAML authentication method. When you select this option, you must then:
 - Select a SAML Attribute Type, either Username or Group.
 - For Attribute Value, enter a single-value match expression for the selected SAML Attribute Type as a SAML expression. For matches against *username*, *-wildcard values are accepted. For matches against *Group*, specify either a Group Name or GroupID based on the configuration in your Azure AD service.

If you select an attribute type of *Group*, an authenticated user must be a part of only the matching group. If the user is a part of multiple groups, authentication will fail.

- Custom. Matches against a custom SAML attribute expression. When you select this
 option, use the Type or Create an Expression property to enter an attribute expression.
 Supported formats include:
 - For simple user attribute key-value matching, use the syntax userAttr.<attrkey> [=|!=] <attr-value>. For example:

```
- userAttr.memberOf = "CN=sales,DC=example,DC=com"
- userAttr.mail = "user1@example.com"
- userAttr.realm = "Users"
- userAttr.department != "example_department"
```

 To match against attributes that can have multiple values associated with a single attribute key, use the syntax samlMultiValAttr.<attr-key> [=|!=] (<list>). For example:

```
- samlMultiValAttr.memberOf =
("CN=Employee,CN=Users,DC=example_demo,DC=com")
- samlMultiValAttr.memberOf = ("CN=Users,DC=example_
demo,DC=com")
```

• Use brackets and AND/OR operators to construct logical compound expressions:

```
- userAttr.groups = ("Group1" or "Group2")
- userAttr.realm = ("ztaqa") and samlMultiValAttr.memberOf =
("CN=sales,DC=uisdp,DC=com")
- userAttr.realm = ("ztaqa") or samlMultiValAttr.memberOf =
("CN=sales,DC=uisdp,DC=com")
- userAttr.realm != ("ztaqa") and samlMultiValAttr.memberOf
= ("CN=sales,DC=uisdp,DC=com")
```

For *samlMultiValAttr* expressions containing multiple groups (for example, samlMultiValAttr.groups = ("Group1" or "Group2")), your matching users must be a part of both groups in the expression to obtain authorization.

5. To create the user rule with the displayed settings, click Create User Rule.

The new user rule is added to the list of user rules.

6. Repeat steps 3-6 for each required user rule.

- (Optional) Edit an existing user rule by selecting the adjacent check box, and then selecting Actions > Edit. Make any required updates and save the changes.
- 8. (Optional) Delete an unused user rule by selecting the adjacent check box, and then selecting
 Actions > Delete. You must confirm the deletion.

After you have created all required user rules, you can create user groups, see Creating User Groups.

Creating User Groups

After you have created user rules (see <u>Creating User Rules</u>), you associate one or more user rules with an authentication policy to form a user group.



User groups are one of the four dimensions of a Secure Access Policy, see <u>Creating/Editing Secure Access Policies</u>.

nZTA includes following default user groups:

- ADMINISTRATORS. This user group associates the default ALLADMINUSERS user rule with the built-in Admin Signin authentication policy.
- USERS. This user group associates the default ALLUSERS user rule with the built-in User Signin authentication policy.



To read more about built-in authentication policies, see <u>Viewing User</u> Authentication Policies.

This preset configuration of rules, groups, and policies is suitable for typical use cases involving wholeorganization authorization needs. In other words, where you require only a single user authorization path that matches all users. For scenarios where you require more specific user authorization checks, you can create additional user groups to make different associations of user rules and custom authentication policies.

To create a user group:

1. From the *nZTA* menu, select the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Users > User Groups**.

The User Groups page appears. This page lists all user groups.

2. Click Create User Group.

A form appears to enable you to create the user group.

Create User Group	ups 🚯		
1 Group Info*	2 User Rules*	3 User Policies*	4 Summary
Create User Group	for the User Group		
User Group Name*		6	
DESCRIPTION Add a description for the Use	r Group		
			Cancel Next

Create User Groups

- 3. Enter a User Group Name and an optional Description, then click Next.
- 4. Select each of the listed User Rules that are required in the user group, then click Next.



- 5. Select required authentication policy from the list, then click **Next**.
- 6. Review the summary and click **Create**.

The new user group appears in the User Groups list.

- 7. Repeat steps 2-7 to create all required user groups.
- 8. (Optional) To edit a listed user group, select the adjacent check box, then select **Actions > Edit** and make any required updates.
- (Optional) To delete an *unused* user group, select the adjacent check box, then select Actions > Delete and confirm the deletion.

After you have created user groups, you can optionally assign the user group to an admin role, see Associating User Groups with Admin Roles.

Associating User Groups with Admin Roles

An admin role defines the elements of the user interface that an associated user group can access.

The current user can only access an individual user interface page/workflow if their user group is associated with an admin role that permits it. The tasks they can perform within that displayed element depends on the permissions set within the admin role.



When you are using admin roles, *Ivanti* recommends that any user rules for administrators does not use a basic asterisk wildcard, see <u>Creating User Rules</u>. Instead, a more-specific wildcard that only includes admin users is required in this case to prevent all users having total access rights.



The default admin roles are not created by the tenant admin using the *nZTA* user interface. Rather, they are set up by the *lvanti* DevOps team.

For example, the DevOps team might define the following admin roles:

- The *Administrators* admin role has access to all user interface elements (full read, create, update, delete rights).
- The .*Read-Only Administrators* admin role has access to all user interface elements except workflows (read only).
- The .Network Administrators admin role has access to nZTA Gateways and Insights (read only).
- The .CxOs admin role has access to Insights only (read only).



For more information about your assigned admin roles, please contact *Ivanti* DevOps.

The Tenant Admin can view admin roles in the **Administration > Admin Roles** page, and associate each role with a single user group.

To associate a user group with an admin role:

- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see <u>Logging in as a Tenant Administrator</u>.
- 2. From the *nZTA* menu, select **Administration**, then select **Admin Roles**.

A list of Admin Roles appears. This includes default admin roles and custom admin roles (RBAC). For example:

Admin Roles				Create Ro
Actions v				Search
	DEFAULT 个	USER GROUP NAME 1	DESCRIPTION 个	I
.Administrators	\odot	Administrators	All pages accessible	
.CxOs	\odot	cxo_users_group	Insights Dashboards, Logs	, Reports & Subs
.Network Administrators	\odot		Gateways Overview and L	ogs only
.Read-Only Administrators	\odot	read-only-users-group	All except Workflows , Sub	oscriptions , Upgr MORE
🗌 demo		avadmingrp		
ProjectManagers		ProjectManagers		
🗌 role-test		group-test		
			Rows per page: 10	✓ 1 - 7 of 7 found. <

Admin Roles

3. Select the check box adjacent to the role you want to update, then select Actions > Edit.

A dialog appears. For example:

le Details							
ole NAME bac-kamal-do-not-delete		SELECT USER GROUP		~			
escription Add a description for the accessible	e pages	SELECT A ROLE TO COPY		~			
rmission Settings							
Controller Permissions ICS G	Gateway Config	uration			Hide	O View	() Modify
Controller Permissions ICS G	Gateway Config	uration			Hide	O View	O Modify
Controller Permissions ICS G	Gateway Config	uration			Hide	O View O	ModifyO
Controller Permissions ICS G	Gateway Config	uration			 Hide Hide Hide 	O View O O O	 Modify O O O
Controller Permissions ICS G ICS G Insights Overview Users Applications Gateways	Gateway Config	uration			 Hide Hide<td>O View O O O O</td><td>O Modify O O O</td>	O View O O O O	O Modify O O O
Controller Permissions ICS G Controller Permissions ICS G VInsights Overview Users Applications Gateways Policy Failures ZTA	Gateway Config	uration			 Hide Hide<td> View O O O O O O O </td><td>O Modify O O O O</td>	 View O O O O O O O 	O Modify O O O O

Edit Admin Roles

- 4. Under **Choose group**, select the user group that you want the admin group to be associated with.
- 5. Select Save Changes.
- 6. (Optional) Repeat steps 3 to 5 for each admin role.

Role-based Access Control for Admin Users

With Role-based access control (RBAC), organizations can easily add admins and assign them specific roles, with differing levels of access to the nSA Admin Portal. In addition to an existing set of default roles, Administrators can now create custom granular roles for specific functions within the nSA admin portal.

The following examples illustrate how an organization can leverage role-based administration for a variety of scenarios.

To create a custom admin role:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- 2. From the nZTA menu, select Administration, then select Admin Roles.
- 3. In the Admin Roles page, click **Create Role**. The Create Admin Role page appears.

Create Admin Role Preview)					
Role Details						•
ROLE NAME	SELECT USER GROUP None	~				
DESCRIPTION	SELECT A ROLE TO COPY	~				
	<u></u>					
Permission Settings						
Controller Permissions ICS Gateway Conf	guration					
> Insights			O Hide	O View	O Modify	
> Secure Access ZTA			O Hide	O View	O Modify	
> Integrations ZTA			O Hide	O View	O Modify	
> Administration			Hide	O View	O Modify	
						•
			[CANCEL	CRE	ATE

Create Admin Role

- 4. Enter a unique name for the role.
- 5. From the drop-down list, select the User Group that you want to associate with this role. For details, see "Associating User Groups with Admin Roles" on page 438.
- 6. Optionally, enter a **Description**.
- 7. From the drop-down list, select an existing role that suits your requirements.
- Under Permission Settings, the Controller Permissions list shows the list of resources. The resources specific to nZTA are tagged with nZTA and resources specific to nSA are tagged with ICS.

Permi	ilecion Settinge			
Con	ntroller Permissions ICS Gateway Configuration			
× 1	Ineighte	Hide	() View	() Modify
	Overview	۲	0	0
	Users	۲	0	0
	Applications	۲	0	0
	Getewaye	0	0	0
	Policy Failures ZTA	۲	0	0
	Loge	۲	0	0
	Actionable Insights	۲	0	0
	Reporte	۲	0	0
	Session Management ICS	۲	0	0
∼ s	Secure Access ZTA	🔘 Hide	() View	O Modify
	Seaure Acasee Policies	0	0	0
	Onboerding	۲	0	0
	Manage Users	۲	0	0
	Managa Davidea	۲	0	0
	Manage Applications	۲	0	0
	Manage Gatewaye	۲	0	0
× I	Integrations ZTA	Hide	O View	O Modify
	CASB/SWG	۲	0	0
	Enterprise Integrations	۲	0	0
~ 4	Administration	Hide	O View	O Modify
	Upgrade	0	0	0
	Admin Menegement	۲	0	0
	Subscriptions	۲	0	0
	Custom Geo IP ZTA	۲	0	0

Controller Permissions

- 9. Select the Hide, View only, or Modify permissions for each resource and its attributes. This determines which pages to show and which actions to allow.
- 10. Under Permission Settings, the ICS Gateway Configuration list shows the list of ICS Gateway resources.

Interceater Permissions ICS Gateway Configuration	Hide O Hide O Hide O O Hide O		C GATEWAY:
Getewaye Getewaye liet Getewaye liet Multinode Configuration	 Hide Hide<th></th><th>C GATEWAY: Modify Modify Modify O</th>		C GATEWAY: Modify Modify Modify O
Geteweye Geteweye list Geteweye list Multinode Configuration System NTP Configuration Network IF-MAP Federation Log/Monitoring Behavioral Analytice V Authenticetion Signing in Endpoint Security Authenticetion Servere User Realms User Realms User Roles Resource Profiles	 Hide <li< th=""><th> View View View View O O O </th><th>O Modify O O Modify O</th></li<>	 View View View View O O O 	O Modify O O Modify O
Geteweys list Mutrinode Configuration V System NTP Configuration Network IF-MAP Federation Log/Monitoring Behavioral Analytice V Authenticetion Signing in Endpoint Security Authenticetion Servere User Realme User Realme User Roles Resource Profiles	 Hids Hids<th>0 0 View 0 0</th><th>O O Modify O</th>	0 0 View 0 0	O O Modify O
Multinode Configuration	 Hide Hide<th>O View O O O</th><th>O Modity O</th>	O View O O O	O Modity O
 System NTP Configuration Network IF-MAP Federation Log/Monitoring Benavioral Analytice Authentication Signing in Endpoint Security Authentication Servere Users User Realme User Realme User Rolae Resource Profiles 	 Hide <li< th=""><td>O View O O O</td><td>O Modity</td></li<>	O View O O O	O Modity
NTP Configuration Network IF-MAP Federation Log/Monitoring Benevicel Analytice Vathentication Signing in Endpoint Security Authentication Servere V Usere User Realme User Roles Resource Profiles	0 0 0	0	0 0
Configuration Network IF-NAP Federation Log/Monitoring Entervisel Analytice V Authentication Signing in Endpoint Security Authentication Servere Veers Veers Resource Profiles Resource Profiles	0 0 0	0	0
Network IF-MAP Federation Log/Monitoring Behavioral Analytics ✓ Authentisation Signing in Endpoint Seourby Authentisation Servers ✓ User Realms User Realms User Realms Resource Profiles	•	0	
IF-MAP Federation Log/Monitoring Behavioral Analytics Authentication Signing in Enopoint Security Authentication Servers	•	~	0
Log/Monitoring Behavioral Analytica V Authentication Signing in Endpoint Security Authentication Servere V Users User Realms User Roles Resource Profiles	۲	0	0
Eehevioral Analytios	· ·	0	0
Authentication Signing in Endpoint Security Authentication Servere Usere User Realme User Realme User Roles Resource Profiles	۲	0	0
Signing in Endpoint Security Authentilation Servere Veere Veer Realme User Roles Resource Profiles) Hide	O View	() Modify
Endpoint Security Authentication Servere Veere Veer Realme User Roles Resource Profiles	۲	0	0
Authentiostion Servere Veere Veer Realme Veer Roles Resource Profiles	۲	0	0
V Ueer Realme Ueer Realme Ueer Roles Resource Profiles	۲	0	0
Uear Rolana Uear Rolas Resource Profiles	Hide	O View	() Modify
Uer Roles Resource Profiles	۲	0	0
Resource Profiles	۲	0	0
	۲	0	0
Resource Policiee	۲	0	0
Ivanti Secure Accese Client	۲	0	0
Enterprise Onboarding	۲	0	0
✓ Maintenance	O Hide	O View	() Modify
System	~	0	0
Import/Export	0		0
Arahiving	•	0	

ICS Gateway Permissions

11. Click **Select Gateways**. In the Select Gateways dialog, select one or more Gateways / Clusters from the list and click **Apply**.

퀸, SELE	ECT GATEMAYS	
Gateways	sliet Search Q	
	athensur	
	✓ Standalone ICS Gateways	
	2231	
	224/teartoan	
	41	
	42	
	Beentoph	
	emer8k-1228	
	theres 22x	
	ohatanyagwi	-
-	nbahamanu//	*
	au	OSE Apply

Select Gateways/Clusters

- 12. Select the Hide, View only, or Modify permissions for each resource and its attributes. This determines which pages to show and which actions to allow.
- 13. Click **Create**. The newly created custom admin role is displayed in the Admin Roles page.

- 14. (Optional) Edit an existing admin role by selecting the check box adjacent to the role and then clicking **Actions > Edit**. Make any required updates and save the changes.
- 15. (Optional) Delete an unused custom admin rule by selecting the check box adjacent to the role and then clicking **Actions > Delete**. You must confirm the deletion.



New pages added as part of Controller/Gateway updates are visible to Super Admins by default, but hidden for custom admin roles. Super Admins can modify the permissions for the new pages added based on the custom roles created.

Workflow: Creating a Local Authentication Policy

This process involves creating a local user authentication *method* and defining within it all user credentials necessary to identify and authenticate your end-users. You then configure this method as the primary authentication method in your *authentication policies*. If you are configuring Multi-Factor Authentication (MFA) in your deployment, you can configure local user authentication as either the primary or secondary authentication method.

Before you begin, make sure you have all user details (name and password) ready.

To configure a new local authentication method:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, select the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Users > Authentication Servers.

The **Authentication Servers** page appears. This page lists all existing user authentication methods. For example:

Manage Users	s (i)				
User Groups	User Rules User Policies	Authentication Servers			
Authentio Local Aut	cation Servers which default OR hentication Servers which have	linked to any User Policy, w one or more users linked to	ill be disabled from delet them will be disabled fro	ion. m deletion.	
Actions 🗸		+ Create Auth	entication Server	earch	
	NAME 🛧	DEFAULT	AUTHENTICATION METHOD	↑ USERS	
\Box >	Admin Auth	\odot	Local	79 Users	4
$\Box \rightarrow$	auth-test		Local	1 Users	
$\Box \rightarrow$	az-saml-auth-ProdScript		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A	
$\Box \rightarrow$	az-saml-enroll-ProdScript		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A	
$\Box \rightarrow$	az_auth_zta_dfs		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A	
<u> </u>	0		····· /· ···· ··· ··· ··· ··· ··· ···· ··· ····	• · /•	
			Row	s per page: 10 🗸 1	10 of 13 found. 🔇 💙

User Authentication Methods

3. Select Create Authentication Server.

A form appears that enables you to define the authentication method.

Manage Users 🔅				
User Groups User Rules L	Iser Policies Authentication Serve	ers		
Create Authentication Serv	ver (i)			
Choose Server Name and Authent	cation Type			
Authentication Server Name*	(i)	AUTHENTIGATION TYPE Local	~) 🛈	
Password Options				
Characters $\begin{pmatrix} MN & \Delta \\ 6 & \nabla \end{pmatrix}$ $\begin{pmatrix} MAX \\ 128 \end{pmatrix}$				
Passwords must have:				
□ (1 × digits				
$\Box \left(\begin{array}{c} \Delta \\ 1 \\ \nabla \end{array} \right) letters$				
Passwords must have mix o	f UPPERCASE and lowercase letter	rs		
(1 x special charac	ters			
New passwords can't be sir	nilar to the current password			
New passwords can't be sir username	nilar to the			
New password must be dif	erent from 1 v previous pa	asswords		
Password expires after 18	days			
 Allow users to change their 	passwords			
LIST OF LOCAL USERS O USER(S) FOUND				🗐 Batch Delete
USERNAME	FULL NAME	EMAIL		CHANGE PASSWORD
			Cancel	Create Authentication Serve

Adding a new local user authentication method

At any point during this process, you can reset the form data by selecting Reset Fields.

- 4. Under Choose name and type:
 - Specify an Authentication Server Name.
 - Select the Authorization Type of Local.

5. Configure the password options. This is applicable to default Admin Auth and default User Auth.

Settings	Guidelines
Minimum length	Specify a number of characters. The valid range is 6-128. 6 is the default.
Maximum length	Specify a number of characters. The valid range is 6-128. 128 is the default. The maximum length cannot be less than the minimum length.
Minimum digits	Specify the number of digits required in a password. Do not require more digits than the value of the maximum length option.
Minimum letters	Specify the number of letters required in a password. Do not require more letters than the value of the maximum length option. If you enable the previous option, the combined total of the two options cannot exceed that of the value specified in the maximum length option.
Uppercase and lowercase required	Select this option if you want all passwords to contain a mixture of uppercase and lowercase letters. Require passwords to contain at least two letters if you also require a mix of uppercase and lowercase letters.
Special Characters	Select this option if you want password should contain any special characters
Different from current password	Select this option if the password must not be same as the current password.
Different from username	Select this option if the password must not be same as the username.
Different from previous password	Select this option and then select the number from drop- down if a new password must not be same as the previous number of passwords.
Force password change	Select this option to specify the number of days after which a password expires. The default is 180 days.

Settings	Guidelines
Allow users to change passwords	Select this option if you want users to be able to change their passwords. In addition to selecting local authentication password management options, you must select the Enable Password Management option for the associated realm authentication policy.
Prompt users to change password	Select this option to specify when to prompt the user to change passwords.

6. Click **Create User**. The *Create Local User* dialog appears to show additional local authentication settings:

Create Local User		\otimes
Full Name*		
User Name*		í
Password* (Confirm Password*		i
 Temporary password (require user to change password at next sign in) 		
	CANCEL	CREATE USER

Adding local users to a new authentication method

- 7. Enter the following settings:
 - Specify a User Name, Full Name, and Email for the user.
 - Specify a **Password** and **Confirm Password** for the user.
 - (Optional) Select the **Temporary Password** check box if you want the user to change their password when they first log in.
 - Click Create User.

The user is added to the list of users.

8. Repeat the previous step for each required user.

9. Click Create Authentication Server.

The new local user authentication method is added to the list of methods and the process is complete.

After you have created your local authentication method, create or update your authentication policies with the new authentication method.

nZTA provides built-in policies to cover both basic cases. In addition, *nZTA* allows for the definition of custom policies to facilitate separate authentication endpoints for specific groups of users. To learn more, see <u>Using User Authentication Policies</u>.

Repeat the following steps for each policy, starting with enrollment:

1. From the *nZTA* menu, select the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Users > User Policies.

The **User Policies** page appears. This page lists all existing user authentication policies.

Man	Manage Users 🛈										
Us	User Groups User Rules User Policies Authentication Servers Create User Policies										
Not To d Use	Note To create a User Policy, you need a prerequisite entity - Authentication Servers. User Policies which are default OR linked to any User Group will be disabled from selection.										
14 TO	TAL					(?) SEARCH		Batch Delete			
	STATUS	NAME 🛧	DEFAULT 个	POLICY USER	ACCESS URL	SERVER	SERVER TYPE	DEVICE POLICY			
\odot	>	accounts-auth		user	*/login/accounts/	account-a	SAML (Azu	:			
\bigcirc	>	accounts-enrollment		enroll	*/login/accountsenro	account-e	SAML (Azu	:			
\bigcirc		Admin Signin	\odot	admin	*/login/admin/	Admin Auth	Local	:			
\bigcirc		схо		admin	*/login/cxo/	схо	Local	:			
\bigcirc		cxoics		admin	*/login/cxoics/	cxoics	Local	:			
\Box	>	Enrollment Signin	\odot	enroll	*/login/enroll/	AzureAD-E	SAML (Azu	:			
\Box	>	kan_mfa		admin	*/login/QA/	kan-samla	SAML (Azu	:			
0		netadmin		admin	*/login/netadmin/	net-admin	Local	:			

User Authentication Policies

To learn more about the policies on this page, see Viewing User Authentication Policies.

From this page, either create a new custom policy or edit an existing policy.

2. To add a new custom policy, click **Create User Policy**.

The Create Authentication Policy form appears.

Inter a name and description for	or the Authentication P	olicy				
POLICY NAME* Enter a name	(i)	login url.* */login/your-path		i		
DESCRIPTION						
Add a description of the Authe	ntication Policy					
USER TYPE Users	~]					
)					
DEVICE POLICY Select a Device Policy	\sim					
)					
ENROLL DEVICE POLICY Select a Enroll Device Policy	~					
Select a Enroll Device Policy]					
Auth Servers						
lote:						
Only Local and SAML servers w	Il be available for selec	tion as a Primary Auth S:	erver.			
A server which is selected as se	condary(if applicable)	would not be available f	or selection as prima	ary.		
PRIMARY AUTH SERVER *	uth Samuera					
Select from Local and SAME A	utri Servers					
Only Local and TOTP servers wi	I be available for selec	tion as a Secondary Auti	h Server.			
A server which is selected as pi	imary(if applicable) wo	ould not be available for	selection as seconda	ary.		
SECONDARY AUTH SERVER						

Create Authentication Policy



To learn more about how custom policies are used for user login and enrollment, see Adding Custom Authentication Policies.

3. Enter a **Policy Name**.

4. Enter a Login URL using the format */login/<path>/.

The URL must start with "*/login/" and cannot contain any special characters. <path> should be set to a unique value reflecting the endpoint URL you want to define for this authentication policy (appended with a backslash):

- In the case of user sign-in policies, this is the URL endpoint (appended to the tenant FQDN) to which new users are invited to connect to enroll or sign-in a device with the *Controller*. Example value: "*/login/saleslogin/".
- In the case of user enrollment policies, this endpoint identifies the enrollment URL to which users are redirected if they attempt to connect to the equivalent sign-in policy with an un-enrolled device. In most cases, you do not advertise this endpoint to your users. Example value: "*/login/salesenroll/".



In some enrollment circumstances, such as when using a device pre-installed with an older version of *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, you connect directly to the enrollment policy endpoint to enroll the device. For more details, see Using User Authentication Policies.

- 5. (Optional) Enter a description for the authentication policy.
- 6. Select a **User Type** based on the intended authentication activity for this policy. Choose from:
 - **Users**: Select this option to define the user sign-in endpoint for enrolled devices. This is the endpoint that you provide to your users to access the service (regardless of enrollment status).
 - **Administrators**: Select this option to define the authentication endpoint for administrator-level sign-in. This endpoint is used for administrator login to the *Controller* only.

7. (for policies with a **User Type** of "Users" only): Select an **Enroll Device Policy** from the dropdown list to be linked to this sign-in policy (as indicated):

POLICY NAME* sales_auth_user_policy) (i)	(login url* */login/your-path	í
DESCRIPTION			
Add a description of the Authentication Policy			
USER TYPE Users	~		
DEVICE POLICY IOSJailBreakRulePolicy	~		
	~		

Linking an enrollment policy to a user sign-in policy

This is the enrollment policy to which a user is redirected if it is determined that the device is not yet enrolled. To learn more, see <u>Using User Authentication Policies</u>.

8. Under Policy Server Details, select Primary Auth Server from the drop-down list:

Auth Servers
Note:
Only Local and SAML servers will be available for selection as a Primary Auth Server.
A server which is selected as secondary(if applicable) would not be available for selection as primary.
Only Local and TOTP servers will be available for selection as a Secondary Auth Server.
A server which is selected as primary(if applicable) would not be available for selection as secondary.
SECONDARY AUTH SERVER

Selecting a primary authentication method for this policy

9. (Optional) Where a secondary method is required for Multi-Factor Authentication, select **Secondary Auth Server** from the drop-down list.



Secondary authentication methods do not apply to *Enrollment User* type policies. The relevant field is hidden in this case.

10. Click Create User Policy to create the new policy.

The new policy is added to the list of authentication policies.

If you instead elect to update an existing custom or built-in policy:

1. Select the check box adjacent to the relevant policy, then select Actions > Edit.

The Edit authentication policy form appears.



For built-in authentication policies, all properties except **Primary Auth Server** and **Secondary Auth Server** (where applicable) are read-only.

- 2. Configure the primary and/or secondary authentication methods, as required:
 - Set the Primary Auth Server to be the new local user authentication method (indicated):

Jpdate Authentication Polic	y				
nter a name and description for the	Authentication Policy				
POLICY NAME * newadminpolicy	LOOIN URL* */login/nad	min/	3		
DESCRIPTION					
Add a description of the Authentica	ion Policy				
user type Administrators	~				
DEVICE POLICY Select a Device Policy	~				
uth Servers					
ote:					
nly Local and SAML servers will be	available for selection as a Prir	mary Auth Server.			
server which is selected as secon	lary(if applicable) would not be	e available for selection a	as primary.		
PRIMARY AUTH SERVER - XDDDD	~				
Inly Local and TOTP servers will be	available for selection as a Sec	ondary Auth Server.			
server which is selected as prima	y(if applicable) would not be a	vailable for selection as s	secondary.		
secondary auth server None	~				
				Cancel	Lindate Liser Policy

Editing the primary auth server

• If you are configuring a policy for MFA, set the **Secondary Auth Server** to be the new local user authentication method (indicated):



If you configure a secondary authentication method in a policy that is currently in use, any active user sessions must be disconnected and reconnected for the changes to take effect.

3. Click Update User Policy.

The list of authentication policies updates.

4. Repeat until all required authentication policies are updated.

To ensure that your users can access the authentication mechanism defined in the policies you configure through this process, make sure your *Secure Access Policies* are configured with a **User Group** in which these authentication policies are defined. To learn more, see <u>Creating/Editing Secure Access</u> <u>Policies</u>.

Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy With Azure AD

nZTA supports the use of a cloud-based Active Directory (AD) SAML service to provide authentication for your users.

If you choose to use AD as a SAML Identity Provider (IdP), you do not create any users locally on the *Controller*. All users will already be present in your remote SAML service.

Configuring *nZTA* to use SAML authentication requires you to create separate SAML apps on the Azure AD platform for the following primary activities:

- User sign-in
- User enrollment

As part of hardening custom sign-in policies and login URLs, the following changes are implemented:

- 1. Instead of requiring administrators to configure enrollment policies, administrators will only need to configure user policies. As a default, all configured user policies support enrollment.
- 2. Single SAML authentication server for user authentication and enrollment.

The *Controller* includes built-in default authentication policies for each of these purposes, and also includes the ability to create your own custom policies for separate authentication of specific user groups. You create an authentication method referencing one of the Azure AD SAML apps described above and then assign the method to an authentication policy of the same type (either the built-in policy, or one you create).

Configuring nZTA to Use SAML Authentication



You must keep the SAML metadata up-to-date, especially after renewing certificates. This is essential for a secure and successful SaaS Apps SAML SSO flow. Regularly updating configurations in both the Identity Provider and Service Providers helps prevent authentication failures and ensures the security of the authentication process.

Configure *nZTA* by performing the following steps:

- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see <u>Logging in as a Tenant Administrator</u>.
- 2. From the *nZTA* menu, select the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Users** > **Authentication Servers**.

The Authentication Servers page appears. This page lists all existing user authentication methods:

lanage Users	3 (i)				
User Groups	User Rules User Policies	Authentication Servers			
Authentio	cation Servers which default OR thentication Servers which have	linked to any User Policy , w one or more users linked to	will be disabled from deletion. o them will be disabled from d	leletion.	
Actions 🗸		+ Create AutI	hentication Server	ch	0 7 11
STATUS	NAME 🛧			USERS	
$\Box \rightarrow$	Admin Auth	\odot	Local	79 Users	
$\Box \rightarrow$	auth-test		Local	1 Users	
$\Box \rightarrow$	az-saml-auth-ProdScript		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A	
□ > □ >	az-saml-auth-ProdScript az-saml-enroll-ProdScript		SAML (Azure AD) SAML (Azure AD)	N/A N/A	
□	az-saml-auth-ProdScript az-saml-enroll-ProdScript az_auth_zta_dfs		SAML (Azure AD) SAML (Azure AD) SAML (Azure AD)	N/A N/A N/A	

User Authentication Methods

3. Click Create Authentication Server.

A form appears that enables you to define the authentication method:

User Groups User Rules User Policies Authentication Servers	
reate Authentication Server ①	
hoose Server Name and Authentication Type	
Authentication Server Name*	~ O
assword Options	
haracters $\begin{pmatrix} wx & \Delta \\ \ddot{O} & \psi \end{pmatrix}$ $\begin{pmatrix} wx & \Delta \\ 128 & \psi \end{pmatrix}$	
esswords must have:	
I digits	
1 v letters	
Passwords must have mix of UPPERCASE and lowercase letters	
(1	
New passwords can't be similar to the current password	
 New passwords can't be similar to the username 	
New password must be different from previous passwords	
Password expires after 180 days	
Allow users to change their passwords	
LIST OF LOCAL USERS 0 USER(S) FOUND	CREATE USER Betch Delete

Adding a user authentication method



At any point during this process, you can reset the form data by selecting Reset Fields.

4. Under Choose Server Name and Authentication Type:

• Select the Authentication Type as SAML (Azure AD).

The form expands to show additional settings.

Manage Users 🕢		
User Groups User Rules User Policies Authentication	on Serve	ers
Create Authentication Server (i)		
Create Authentication Server		
An authentication method is referenced from one or more authe authentication methods: Local, SAML (Azure AD), SAML (Custor	nticatio and T	on policies. nSA supports user authentication through the following user OTP.
Choose Server Name and Authentication Type		
Authentication Server Name*)()	SAML (Azure AD)
Enter SAML details by selecting an option below:		
Auth Metadata:		
Upload SAML Auth metadata file		
O Enter SAML Auth metadata details manually		
Fields required for SAML Authentication Server		
Allow Unsigned Metadata		
🛃 Download Auth Service Provider Metadata for IDP		
Upload SAML Auth metadata		
FILE Ø		
Single Logout LIRI		
Single Logout URL		
C Enable Enrollment		
		Cancel Create Authentication Serv

Configuring SAML (Azure AD) authentication settings

• Specify an Authentication Server Name.

- 5. To provide your SAML IdP settings, select one of the following:
 - Select Upload SAML Auth metadata file if not selected already. This is selected by default.

The Download Auth Service Provider Metadata for IDP link is enabled.

1. (Optional) Specify a **Single Logout URL**. For more information, see <u>Using SAML</u> <u>Single Logout to Force User Authentication</u>.



By default, the *Controller* expects a signed metadata definition file. To allow an unsigned metadata file, select **Allow Unsigned Metadata**.

2. Click the **Download Auth Service Provider Metadata for IDP** link. Retain the downloaded file for later use.

 Select Enter SAML Auth metada details manually to manually enter the required IdP SAML settings. Use this option in scenarios where a SAML federation metadata file is not available or incomplete.

Then, enter the following details:

Enter SAML details by selecting an option below:		
Auth Metadata:		
O Upload SAML Auth metadata file		
Enter SAML Auth metadata details manually		
Fields required for SAML Authentication Server		
IDP Entity ID*	IDP SSO URL*)(i)
IDP SLO Service	user NAME TEMPLATE * <assertionnamedn.uid></assertionnamedn.uid>)(i)
IDP SIGNING CERTIFICATE * Enter a valid base64 encoded certificate		í

Configuring SAML (Azure AD) IdP settings manually

The following minimum settings are required for your SAML authentication service to function correctly. Each setting relates to a value configured in the SAML application on your IdP. Contact your IdP administrator to obtain the relevant details:

- **IDP Entity ID**: The entity ID is sent as the Issuer value in the SAML assertion generated by the IdP. Specify the Issuer value in assertions generated by the SAML identity provider.
- **IDP SSO URL**: A URL provisioned by the SAML IdP to support service-providerinitiated Single Sign-On. Use the format https://<FQDN>.
- IDP SLO Service: (Optional) A URL to specify the Single Log-Out/sign out endpoint if you want to force re-authentication for increased security. Use the format https://<FQDN>. For more information, see <u>Using SAML Single Logout</u> to Force User Authentication.

- User Name Template: Specify how the system is to derive the username from the SAML assertion. The default value can be used, or replaced with an alternative specifier that the *Controller* uses from the incoming assertion. For example: <assertionNameDN.uid>, the NamelD value where *ICS* is the IdP, the UID from X509SubjectName, <userAttr.attr>, attr from AttributeStatement attributes.
- **IDP Signing Certificate**: The signing certificate to be used with the SAML app on the IdP. Type or paste in the contents of your Base-64 encoded public key.
- 6. If this Auth server is used with User Policy of type "User", then click Enable Enrollment.

C Enable Enrollment
You acknowledge that you have chosen to enroll metadata by checking this box. If disabled, all enrollment configuration will be deleted and require reconfiguration.
Upload SAML Enroll metadata file
O Enter SAML Enroll metadata details manually
Fields required for SAML Authentication Server
Allow Unsigned Metadata
Jownload Enroll Service Provider Metadata for IDP
Upload SAML Enroll metadata
FILE Ø
Single Logout URL
Single Logout URL

Enable Enrollment

- 7. To provide your SAML IdP settings, select one of the following:
 - Select Upload SAML Enroll metadata file if not selected already. This is selected by default.
 - 1. (Optional) Specify a **Single Logout URL**. For more information, see <u>Using SAML</u> <u>Single Logout to Force User Authentication</u>.



By default, the *Controller* expects a signed metadata definition file. To allow an unsigned metadata file, select **Allow Unsigned Metadata**.

2. Click the Download Enroll Service Provider Metadata for IDP link.

 Select Enter SAML Enroll metada details manually to manually enter the required IdP SAML settings. Use this option in scenarios where a SAML federation metadata file is not available or incomplete.

Then, enter the following details:

O Upload SAML Enroll metadata file			
Enter SAML Enroll metadata details manu	ally		
Fields required for SAML Authentication Serv	/er		
IDP Entity ID*	ì	IDP SSO URL*	(i)
IDP SLO Service)(i)	user NAME TEMPLATE* <assertionnamedn.uid></assertionnamedn.uid>	i
IDP SIGNING CERTIFICATE* Enter a valid base64 encoded certificate			í

Configuring SAML (Azure AD) IdP settings manually

The following minimum settings are required for your SAML authentication service to function correctly. Each setting relates to a value configured in the SAML application on your IdP. Contact your IdP administrator to obtain the relevant details:

- **IDP Entity ID**: The entity ID is sent as the Issuer value in the SAML assertion generated by the IdP. Specify the Issuer value in assertions generated by the SAML identity provider.
- **IDP SSO URL**: A URL provisioned by the SAML IdP to support service-providerinitiated Single Sign-On. Use the format https://<FQDN>.
- IDP SLO Service: (Optional) A URL to specify the Single Log-Out/sign out endpoint if you want to force re-authentication for increased security. Use the format https://<FQDN>. For more information, see <u>Using SAML Single Logout</u> to Force User Authentication.

- User Name Template: Specify how the system is to derive the username from the SAML assertion. The default value can be used, or replaced with an alternative specifier that the *Controller* uses from the incoming assertion. For example: <assertionNameDN.uid>, the NameID value where *ICS* is the IdP, the UID from X509SubjectName, <userAttr.attr>, attr from AttributeStatement attributes.
- **IDP Signing Certificate**: The signing certificate to be used with the SAML app on the IdP. Type or paste in the contents of your Base-64 encoded public key.

- When editing an existing SAML Auth server, the 'Enable Enrollment' option can be enabled or disabled if the SAML Auth server is not being used in any 'User Policy'. If the SAML Auth server is being used in a 'User Policy', then Enable Enrollment button will be grayed out.



- If 'Enable Enrollment' is not selected, then while creation of 'User Policy' of type 'User', the server you have created (without Enable Enrollment) will not be listed.

- When Enrollment is disabled, the enrollment SAML configuration will be deleted. To enable enrollment, you have to again provide enroll SAML auth server configuration.

- Use the downloaded User Authentication and Enrollment SP Metadata files to create Sign-In and Enrollment SAML Apps in Azure AD. For details, see "Creating Enrollment/Sign-in SAML App in Azure AD" below.
- 9. Browse and upload the digitally-signed (or unsigned) federation metadata XML definition files downloaded from Azure AD.
- 10. Confirm that your settings are correct, then select **Create Authentication Server** to create the authentication method.

The new SAML user authentication method is added to the list of methods displayed in the **User Authentication** page, and the process completes.

- (Optional) To edit a listed authentication method, select the adjacent check box, then select
 Actions > Edit. Make any required updates and confirm.
- 12. (Optional) To delete one (or more) an *unused* authentication methods, select the check box for each, then select **Actions > Delete**. You must confirm the deletion.

Creating Enrollment/Sign-in SAML App in Azure AD

Perform the following steps in Azure AD:

- 1. Create a SAML app for the required activity (sign-in or enrollment).
- 2. Click Upload Metadata File and select the file from your download.

This defines at least the following Basic SAML Configuration fields:

- Identifier (Entity ID). This is the URL of the SAML endpoint on the *Controller*. This is the audience of the SAML response for IdP-initiated SSO. This cannot be left blank.
- **Reply URL (Assertion Consumer Service URL)**. This is the URL of the SAML consumer on the *Controller*. This is the destination URL in the SAML response for IdP-initiated SSO. This cannot be left blank.

Home > Enterprise applications > ZTA-Auth >											
ZTA-Auth SAML-based Sign-on Enterprise Application											
~											
3 Overview											
Deployment Plan	Set up Single Sign-On with SAML										
X Diagnose and solve problems	Read the configuration guide C for help integrating ZTA-Auth.										
Manage											
Properties	Basic SAML Configuration		🖉 Edit								
Owners	Identifier (Entity ID) Reply LIRL (Assertion Consumer Service LIRL)	https://pine1.pine.pzt.dev.perfsec.com									
Roles and administrators (Preview)	Reply oke (Assendin Consumer Service oke)	-consumer.cgi	·								
Users and groups	Sign on URL Relay State	Optional Optional									
Single sign on	Logout Url	Optional									
Single signon											
Provisioning	2 User Attributes & Claims		1								
Application proxy			Edit Edit								
Self-service	surname	user.givenname user.surname									
Security	emailaddress	user.mail									
Security	name	user.userprincipalname									
🧲 Conditional Access	Unique User Identifier	user.userprincipalname									
Permissions											
Token encryption	3 SAML Signing Certificate		🖉 Edit								
Activity	Status	Active									
➔ Sign-ins	Expiration	2D8051A223920EE661208ADD80DC0D88C503766 9/17/2023, 3:57:06 PM									
📸 Usage & insights (Preview)	Notification Email App Federation Metadata Url	admin@ztademo.onmicrosoft.com									
Audit logs	Certificate (Base64)	Download	J								
Provisioning logs (Preview)	Certificate (Raw)	Download									
Fromstering (ogs (Freview))	Federation Metadata XML	Download									
3= Access reviews	-										

Setting Basic SAML Configuration in Azure AD applications

 Download the Federation metadata XML definition for the SAML app to your local workstation. Retain this file for later use.

SAME Signing Certificate	0		
Status	Active		
Thumbprint	2D8051A223920EEB6B1208ADD80DC0D8BC503766		
Expiration	9/17/2023, 3:57:06 PM		
Notification Email	admin@ztademo.onmicrosoft.com		
App Federation Metadata Url	https://login.microsoftonline.com/593bfe44-9036		
Certificate (Base64)	Download		
Certificate (Raw)	Download		
Federation Metadata XML	Download		

Downloading Federation Metadata XML files for user enrollment and user sign-in SAML applications

4. Repeat these steps for each activity.



For details on how to create SAML apps in Azure AD, see the Azure AD SAML documentation.

Creating/Updating Authentication Policies

After you have created your SAML authentication method, create or update your authentication policies with the new authentication method.

1. From the *nZTA* menu, select the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Users > User Policies**.

The User Policies page appears. This page lists all existing user authentication policies.

Manage Users ()											
User Groups User Rules User Policies Authentication Servers											
Note To c User	Note To create a User Policy, you need a prerequisite entity - Authentication Servers. User Policies which are default OR linked to any User Group will be disabled from selection.										
14 TOT.	AL					() SEARCH	Q	🗓 Batch Delete			
	STATUS	NAME 🛧	DEFAULT 🕆	POLICY USER	ACCESS URL	SERVER	SERVER TYPE	DEVICE POLICY			
\bigcirc	>	accounts-auth		user	*/login/accounts/	account-a	SAML (Azu	:			
\bigcirc	>	accounts-enrollment		enroll	*/login/accountsenro	account-e	SAML (Azu	:			
\bigcirc		Admin Signin	\odot	admin	*/login/admin/	Admin Auth	Local	:			
\bigcirc		схо		admin	*/login/cxo/	схо	Local	:			
\bigcirc		cxoics		admin	*/login/cxoics/	cxoics	Local	:			
\bigcirc	>	Enrollment Signin	\odot	enroll	*/login/enroll/	AzureAD-E	SAML (Azu	:			
\bigcirc	>	kan_mfa		admin	*/login/QA/	kan-samla	SAML (Azu	:			
\square		netadmin		admin	*/login/netadmin/	net-admin	Local	:			

User Authentication Policies

To learn more about the policies on this page, see Viewing User Authentication Policies.

From this page, either create a new custom policy or edit an existing policy.
2. To add a new custom policy, select Create User Policy.

The Create Authentication Policy form appears.

Create Authentication Polic	су				
Inter a name and description for t	he Authentication Policy				
POUCY NAME * Enter a name	i Logini */log	uru- in/your-path	١		
Add a description of the Authentic	cation Policy				
USER TYPE Users	~				
DEVICE POLICY Select a Device Policy	~				
ENROLL DEVICE POLICY Select a Enroll Device Policy	~				
Solocit a Linioli Device Folicy					
Auth Servers					
Auth Servers	pe available for selection as	a Primary Auth Server			
Auth Servers iote: 2nly Local and SAML servers will b a server which is selected as second	be available for selection as a not of the s	a Primary Auth Server. ot be available for selectic	on as primary.		
Auth Servers Note: Dnly Local and SAML servers will b <i>A server which is selected as seco</i> PRIMARY AUTH SERVER Select from Local and SAML Auth	be available for selection as inderv(if applicable) would in n Servers	a Primary Auth Server. ot be available for selectio	on as primary.		
Auth Servers Note: Dnly Local and SAML servers will b server which is selected as secon PRIMARY AUTH SERVER* Select from Local and SAML Auth Dnly Local and TOTP servers will b	be available for selection as a andary(if applicable) would n in Servers	a Primary Auth Server. ot be available for selection Secondary Auth Server.	on as primary.		
Auth Servers Note: Dnly Local and SAML servers will b A server which is selected as secon PRIMARY AUTH SERVER - Select from Local and SAML Auth Dnly Local and TOTP servers will b A server which is selected as prime	be available for selection as a andary(if applicable) would n in Servers we available for selection as a ary(if applicable) would not	a Primary Auth Server. Iot be available for selection Secondary Auth Server. De available for selection	on as primary. as secondary.		
Auth Servers Vote: Dnly Local and SAML servers will b 4 server which is selected as seco	be available for selection as a indary(if applicable) would n	a Primary Auth Server.	on as primary.		

Create Authentication Policy

6

At any point during this process, you can reset the form data by selecting **Reset Fields**.



To learn more about how custom policies are used for user login and enrollment, see Adding Custom Authentication Policies.

3. Enter a **Policy Name**.

4. Enter a Login URL using the format */login/<path>/.

The URL must start with "*/login/" and cannot contain any special characters. <path> should be set to a unique value reflecting the endpoint URL you want to define for this authentication policy (appended with a backslash):

- In the case of user sign-in policies, this is the URL endpoint (appended to the tenant FQDN) to which new users are invited to connect to enroll or sign-in a device with the *Controller*. Example value: "*/login/saleslogin/".
- In the case of user enrollment policies, this endpoint identifies the enrollment URL to which users are redirected if they attempt to connect to the equivalent sign-in policy with an un-enrolled device. In most cases, you do not advertise this endpoint to your users. Example value: "*/login/salesenroll/".



In some enrollment circumstances, such as when using a device pre-installed with an older version of *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, you connect directly to the enrollment policy endpoint to enroll the device. For more details, see Using User Authentication Policies.

- 5. (Optional) Enter a description for the authentication policy.
- 6. Select a **User Type** based on the intended authentication activity for this policy. Choose from:
 - **Users**: Select this option to define the user sign-in endpoint for enrolled devices. This is the endpoint that you provide to your users to access the service (regardless of enrollment status).
 - Administrators: Select this option to define the authentication endpoint for administrator-level sign-in. This endpoint is used for administrator login to the *Controller* only.
- 7. From the **Device Policy** list, select a device policy.
- 8. (for policies with a **User Type** of "Users" only): Select an **Enroll Device Policy** from the dropdown list to be linked to this sign-in policy (as indicated):

This is the enrollment policy to which a user is redirected if it is determined that the device is not yet enrolled. To learn more, see <u>Using User Authentication Policies</u>.

 Under Auth Servers, select Primary Auth Server and choose the required authentication method from the drop-down list. Only Local and SAML servers will be available for selection as a Primary Auth Server.

- (Optional) Where a secondary method is required for Multi-Factor Authentication, select
 Secondary Auth Server and choose the required authentication method from the drop-down list. Only Local and TOTP servers will be available for selection as a Secondary Auth Server.
- 11. Click Create User Policy to create the new policy.

The new policy is added to the list of authentication policies.

Existing User Policies

• For existing default user policies, admin can select either existing or new SAML or Local Auth Server.

Note: The Auth Server for enrollment will be added automatically.

• For existing custom user policies, user can update existing SAML Auth Server.

If you intend to update an existing custom or built-in policy:

1. Select the check box adjacent to the relevant policy, then select **Actions > Edit**.

The Update Authentication Policy form appears.



For built-in authentication policies, all properties except **Primary Auth Server** and **Secondary Auth Server** (where applicable) are read-only.

Edit User Policies					
Update Authentication Poli	су				
Enter a name and description for th	ne Authentication Policy				
POLICY NAME* newadminpolicy		ual - in/nadmin/	(1)		
DESCRIPTION Add a description of the Authentic	ation Policy				
UBER TYPE Administrators	\sim				
Select a Device Policy	~				
Auth Servers Note: Dnly Local and SAML servers will b	e available for selection as	a Primary Auth Serv	er.		
A server which is selected as secor	ndary(if applicable) would	not be available for s	election as primary.		
PRIMARY AUTH SERVER * XDDDD	~				
Only Local and TOTP servers will be	e available for selection as	a Secondary Auth Se	erver.		
A server which is selected as prima	ary(if applicable) would no	t be available for sele	ection as secondary.		
SECONDARY AUTH SERVER None	~				
				Cancel	Lindete Liser Policy

2. Set the **Primary Auth Server** to be the new SAML user authentication method (indicated):

Editing the primary auth server

SAML authentication can be used only as a Primary Auth Server. If you are using MFA, specify either a *local authentiction* or *TOTP* method as the **Secondary Auth Server**.



If you configure a secondary authentication method in a policy that is currently in use, any active user sessions must be disconnected and reconnected for the changes to take effect.

3. Select Update User Policy.

The list of authentication policies updates.

4. Repeat until all required authentication policies are updated.

At this point, the *Controller* uses the uploaded Federation Metadata to contact the SAML service. After this process completes, a **Download** function becomes available for each relevant policy. This metadata file is required to configure trusted communication with the remote SAML service.

- 1. Refresh your browser until the **Download** action is visible for the relevant policies.
- 2. Select the check box for the policy metadata you want to download and clear all other check boxes.
- 3. Select **Download** and save the metadata file.



As mentioned previously, make sure you repeat this procedure for each required SAML app on your Azure AD platform. That is, you require separate XML metadata files for the enrollment authentication policy and the login authentication policy.

After the **User Authentication** workflow is complete, you can configure the Azure AD platform with the XML configuration of the *Controller*. For details on how to configure Azure AD, see <u>Configuring Azure</u> AD with Service Provider Metadata from the Controller.

Finally, to ensure that your users can access the authentication mechanism defined in the policies you configure through this process, make sure your *Secure Access Policies* are configured with a **User Group** in which these authentication policies are defined. To learn more, see <u>Creating/Editing Secure Access</u> <u>Policies</u>.

Configuring MFA with Azure AD (Optional)



This section describes an optional configuration activity for SAML User Authentication on Azure AD.

Multi-Factor Authentication (MFA) is an authentication method by which a user is granted access only after successfully presenting two (or more) pieces of evidence (or factors) to an authentication mechanism.

The Azure AD platform supports MFA internally, and this can be configured so that two authentication factors are required by users for a single user authentication method.

After you have configured the Azure AD platform for SAML User Authentication, you can optionally add MFA support.



For full details of this activity, consult the Azure AD documentation for *Azure AD Conditional Access* and *Multi-Factor Authentication*.

An overview of the general process is given below:

- 1. On Azure AD, locate the **Azure AD Conditional Access** page.
- 2. Create a **New Policy** with the following details:
 - Add a Name for the policy.
 - Under Assignments > Users and Groups:
 - Select Select Users and Groups.
 - Check the **Users and Groups** option, and select the required users and groups from the list.
 - Select Done.
 - Under Assignments > Cloud Apps and Actions:
 - Select Select apps.
 - Select (for example) the *zta-enroll* and *zta-auth* apps.
 - Select Done.
 - Under Access Controls > Grant:
 - Select Require multi-factor authentication.
 - Under Enable Policy:
 - Turn the policy **On**.
 - Select Create.
- 3. Locate the Multi-Factor Authentication page.
- 4. On the right-side panel, under **Configure**:
 - Select the Additional cloud-based MFA settings.

A new tab appears.

- Enable the following MFA methods as per the requirement.
 - Call to phone.
 - Text message to phone.
- Select Save.

Configuration of MFA on Azure AD is complete.

Mobile end users will be asked for secondary authentication information from their next login.

You can then create user rules and user groups, see Creating User Rules and User Groups.

Configuring *nZTA* to use Azure AD Security Groups (Optional)



This section describes an optional configuration activity for SAML User Authentication on Azure AD.

You can configure *nZTA* to retrieve Azure AD-based user security group information through SAML attributes applied to your *User Rules*.

You can create users and security groups directly in Azure AD portal. This means that Azure AD group information can be retrieved by the *Controller* through SAML attributes containing only the group's Object ID. To instead retrieve Azure AD group information via the sAMAccountName attribute, create an Azure AD group in the local Active Directory and synchronize it to the cloud using *Azure AD Connect*.

To create users and groups directly in the Azure AD portal:



This process is applicable only if you are creating users or groups directly in Azure AD. For scenarios that involve synchronizing local Active Directory users or groups to the cloud, continue to the procedure that follows this.

- 1. Log in to the Azure AD portal
- 2. Navigate to your SAML SSO application, and select the Users page.

3. Add a new user for your organization by selecting **Create User**:

Home > Pulse Secure LLC > Use	rs >	
New user		
Got feedback?		
• Create user		O Invite user
Create a new user in you organization. This user w user name like alice@ztademo.onmicro I want to create users in	r ill have a soft.com. bulk	Invite a new guest user to collaborate with your organization. The user will be emailed an invitation they can accept in order to begin collaborating. I want to invite guest users in bulk
Help me decide		
User name * (i)	ztauser	✓ @ ztademo.com ✓ □ The domain name I need isn't shown here
Name * 🕕	ztauser	✓
First name		
Last name		
Password		
	O Auto-genera	ate password
	 Let me creat 	te the password
Initial password * 🕕	•••••	
Create		

Adding a new user

Enter the following details:

- **User name**: Enter a username for the new user, appended by the domain applicable to your organization.
- Name: Enter the user's full display name.
- (Optional) First Name: Enter the user's first name.

- (Optional) Last Name: Enter the user's last name.
- **Password**: Select either an auto-generated or admin supplied password.

To create the user, select **Create**.

4. Add a new security group for your organization by navigating to the **Groups** page and selecting **New Group**:

Home > Pulse Secure LLC > Groups >	
New Group	
Group type *	
Security	\sim
Group name * (i)	
ZTAUsers	~
Group description	
Enter a description for the group	~
Azure AD roles can be assigned to the group (Preview)	
Yes No	
Membershin type * (i)	
Assigned	\sim
Owners	
No owners selected	
Members	
No members selected	
Create	

Adding a new security group

Enter the following details:

- Group type: Select Security.
- **Group name**: Enter a name for the new security group.
- (Optional) **Group description**: Enter a description for the group.
- (Optional) Azure AD roles can be assigned to the group: Use the default setting.
- Membership type: Select Assigned.

To create the group, select **Create**.

5. In the list of groups, make a note of the **Object ID** for the newly created group:

✓ Search groups	+ _∀ Add filters		
Name	Object Id	Group Type	Membership Type
ZT ZTAUsers	fcbe586b-58e8-4be4-bc9c-b6372d59bcc9	Security	Assigned

Viewing the **Object ID** for the new group

You use the **Object ID** property when configuring your *nZTAUser Rules*.

6. Assign the new user to your new security group:

Home > Pulse Secure LLC > User	s > ztauser					
× Diagnose and solve problems	Add memberships Ret	nove memberships 💍 Refresh 🕴 🎫 C	olumns 🛛 💀 Preview features 🛛 🛇 Got	: feedback?		
Manage	This page includes previews a	vailable for your evaluation. View previews $ ightarrow$				
🚨 Profile	Name	Object Id	Group Type	Membership Type	Email	Source
🍰 Assigned roles	ZT ZTAUsers	fcbe586b-58e8-4be4-bc9c	-b6372d59bcc9 Security	Assigned		Cloud
Administrative units						
A Groups						
Applications						

Assigning the new user to your new security group

To create Azure AD applications that facilitate retrieval of Security Group information:

1. Create two non-gallery applications under *Enterprise applications*, one for user enrollment and another for user sign-in, and configure Single Sign-On. Then, for each application, obtain the Federation Metadata XML file.

For more details on this procedure, see <u>Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy With</u> <u>Azure AD</u> or follow the Azure AD user documentation.

2.	Assian vour	applications to t	he required users	or security groups:
	,			e. eeeany g.eaper

Home > Pulse Secure LLC > Enterprise applications > ZTA-Auth > Add Assignment		Users and groups	×
Pulse Secure LLC		₽ Search	
Users and groups 1 group selected.	>	AA aarti aarti@ztademo.com	
Select a role User	>	Afe F afapohunda@ztademo.com	
		AD admin admin@ztademo.onmicrosoft.com	
		admin@pulsezta.onmicrosoft.com admin@pulsezta.onmicrosoft.com	
		AD ADSyncAdmins	
		AD ADSyncAdmins	
		Selected items	
		ZT ZTAUsers	Remove
Assign		Select	

Assigning applications to users and security groups

- Create two new SAML (Azure AD) user authentication methods (user enrollment and user sign-in) in the nZTA Tenant Admin portal that correspond to the SAML applications created in the Azure AD portal. Upload the Federation Metadata XML file from each application to the matching method.
- 4. Create corresponding authentication policies and assign each Azure AD authentication method as the **Primary Auth Server**.
- Obtain the IdP metadata files for both authentication policies and upload this data to the Azure AD portal under the respective applications. For more details, see <u>Configuring Azure AD with</u> Service Provider Metadata from the Controller.

Enterprise Application							
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	$ar{\uparrow}~$ Upload metadata file $~~>~$ Change single sign-o	n mode 🛛 📰 Test this application 🚽 🛇 Got feedback?					
Uverview							
Deployment Plan	Set up Single Sign-On with SAML Read the configuration guide c ² for help integrating ZTA-Auth.						
X Diagnose and solve problems							
Manage	1 Basic SAML Configuration		<b>R</b> = 1				
Properties	5		🖉 Edit				
A Owners	Identifier (Entity ID)	https://pine1.e.pine.pzt.dev.perfsec.com/dana-na/auth/sa ml-endpoint.cgi?p=sp2					
& Roles and administrators (Preview)	Reply URL (Assertion Consumer Service URL)	https://pine1.e.pine.pzt.dev.perfsec.com/dana-na/auth/sa ml-consumer.coi					
Users and groups	Sign on URL	Optional					
Sincle size an	Relay State	Optional					
Single sign-on	Logout Uri	Optional					
Provisioning							
Application proxy	User Attributes & Claims		🖉 Edit				
Self-service	givenname	user divenname					
6	surname	user.surname					
Security	emailaddress	user.mail					
👇 Conditional Access	name Unique User Identifier	user.userprincipalname					
Permissions	onque osci identifier	aser taset principulitance					
Token encryption	3 SAML Signing Certificate		A				
Activity	Statue	A stine	🖉 Edit				
Sign-ins	Thumbprint	Active 2D8051A223920EEB6B1208ADD80DC0D8BC503766					
1 Usage & insights (Preview)	Expiration	9/17/2023, 3:57:06 PM					
	Notification Email App Federation Metadata Url	admin@ztademo.onmicrosoft.com					
Audit logs	Certificate (Base64)	Download					
Provisioning logs (Preview)	Certificate (Raw)	Download					
Access reviews	Federation Metadata XML	Download					

6. For each Azure AD application, in the User Attributes and Claims section, select Edit.

Editing the user attributes and claims for an Azure AD application

7. Add a new group claim to your application by selecting **Add a group claim**:

Home > Pulse Secure LLC > Enterprise applications > ZTA-Auth > SAML-b User Attributes & Claims + Add new claim + Add a group claim	ased Sign-on >	Group Claims × Manage the group claims used by Azure AD to populate SAML tokens issued to your app Which groups associated with the user should be returned in the claim? None
Required claim         Claim name         Unique User Identifier (Name ID)         Additional claims         Claim name         http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identitly/claims/givenname         http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identitly/claims/givenname         http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identitly/claims/sumame         http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identitly/claims/sumame	Value       user.userprincipalname (nameid-for     ***       value     ***       user.mail     ***       user.givenname     ***       user.surname     ***	<ul> <li>All groups</li> <li>Security groups</li> <li>Directory roles</li> <li>Groups assigned to the application</li> </ul> Source attribute * SMAAccountName Instruction of the security of groups synchronized from an on-premises Active Directory using AAD Connect Sync 12.70.0 or above. Learn More Advanced options Customize the name of the group claim Name (required) Namespace (optional) Entit groups as role claims ③
		Save

Adding a new group claim to your Azure AD application

In the Group Claims panel, enter the following details:

• Which groups associated with the user should be returned in the claim?: Select "Security groups".

#### • Source attribute:

- To retrieve Azure AD security group details based on the group object ID, select "Group ID".
- To retrieve Azure AD security group details based on the group name, select "sAMAccountName". This option is available only for groups synchronized from Active Directory.

By default, Azure AD populates SAML attributes for group claims in the format:

```
userAttr.http://schemas.microsoft.com/ws/2008/06/identi
ty/claims/groups
```

```
samlMultiVarAttr.http://schemas.microsoft.com/ws/2008/0
6/identity/claims/groups
```

To specify a different claim type for group claims, select **Customize the name of the group claim** and specify the claim type in the **Name** field. For example, if you specify "ADgroup", the group claim is emitted as userAttr.ADgroup **or** samlMultiValAttr.ADgroup.

To add the new group claim, select **Save**.

Return to the *nZTA* Tenant Admin portal and navigate to the Secure Access > Manage Users > User Groups and Rules > User Rules page. Create a new user rule to access the Azure AD group attribute.

Configure the following settings:

- **Rule name**: Enter a descriptive name for the rule
- Select Attribute Type: Select "SAML (Azure AD)".
- SAML Attribute Type: Select "Group".

- Attribute value: Use one of the following options:
  - If you created the security group in Azure AD, use the group *Object ID* as noted earlier in the process:

Jser Rules (i)			
dd User Rules			View User Rules Reset fields
RULE NAME SAMLRule	(i)		
SELECT ATTRIBUTE TYPE SAML (Azure AD)	~		
SAML ATTRIBUTE TYPE Group	~ 🛆		
ATTRIBUTE VALUE			
CC559576-0017-456E-6744-17696740004	à		
		Cancel	Create

Specifying an Object ID as the group attribute value

• If you synchronized your security group to Azure AD from a local Active Directory, use the *Group Name*.

dd User Rules			View User Rules Reset
RULE NAME SAMLRule	(	i)	
SELECT ATTRIBUTE TYPE SAML (Azure AD)	~		
SAML ATTRIBUTE TYPE Group	~ (	$\triangle$	
ATTRIBUTE VALUE			
ZTAUsers			
	(	<b>i</b>	

Specifying an Object Name as the group attribute value

The following expressions are examples of Azure AD group attribute values:

• Users that are members of only the identified group:

```
userAttr.
{http://schemas.microsoft.com/ws/2008/06/identity/claims/groups}
= "<Group Object ID>"
```

 Users that are members of only the named group (for AD groups synchronized from a local Active Directory):

```
userAttr.
{http://schemas\.microsoft\.com/ws/2008/06/identity/claims/group
s} = "<Group Name>"
```

• Users that are members of only the identified group:

userAttr.<Customized Group Claim Name> = "<Group Object ID>"

 Users that are members of only the named group (for AD groups synchronized from a local Active Directory):

userAttr.<Customized Group Claim Name> = "<Group Name>"



To add SAML multi-valued attributes (samlMultiValAttr.<claim>) in Azure AD User Rules, you must set **Select Attribute Type** to "SAML (Custom)". This applies to the following examples:

• Users that are members of either identified group:

```
samlMultiValAttr.
{http://schemas\.microsoft\.com/ws/2008/06/identity/claims/group
s} = ("<Group OID A>" or "<Group OID B>")
```

• Users that are members of both identified groups:

```
samlMultiValAttr.
{http://schemas\.microsoft\.com/ws/2008/06/identity/claims/group
s} = ("<Group OID A>" and "<Group OID B>")
```

• Users that are members of either named group (for AD groups synchronized from a local Active Directory):

```
samlMultiValAttr.
{http://schemas\.microsoft\.com/ws/2008/06/identity/claims/group
s} = ("<Group A>" or "<Group B>")
```

 Users that are members of both named groups (for AD groups synchronized from a local Active Directory):

```
samlMultiValAttr.
{http://schemas\.microsoft\.com/ws/2008/06/identity/claims/group
s} = ("<Group A>" and "<Group B>")
```

 Users that are members of either named group (for AD groups synchronized from a local Active Directory):

```
samlMultiValAttr.<Customized Group Claim Name> = ("<Group A>" or
"<Group B>")
```

• Users that are members of both named groups (for AD groups synchronized from a local Active Directory):

```
samlMultiValAttr.<Customized Group Claim Name> = ("<Group A>"
and "<Group B>")
```

9. To create the User Rule, select Create.

10. Create a new **User Rule Group** and select the User Authentication Policy (Enrollment or Sign-in) that is applicable to this service. Then, in the list of *User Rules*, select the rule you created in the previous step:

d User	Groups		View User Groups Reset fiel
USER GROUP NA	ame I <b>p</b>	(i)	
select an auth User Signir	HENTICATION POLICY	$\sim$ $\triangle$	
SAML Gro	up	í	
SAML Gro USER RI 4 USER RU	ULES ILES NAME ^	() ATTRIBUTE TYPE	EXPRESSION
USER RI 4 USER RU	ULES ILES NAME ^ AllAdminUsers	(I) ATTRIBUTE TYPE USERNAME	EXPRESSION MATCHING " * "
USER RI 4 USER RU	ULES ULES AllAdminUsers AllEnrollmentUsers	() ATTRIBUTE TYPE Username Username	EXPRESSION MATCHING " * " MATCHING " * "
USER RU	ULES LES AllAdminUsers AllEnrollmentUsers AllUsers	ATTRIBUTE TYPE username username username	EXPRESSION MATCHING " * " MATCHING " * " MATCHING " * "

Configuring a User Rule Group with a User Authentication Policy and User Rule

- 11. To create the User Rule Group, select Create.
- 12. Proceed to create your **Secure Access Policy**, selecting the applicable *Application*, *Gateway*, *Device Policy* and the *User Rule Group* created during this procedure.

# Workflow: Creating an Authentication Policy for On-Premises *ICS* SAML

You can choose to use a configured *ICS* server (either remote or local) as an on-premises SAML AD authentication server for your *Controller*.



If you choose to use SAML authentication on your *Controller*, you do not create any users manually. All users will already be present on your remote SAML server.

Configuring *nZTA* to use SAML authentication requires you to create separate SAML apps on the onpremises *ICS* server for the following primary activities:

- User enrollment
- User sign-in

The *Controller* includes built-in default authentication policies for each of these purposes and includes the ability to create your own custom policies for separate authentication of specific groups. You create an authentication method referencing one of the SAML apps described above and then assign the method to an authentication policy of the same type (either the built-in policy, or one you create). Begin with enrollment, and then repeat the process for user sign-in.

To configure *nZTA* to use SAML authentication through *ICS*, perform the following steps:

- 1. Configure your on-premises *ICS* to act as a SAML AD authentication server:
  - Optionally, Configuring Secondary Authentication for On-Premises ICS (Optional).
  - Configuring a SAML Identity Provider in Ivanti Connect Secure.
  - Configuring a Metadata Provider in Ivanti Connect Secure.
- Define an on-premises SAML authentication method, see <u>Defining an On-Premises SAML</u> <u>Authentication Method</u>.
- 3. Configure an on-premises SAML authentication policy, see <u>Defining Authentication Policies for</u> <u>On-Premises SAML Authentication</u>.
- 4. After you complete the User Authentication workflow, configure the SAML apps on the onpremises *ICS* server with the XML metadata configuration from the matching *nZTA* authentication policy, see Configuring ICS with Controller Metadata.



You will need to repeat this process for each required SAML app on your *ICS* server.

To ensure that your users can access the authentication mechanism defined in the policies you configure through this process, make sure your *Secure Access Policies* are configured with a **User Group** in which these authentication policies are defined. To learn more, see <u>Creating/Editing Secure Access</u> <u>Policies</u>.

# **Configuring Secondary Authentication for On-Premises** *ICS* **(Optional)**



This section describes an optional configuration activity for SAML User Authentication on an on-premises *ICS* server.

Multi-Factor Authentication (MFA) is an authentication method by which a computer user is granted access only after successfully presenting two (or more) pieces of evidence (or factors) to an authentication mechanism. The ICS platform supports a number of secondary authentication solutions, and can be configured so that two authentication factors are required by users using a single nZTA user authentication method. Before you configure the on-premises ICS server and Controller for SAML User Authentication, you can choose to configure MFA (secondary) support to ICS.



Before you start this procedure, you must have fully configured a secondary authentication server. For example, *Google OTP (One Time Password)* or *NAS OTP*. For the purposes of this example, an existing local *Google OTP* server is used, but different established secondary authentication methods are also supported.

To configure ICS for secondary authentication:

- 1. Log in to the on-premises *Ivanti Connect Secure* server.
- 2. On the Authentication menu, select Auth. Servers.

The Authentication Servers page appears.

- 3. Under **New**, select the required authentication server type. For example, select *Time based One Time Password (TOTP) Server*.
- 4. Select New Server.

The New Time based One Time Password (TOTP) Server page appears.

- 5. Enter the following parameters for the new server:
  - Add a Name for the server, for example Google OTP.
  - Select the Allow Auto Unlock check box, and set Auto unlock period. For example, 10 minutes.
  - Select the Allow new TOTP user registration to happen via External Port check box.
  - Select the Allow TOTP authentication from Remote Pulse Secure Devices check box.
  - Leave all other parameters as their default settings.
- 6. Select Save Changes.

The new server (Google OTP) is added to the list of Authentication Servers.

- 7. You must now add a new user to the local system. To do this:
  - In the Authentication Servers list, select the hyperlink for the System Local entry.
  - The **Settings** page for *System Local* appears.
  - Select the **Users** tab.
  - Select **New** to create a user.
  - The **New Local User** page appears.
  - Enter details for the user, and ensure that the **Enabled** check box is selected, and that other check boxes are clear.
  - Select Save Changes to create the user.
- 8. Select the Users menu, then select User Realms.

The User Authentication Realms page appears.

- 9. You must now enable secondary authentication. To do this:
  - In the User Authentication Realms list, select the hyperlink for the Users entry.

The **General** page for the Users realm appears.

- Under Additional authentication server, select the Enable additional authentication server check box.
- Set Authentication #2 to Google OTP.
- At the bottom of the page, select **Save Changes**.

You can now configure an Identity Provider in *ICS*, see <u>Configuring a SAML Identity Provider in Ivanti</u> <u>Connect Secure</u>.

## Configuring a SAML Identity Provider in *Ivanti Connect Secure*

This section describes the steps to configure a SAML Identity Provider (IdP) on an on-premises *Ivanti Connect Secure* (*ICS*) server. The metadata for the IdP is required by each SAML user method on *nZTA*.

To configure SAML IdP on the *Ivanti Connect Secure* server:

- 1. Log in to the on-premises *Ivanti Connect Secure* server that is identified as an Identity Provider.
- 2. Navigate to System > Configuration > SAML > Settings.
- 3. Configure the following Metadata Server Configuration:
  - Timeout value for metadata fetch request to 300.
  - Host FQDN for SAML to the Fully Qualified Domain Name, noting the host FQDN guidance below.

The host FQDN specified here is used in the SAML entity ID, used by browsers to connect to *ICS*, and used in the URLs for SAML services. Typically:

- If the *ICS* is standalone, the FQDN should resolve to the IP address of the external interface / internal interface, whichever is chosen.
- If the *ICS* is an Active-Passive cluster, the FQDN should resolve to the external VIP / Internal VIP, whichever is chosen.
- If the *ICS* is an Active-Active cluster behind an in-line load balancer, the FQDN should resolve to the load balancer's external VIP / Internal VIP, whichever is chosen.
- 4. Select Save Changes.
- Select Update Entity IDs and confirm this action on the warning page by selecting Update Entity IDs.
- 6. Navigate to System > Configuration > Certificates > Device Certificate, create a new CSR, and import certificate and keys. Skip this step if the *ICS* external interface / internal interface (whichever is chosen) already provides a certificate that matches the host's Fully Qualified Domain Name.
- 7. Navigate to Authentication > Signing In > Sign In SAML > Identity Provider.
- 8. Locate the the **Basic Identity Provider (IdP) Configuration** section.
- 9. Under Protocol Binding to use for SAML Response:
  - Select the **Post** check box.
  - Clear the **Artifact** check box.
  - Select the required Signing Certificate.

- 10. Under Other Configurations:
  - Select the Accept unsigned AuthnRequest check box.
  - Select sha-256 for Signature Algorithm, if ICS is using 22.x version onwards.
- 11. Under Service-Provider-related IDP Configuration:
  - For **SignIn Policy**, select the */ policy.
- 12. Under **User Identity**:
  - For Subject Name Format, select Email Address.
  - For **Subject Name**, enter <USERNAME>.
  - At the bottom of the page, select **Save Changes**.

You can now configure a Metadata Provider in *ICS*, see <u>Configuring a Metadata Provider in Ivanti</u> Connect Secure.

## Configuring a Metadata Provider in Ivanti Connect Secure

This section describes the steps to configure *Ivanti Connect Secure* to be a Metadata Provider, and to download metadata for use on the *Controller*.

To configure a Metadata Provider in the on-premises ICS server:

- 1. Log in to Ivanti Connect Secure server.
- 2. Navigate to Authentication > Signing-In > Sign In SAML > Metadata Provider.

The SAML Metadata Provider Entity Id property is pre-populated. It is generated by the system, based on the value for the Host FQDN for SAML setting on the **System > Configuration > SAML > Settings** page.

- 3. Set **Metadata Validity** to 365 days.
- 4. Clear the **Do Not Publish IdP in Metadata** check box.
- 5. Select Save Metadata Provider.
- 6. Select **Download Metadata** and save the file to your computer.

This definition file is required to enable on-premises SAML apps on the *Controller*.

You can then configure the *Controller* to use an on-premises SAML Server, see <u>Defining an On-Premises</u> <u>SAML Authentication Method</u>.

### **Defining an On-Premises SAML Authentication Method**

A minimum of two authentication methods are required:

- An authentication method for a SAML enrollment sign-in app.
- An authentication method for a SAML user sign-in app.

To create an on-premises SAML server authentication method for a specific activity, for example, device enrollment:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, select the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Users > Authentication Servers.

The Authentication Servers page appears. This page lists all existing user authentication methods:

Manag	ge Users	6 (i)					
User	Groups	User Rules User Policies	Authentication Servers	_			
	Authentic Local Aut	cation Servers which <b>default</b> OR thentication Servers which have	linked to any <b>User Policy</b> , w one or more users linked to	vill be disabled from deletion them will be disabled from	on. n deletion.		
Action	ns 🗸		+ Create Aut	hentication Server	earch	0 7 1	[] :≡
0	STATUS	NAME 🛧		AUTHENTICATION METHOD	USERS		
0	>	Admin Auth	$\odot$	Local	79 Users		
0	>	auth-test		Local	1 Users		
0	>	az-saml-auth-ProdScript		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A		
0	>	az-saml-enroll-ProdScript		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A		
0	>	az_auth_zta_dfs		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A		
		0		····· /· ··· ··· ··· ··· ··· ··· ··· ··			•
				Rows	perpage: 10 🗸	1 - 10 of 13 found. 🔇	>

User Authentication Methods

3. Select Create Authentication Server.

A form appears that enables you to define the authentication method:

Jer Croups User Rules User Policies Authentication Servers	
reate Authentication Server ()	
hoose Server Name and Authentication Type	
Autentication Server Nerre*	~ 0
waavord Optiona	
Characters $\begin{bmatrix} 101 & \Delta \\ 0 & \phi \end{bmatrix}$ $\begin{bmatrix} 101 & \Delta \\ 122 & \phi \end{bmatrix}$	
esswords must have:	
C (1 ) apts	
(1 A) letters	
Passwords must have mix of UPPERCASE and lowercase letters	
C (1 ) special characters	
New pesswords cen't be similar to the current pessword	
<ul> <li>New passwords can't be similar to the username</li> </ul>	
New persivord must be different from     previous persivords	
Fassword expires after 100 days	
<ul> <li>Allow users to change their pesswords</li> </ul>	
LIST OF LOCAL USERS	CREATE USER     Briten Delete

Creating a user authentication method



At any point during this process, you can reset the form data by selecting **Reset Vields**.

#### 4. Under Choose Server Name and Authentication Type:

• Select the Authentication Type of SAML (Custom).

The form expands to show additional settings:

Create Authentication Server				
authentication methods: Local, SAML (Azure AD), SAML (Custom	n) and	TOTP.		L
Choose Server Name and Authentication Type				
AUTHENTICATION SERVER NAME* sales sami_custom	)(i)	AUTHENTICATION TYPE SAML (Custom)	~)(	ì
Enter SAML details by selecting an option below:				
Auth Metadata:				
Upload SAML Auth metadata file				
<ul> <li>Enter SAML Auth metadata details manually</li> </ul>				
Fields required for SAML Authentication Server				
Allow Unsigned Metadata				
Jownload Auth Service Provider Metadata for IDP				
Upload SAML Auth metadata				
FILE Upload XML				
Single Logout URL				
Single Logout URL				
C Enable Enrollment				
			Cancel	Create Authentication Serve

Configuring SAML (Custom) authentication settings

• Specify an **Authentication Server Name**. For example: *Enrollment* or *SignIn*.

- 5. To provide your SAML IdP settings, select one of the following:
  - Select Upload SAML Auth metadata file if not selected already. This is selected by default.

The Download Auth Service Provider Metadata for IDP link is enabled.

1. (Optional) Specify a **Single Logout URL**. For more information, see <u>Using SAML</u> <u>Single Logout to Force User Authentication</u>.



By default, the *Controller* expects a signed metadata definition file. To allow an unsigned metadata file, select **Allow Unsigned Metadata**.

2. Click the **Download Auth Service Provider Metadata for IDP** link. Retain the downloaded file for later use.

 Select Enter SAML Auth metada details manually to manually enter the required IdP SAML settings. Use this option in scenarios where a SAML federation metadata file is not available or incomplete.

Then, enter the following details:

Enter SAML details by selecting an option below:	
Auth Metadata:	
O Upload SAML Auth metadata file	
Enter SAML Auth metadata details manually	
Fields required for SAML Authentication Server	
IDP Entity ID*	IDP SSO URL*
IDP SLO Service	vser name template * <assertionnamedn.uid></assertionnamedn.uid>
IDP SIGNING CERTIFICATE* Enter a valid base64 encoded certificate	G

Configuring SAML (Azure AD) IdP settings manually

The following minimum settings are required for your SAML authentication service to function correctly. Each setting relates to a value configured in the SAML application on your IdP. Contact your IdP administrator to obtain the relevant details:

- **IDP Entity ID**: The entity ID is sent as the Issuer value in the SAML assertion generated by the IdP. Specify the Issuer value in assertions generated by the SAML identity provider.
- **IDP SSO URL**: A URL provisioned by the SAML IdP to support service-providerinitiated Single Sign-On. Use the format https://<FQDN>.
- IDP SLO Service: (Optional) A URL to specify the Single Log-Out/sign out endpoint if you want to force re-authentication for increased security. Use the format https://<FQDN>. For more information, see <u>Using SAML Single Logout</u> to Force User Authentication.

- User Name Template: Specify how the system is to derive the username from the SAML assertion. The default value can be used, or replaced with an alternative specifier that the *Controller* uses from the incoming assertion. For example: <assertionNameDN.uid>, the NamelD value where *ICS* is the IdP, the UID from X509SubjectName, <userAttr.attr>, attr from AttributeStatement attributes.
- **IDP Signing Certificate**: The signing certificate to be used with the SAML app on the IdP. Type or paste in the contents of your Base-64 encoded public key.

- When editing an existing SAML Auth server, the 'Enable Enrollment' option can be enabled or disabled if the SAML Auth server is not being used in any 'User Policy'. If the SAML Auth server is being used in a 'User Policy', then Enable Enrollment button will be grayed out.



- If 'Enable Enrollment' is not selected, then while creation of 'User Policy' of type 'User', the server you have created (without Enable Enrollment) will not be listed.

- When Enrollment is disabled, the enrollment SAML configuration will be deleted. To enable enrollment, you have to again provide enroll SAML auth server configuration.

6. Confirm that your settings are correct, then select **Create Authentication Server** to create the authentication method.

The new SAML authentication method is added to the list of methods and the process is complete.

- (Optional) To edit a listed authentication method, select the adjacent check box, then select Actions > Edit. Make any required updates and confirm.
- 8. (Optional) To delete one (or more) an *unused* authentication methods, select the check box for each, then select **Actions > Delete**. You must confirm the deletion.

You can now proceed to update the required authentication policy, see <u>Defining Authentication Policies</u> for On-Premises SAML Authentication.

## **Defining Authentication Policies for On-Premises SAML Authentication**

After you have created your SAML authentication method, create or update your authentication policies with the new authentication method.

From the *nZTA* menu, select the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Users > User Policies**.

The User Policies page appears. This page lists all existing user authentication policies.

Man	age User	s (i)						
User Groups User Rules User Policies Authentication Servers Create								Create User Policy
Not To c User	e reate a User r Policies wh	Policy, you need a prerequisit iich are <b>default</b> OR linked to ar	e entity - <b>Au</b> l ny <b>User Grou</b>	hentication Servers. p will be disabled from	selection.			
14 TOT	AL					③ SEARCH	٩	🛱 Batch Delete
	STATUS	NAME 🛧	DEFAULT 🔶	POLICY USER	ACCESS URL	SERVER	SERVER TYPE	DEVICE POLICY
0	>	accounts-auth		user	*/login/accounts/	account-a	SAML (Azu	:
$\bigcirc$	>	accounts-enrollment		enroll	*/login/accountsenro	account-e	SAML (Azu	:
0		Admin Signin	$\odot$	admin	*/login/admin/	Admin Auth	Local	:
0		схо		admin	*/login/cxo/	схо	Local	:
0		cxoics		admin	*/login/cxoics/	cxoics	Local	:
0	>	Enrollment Signin	$\odot$	enroll	*/login/enroll/	AzureAD-E	SAML (Azu	:
0	>	kan_mfa		admin	*/login/QA/	kan-samla	SAML (Azu	:
0		netadmin		admin	*/login/netadmin/	net-admin	Local	:

User Authentication Policies

To learn more about the policies on this page, see <u>Viewing User Authentication Policies</u>.

From this page, either create a new custom policy or edit an existing policy. To add a new custom policy:

#### 1. Select Create User Policy.

The Create Authentication	Policy	form	appears.
---------------------------	--------	------	----------

	r the Authentication F	olicy				
POLICY NAME* Enter a name	(i)	LOGIN URL* */login/your-path		<b>i</b>		
DESCRIPTION Add a description of the Auther	tication Policy					
USER TYPE USER'S	~					
DEVICE POLICY Select a Device Policy	~					
ENROLL DEVICE POLICY Select a Enroll Device Policy	~					
uth Servers						
<b>lote:</b> Only Local and SAML servers wi	l be available for sele	ction as a Primary Auth S	erver.			
server which is selected as se	condary(if applicable,	would not be available i	or selection as primary.			
PRIMARY AUTH SERVER * Select from Local and SAML At	uth Servers 🗸 🗸					
Only Local and TOTP servers wil	be available for sele	tion as a Secondary Aut	h Server.			
a server which is selected as pri	mary(if applicable) w	ould not be available for	selection as secondary.			

Add User Authentication

0

At any point during this process, you can reset the form data by selecting **Reset Fields**.



To learn more about how custom policies are used for user login and enrollment, see Adding Custom Authentication Policies.

2. Enter a Policy Name.

3. Enter a Login URL using the format */login/<path>/.

The URL must start with "*/login/" and cannot contain any special characters. <path> should be set to a unique value reflecting the endpoint URL you want to define for this authentication policy (appended with a backslash):

- In the case of user sign-in policies, this is the URL endpoint (appended to the tenant FQDN) to which new users are invited to connect to enroll or sign-in a device with the *Controller*. Example value: "*/login/saleslogin/".
- In the case of user enrollment policies, this endpoint identifies the enrollment URL to which users are redirected if they attempt to connect to the equivalent sign-in policy with an un-enrolled device. In most cases, you do not advertise this endpoint to your users. Example value: "*/login/salesenroll/".



In some enrollment circumstances, such as when using a device pre-installed with an older version of *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, you connect directly to the enrollment policy endpoint to enroll the device. For more details, see Using User Authentication Policies.

- 4. (Optional) Enter a description for the authentication policy.
- 5. Select a **User Type** based on the intended authentication activity for this policy. Choose from:
  - **Users**: Select this option to define the user sign-in endpoint for enrolled devices. This is the endpoint that you provide to your users to access the service (regardless of enrollment status).
  - **Administrators**: Select this option to define the authentication endpoint for administrator-level sign-in. This endpoint is used for administrator login to the *Controller* only.

6. (for policies with a **User Type** of "Users" only): Select an **Enroll Device Policy** from the dropdown list to be linked to this sign-in policy (as indicated):

POLICY NAME* sales_auth_user_policy	<b>i</b>	(Login urL⁺ */login/your-path	<b>i</b>
DESCRIPTION			
Add a description of the Authentication Policy			
USER TYPE Users	~		
IOSJailBreakRulePolicy	~		
ENROLL DEVICE POLICY IOSJailBreakRulePolicy	~		

Linking an enrollment policy to a user sign-in policy

This is the enrollment policy to which a user is redirected if it is determined that the device is not yet enrolled. To learn more, see Using User Authentication Policies.

7. Under **Policy Server Details**, select **Primary Auth Server** and choose the required authentication method from the drop-down list:

Auth Servers
Note:
Only Local and SAML servers will be available for selection as a Primary Auth Server.
A server which is selected as secondary(if applicable) would not be available for selection as primary.
PRIMARY AUTH SERVER*
Only Local and TOTP servers will be available for selection as a Secondary Auth Server.
A server which is selected as primary(if applicable) would not be available for selection as secondary.
SECONDARY AUTH SERVER

Selecting a primary authentication method for this policy

Alternatively, select *Create Authentication Server* and create a new authentication method as per the steps described earlier in this section.

8. (Optional) Where a secondary method is required for Multi-Factor Authentication, repeat the previous step for **Secondary Auth Server**.



Secondary authentication methods do not apply to *Enrollment User* type policies. The relevant field is hidden in this case.

9. Select **Add** to create the new policy.

The new policy is added to the list of authentication policies.

If you instead elect to update an existing custom or built-in policy:

1. Select the check box adjacent to the relevant policy, then select **Actions > Edit**.

The Edit authentication policy form appears.



For built-in authentication policies, all properties except **Primary Auth Server** and **Secondary Auth Server** (where applicable) are read-only.
2. Set the **Primary Auth Server** to be the new SAML user authentication method (indicated):

Ipdate Authentication Policy	
nter a name and description for the Authentication Policy	
Rocon Have newsdminpolicy	
Sesonmon Add a description of the Authentication Policy	
ueer nive Administrators	
selict #Duor Select a Device Policy	
uth Servers	
ote:	
nly Local and SAML servers will be available for selection as a Primary Auth Server. 	
хорор у	
only Local and TOTP servers will be available for selection as a Secondary Auth Server.	
server which is selected as primary(if applicable) would not be available for selection as secondary.	
seconcer 4/m server None	

Editing the primary auth server

SAML authentication can be used only as a Primary Auth Server. If you are using MFA, specify either a *local authentication* or *TOTP* method as the **Secondary Auth Server**.



If you configure a secondary authentication method in a policy that is currently in use, any active user sessions must be disconnected and reconnected for the changes to take effect.

#### 3. Select Update User Policy.

The list of authentication policies updates.

At this point, the *Controller* uses the uploaded metadata to contact the SAML service. After this process completes, a **Download** function becomes available for the policy. This metadata file is required to configure trusted communication with the remote SAML service. Perform the following steps:

- 1. Refresh your browser until the **Download** action is visible for the relevant policy.
- 2. Select the check box for the policy and clear all other check boxes.
- 3. Select **Download** and save the metadata file.



Repeat these procedures for each required SAML app on your On-Prem *ICS* server. That is, you require separate XML metadata files for your enrollment authentication policy and your sign-in authentication policy.

After you have configured a user authentication policy, you can configure your *ICS* SAML app with the SP Metadata configuration of the *Controller*, see <u>Configuring ICS with Controller Metadata</u>.

## **Configuring ICS with Controller Metadata**

Before the *Controller* can use a SAML server on an on-premises *ICS* server, you must enable communication between each separate SAML app on the *ICS* server and the *Controller*.

To do this, you must configure the SAML apps on the on-premises *ICS* server with the XML metadata configuration file for the *Controller*.

There are a minimum of two SAML apps:

- A SAML app for user enrollment. For example, called *Enrollment*.
- A SAML app during user sign-in. For example, called Signin.



You download the *Controller* XML configuration file when you selected an authentication policy. Alternatively, select the policy, then select **Download** on the **User authentication policies** page, see <u>Viewing User Authentication Policies</u>.

To configure a SAML app on *ICS* with XML from the *Controller*.

- 1. Log into your *ICS* platform.
- 2. Navigate to System > Configuration > SAML.
- 3. Select New Metadata Provider.
- 4. Enter a Name for the metadata provider.
- 5. Under Metadata Provider Location Configuration:
  - For Location, select Local.
  - For **Upload Metadata File**, select **Browse** and select the metadata that you saved on your computer in the previous process (see above).

- 6. Under Metadata Provider Verification Configuration:
  - Select the Accept Unsigned Metadata check box.
- 7. Under Metadata Provider Filter Configuration:
  - For Roles, select the Service Provider check box.
- 8. Select Save Changes.
- 9. Navigate to Authentication > Signing In > Sign-In SAML > Identity Provider.
- 10. In the Configuration section, select Add SP.

The New Peer Service Provider page appears.

- 11. In the **Service Provider Configuration** and **Certificate Status Checking Configuration** sections, make the necessary service provider specific settings. For more details, refer to the "Configuring Sign-in SAML Identity Provider Settings" section in the "*Ivanti Connect Secure* Administration Guide".
- 12. In the Customize IdP Behavior section, select the Override Default Configuration check box.
- 13. Clear the Reuse Existing NC (Pulse) Session check box.
- 14. Select the Accept unsigned AuthnRequest check box.
- 15. At the bottom of the page, select Save Changes.

After the on-premises *ICS* SAML service is configured to connect to the *Controller*, you can then create a user group to apply the newly created authentication policy to your secure applications, see <u>Creating</u> <u>User Rules and User Groups</u>.

# Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy for Okta

*nZTA* supports the use of Okta as a SAML service to provide authentication for your users.

If you choose to use Okta as a SAML Identity Provider (IdP), you do not create any users locally on the *Controller*. All users will already be present in your remote SAML service.

The process to configure Okta as a custom SAML authentication method within *nZTA* involves the following steps:

- 1. Create your Okta application and obtain the SAML IdP metadata, see <u>Creating an Okta SAML</u> <u>Application</u>.
- 2. Define an Okta SAML authentication method in *nZTA* and associate it with your authentication policies, see <u>Defining and Applying Okta Authentication in nZTA</u>.

Configuring *nZTA* to use Okta SAML authentication requires configuration of two separate authentication policies on the *Controller*, *user enrollment* and *user sign-in*. The *Controller* includes built-in default authentication policies for each of these purposes, and also includes the ability to create your own custom policies should you require this authentication mechanism to apply only to a sub-set of your users. Therefore, complete the above steps for each of these policies in turn. Begin with enrollment, and then repeat the process for user sign-in.

To ensure that your users can access the authentication mechanism defined in the policies you configure through this process, make sure your *Secure Access Policies* are configured with a **User Group** in which these authentication policies are defined. To learn more, see <u>Creating/Editing Secure Access</u> Policies.

Before you start, make sure you know the following information:

- The default Assertion Consumer Service (ACS) URL:
  - For the user enrollment policy, the ACS URL uses the form: https://<tenant FQDN>/dana-na/auth/saml-consumer.cgi

(For example, https://zta1.example.com/dana-na/auth/samlconsumer.cgi)

• For the user sign-in policy, the ACS URL uses the form: https://<tenant MTLS FQDN>/dana-na/auth/saml-consumer.cgi

(For example, https://ztal.e.example.com/dana-na/auth/samlconsumer.cgi)

- The SP Entity ID of *nZTA* for your integration:
  - For the user enrollment policy, the SP Entity ID uses the form: https://<tenant FQDN>/dana-na/auth/saml-endpoint.cgi?p=sp1

(For example, https://ztal.example.com/dana-na/auth/samlendpoint.cgi?p=sp1)

• For the user sign-in policy, the SP Entity ID uses the form: https://<tenant MTLS FQDN>/dana-na/auth/saml-endpoint.cgi?p=sp2

(For example, https://ztal.e.example.com/dana-na/auth/samlendpoint.cgi?p=sp2)

### **Creating an Okta SAML Application**



To fully configure Okta as a SAML authenticator in *nZTA*, complete these steps for each of your user enrollment and user sign-in policies in turn.
For the latest configuration details, see Okta Documentation.

To create a new Okta application and obtain the SAML IdP Metadata file:

- 1. Log in to your Okta account and select *Classic UI* mode.
- 2. In the Admin Console, navigate to Applications > Applications.
- 3. Select Add Application.
- 4. Start the Application Integration Wizard by selecting Create New App.
- 5. For Platform, select "Web".
- 6. For Sign-on method, select "SAML 2.0".
- 7. Select Create.
- 8. In the General Settings tab, enter an application name.



*Ivanti* advises using a descriptive name that relates to the user authentication policy this application is created for.

9. (Optional) Upload a logo for the application.

- 10. In the *Configure SAML* tab, enter the following information corresponding to the authentication policy for which you are creating this application.
  - Single sign on URL: Enter your ACS URL
  - Audience URI (SP Entity ID): Enter your nZTA Entity ID
  - Name ID Format: Select "Email Address"
  - Application username: Select "Okta username".
  - (Optional) If you want to use Okta group membership policies to categorize users, complete the Fill in Group Attribute Statements section to filter users by group membership in the SAML assertion.

For example, to set a filter that returns all groups to which the user is assigned, you might enter the following details:

- Name: ZTAGroups
- **Filter**: Matches Regex
- Value: .*

For more information, see Using Okta Group Attribute Statements to Categorize Users.

- For all other fields, use the default values.
- 11. Select **Next** to continue.
- 12. For Are you a customer or partner?, select the option that is most applicable.
- 13. Select Finish.

The Settings page for your application appears.

14. In the *Sign On* tab, download the **Identity Provider metadata** file. Save this file to your local workstation.

- 15. In the *Applications* tab, select **Assign Applications**. Then select **Assign to People** or **Assign to Groups** as per your requirements.
  - For each user or group you want to assign to your application, select **Assign** against the respective item.
  - After you have completed your assignments, select **Done**.
- 16. Proceed to define a new authentication method in *nZTA*, see <u>Defining and Applying Okta</u> Authentication in nZTA.

## **Using Okta Group Attribute Statements to Categorize Users**



This section is applicable only to scenarios where Okta SAML authentication is augmented with user categorization through group attribute policies.

To configure Okta with group membership policies, and to enable *nZTA* to query these policies when authenticating access requests, add *Group Attribute Statements* to your Okta user enrollment and user sign-in applications. Then, update your enrollment and sign-in *User Rules* within *nZTA* to use the corresponding *Custom* SAML attributes.

The following table lists common Okta *Group Attribute Statements*, designed to return matching user groups in a SAML assertion:



The attribute name "ZTAGroups" is used here as an example. Use the attribute tag which corresponds to your Okta group configuration.

Okta Group Attribute Name	Okta Group Attribute Filter	Groups Returned
ZTAGroups	Contains: ZTA	All groups containing "ZTA" (ignores case)
ZTAGroups	StartsWith: ZTA	All groups starting with "ZTA" (ignores case)
ZTAGroups	Equals: ZTAUsers	The "ZTAUsers" group only
ZTAGroups	Matches regex: .*	All groups to which the user is assigned

The following are examples of Okta custom SAML expressions for use within nZTAUser Rules:

• Users that are members of only the named group:

userAttr.ZTAGroups = "ZTAGroup1"

• Users that are members of either named group:

userAttr.ZTAGroups = ("ZTAGroup1" or "ZTAGroup2")

• Users that are members of either named group, or both groups:

samlMultiValAttr.ZTAGroups = ("ZTAGroup1" or "ZTAGroup2")

• Users that are only members of both named groups:

samlMultiValAttr.ZTAGroups = ("ZTAGroup1" and "ZTAGroup2")

• Users that are members of "ZTAGroup1", but not members of "ZTAGroup2":

samlMultiValAttr.ZTAGroups = "ZTAGroup1" and samlMultiValAttr.ZTAGroups != "ZTAGroup2"

 Users that are members of either "ZTAGroup1" or "ZTAGroup2", or both groups, and also a member of "ZTAGroup3":

```
samlMultiValAttr.ZTAGroups = ("ZTAGroup1" or "ZTAGroup2") and
samlMultiValAttr.ZTAGroups = "ZTAGroup3"
```

To learn more about adding custom SAML user rules, see Creating User Rules.

## Defining and Applying Okta Authentication in nZTA



To fully configure Okta as a SAML authenticator in *nZTA*, complete these steps for each of your user enrollment and user sign-in policies in turn.

To define a new authentication method using Okta as the SAML IdP:

1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see <u>Logging in as a Tenant Administrator</u>.

The Network Overview page appears.

 From the *nZTA* menu, select the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Users > Authentication Server.

The Authentication Server page appears. This page lists all existing user authentication methods.

3. To add a new custom SAML authentication method, select Create Authentication Server.

The Create Authentication Server form appears:

Jser Groups User Rules User Policies Authentication Servers	
reate Authentication Server ()	
hoose Server Name and Authentication Type	
Authentication Server Name*	~ 0
sseword Options	
herecters $\begin{bmatrix} uu & \Delta \\ \delta & \phi \end{bmatrix}$ $\begin{bmatrix} uu & \Delta \\ 128 & \phi \end{bmatrix}$	
esswords must heve:	
C 1 total	
Passwords must have mix of UPPERCASE and lowercase letters	
1	
New passwords can't be similar to the current password	
New passwords can't be similar to the username	
New password must be different from $1 \longrightarrow$ previous passwords	
Password expires after 100 days	
<ul> <li>Allow users to change their pesswords</li> </ul>	
JIST OF LOCAL USERS	CREATE USER     Batch Delete
	1

Creating an authentication server



At any point during this process, you can reset the form data by selecting Reset Fields.

#### 4. Under Choose Server Name and Authentication Type:

• Select the Authentication Type of SAML (Custom).

The form expands to show additional settings:

User Groups User Rules User Policies Authenti	ication Serve	ers
Create Authentication Server 🤅		
Create Authentication Server		
An authentication method is referenced from one or more a authentication methods: Local, SAML (Azure AD), SAML (Cu	uthentication stom) and TC	on policies. nSA supports user authentication through the following user OTP.
Choose Server Name and Authentication Type		
Authentication berver name ' SAML_Okta_Sign-in	í	SAML (Custom)
Upload SAML Auth metadata file  Enter SAML Auth metadata details manually Fields required for SAML Authentication Server  Allow Unsigned Metadata  Download Auth Service Provider Metadata for II Upload SAML Auth metadata  Fit	DP	
Upload XML		
Single Logout URL		
C Enable Enrollment		

Configuring Okta SAML authentication settings

- Specify an **Authentication Server Name**. For example: SAML_Okta_Enroll or SAML_Okta_ SignIn.
- 5. (Optional) Specify a **Single Logout URL**. For more information, see <u>Using SAML Single Logout to</u> Force User Authentication.

- 6. To provide your SAML IdP settings, select one of the following:
  - Select **Upload SAML Auth metadata file** to upload a digitally-signed (or unsigned) Okta Identity Provider (IdP) metadata file, as obtained while creating a new Okta SAML application for this activity. That is, for either user enrollment or user sign-in. See <u>Creating</u> an Okta SAML Application.

The Download Auth Service Provider Metadata for IDP link is enabled.

 (Optional) Specify a Single Logout URL. For more information, see <u>Using SAML</u> Single Logout to Force User Authentication.



By default, the *Controller* expects a signed metadata definition file. To allow an unsigned metadata file, select **Allow Unsigned Metadata**.

2. Click the **Download Auth Service Provider Metadata for IDP** link. Retain the downloaded file for later use.

 Select Enter SAML Auth metada details manually to manually enter the required IdP SAML settings. Use this option in scenarios where a SAML federation metadata file is not available or incomplete.

Then, enter the following details:

Enter SAML details by selecting an option below:		
Auth Metadata:		
O Upload SAML Auth metadata file		
Enter SAML Auth metadata details manually		
Fields required for SAML Authentication Server		
IDP Entity ID*	IDP SSO URL*	)(i)
IDP SLO Service	user NAME TEMPLATE * <assertionnamedn.uid></assertionnamedn.uid>	)(i)
IDP SIGNING CERTIFICATE * Enter a valid base64 encoded certificate		í

Configuring SAML (Custom) IdP settings manually

The following minimum settings are required for your SAML authentication service to function correctly. Each setting relates to a value configured in the SAML application on your IdP. Contact your IdP administrator to obtain the relevant details:

- **IDP Entity ID**: The entity ID is sent as the Issuer value in the SAML assertion generated by the IdP. Specify the Issuer value in assertions generated by the SAML identity provider.
- **IDP SSO URL**: A URL provisioned by the SAML IdP to support service-providerinitiated Single Sign-On. Use the format https://<FQDN>.
- IDP SLO Service: (Optional) A URL to specify the Single Log-Out/sign out endpoint if you want to force re-authentication for increased security. Use the format https://<FQDN>. For more information, see <u>Using SAML Single Logout</u> to Force User Authentication.

- User Name Template: Specify how the system is to derive the username from the SAML assertion. The default value can be used, or replaced with an alternative specifier that the *Controller* uses from the incoming assertion. For example: <assertionNameDN.uid>, the NamelD value where *ICS* is the IdP, the UID from X509SubjectName, <userAttr.attr>, attr from AttributeStatement attributes.
- **IDP Signing Certificate**: The signing certificate to be used with the SAML app on the IdP. Type or paste in the contents of your Base-64 encoded public key.

0

If, at a later date, you need to replace the metadata definition file with a modified version, edit the authentication method through the *User Authentication* page and repeat this step. Either edit the existing metadata file and re-upload, or replace it completely with a new version. In both cases, however, make sure your metadata file is valid before uploading it through this process.

7. If this Auth server is used with User Policy of type "User", then click Enable Enrollment.

Enable Enrollment

- 8. To provide your SAML IdP settings, select one of the following:
  - Select Upload SAML Enroll metadata file if not selected already. This is selected by default.
    - 1. (Optional) Specify a **Single Logout URL**. For more information, see <u>Using SAML</u> <u>Single Logout to Force User Authentication</u>.



By default, the *Controller* expects a signed metadata definition file. To allow an unsigned metadata file, select **Allow Unsigned Metadata**.

2. Click the Download Enroll Service Provider Metadata for IDP link.

 Select Enter SAML Enroll metada details manually to manually enter the required IdP SAML settings. Use this option in scenarios where a SAML federation metadata file is not available or incomplete.

Then, enter the following details:

L		

Configuring SAML (Azure AD) IdP settings manually

The following minimum settings are required for your SAML authentication service to function correctly. Each setting relates to a value configured in the SAML application on your IdP. Contact your IdP administrator to obtain the relevant details:

- **IDP Entity ID**: The entity ID is sent as the Issuer value in the SAML assertion generated by the IdP. Specify the Issuer value in assertions generated by the SAML identity provider.
- **IDP SSO URL**: A URL provisioned by the SAML IdP to support service-providerinitiated Single Sign-On. Use the format https://<FQDN>.
- IDP SLO Service: (Optional) A URL to specify the Single Log-Out/sign out endpoint if you want to force re-authentication for increased security. Use the format https://<FQDN>. For more information, see <u>Using SAML Single Logout</u> to Force User Authentication.
- User Name Template: Specify how the system is to derive the username from the SAML assertion. The default value can be used, or replaced with an alternative specifier that the *Controller* uses from the incoming assertion. For example:
   <assertionNameDN.uid>, the NameID value where *ICS* is the IdP, the UID from X509SubjectName, <userAttr.attr>, attr from AttributeStatement attributes.
- **IDP Signing Certificate**: The signing certificate to be used with the SAML app on the IdP. Type or paste in the contents of your Base-64 encoded public key.

- When editing an existing SAML Auth server, the 'Enable Enrollment' option can be enabled or disabled if the SAML Auth server is not being used in any 'User Policy'. If the SAML Auth server is being used in a 'User Policy', then Enable Enrollment button will be grayed out.



- If 'Enable Enrollment' is not selected, then while creation of 'User Policy' of type 'User', the server you have created (without Enable Enrollment) will not be listed.

- When Enrollment is disabled, the enrollment SAML configuration will be deleted. To enable enrollment, you have to again provide enroll SAML auth server configuration.

9. Confirm that your settings are correct, then select **Create Authentication Server** to create the authentication method.

The Authentication Server page lists the new Okta authentication method.

After you have created your Okta authentication method, create or update your authentication policies with the new authentication method:

1. From the *nZTA* menu, select the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Users > User Policies**.

The User Policies page appears. This page lists all existing user authentication policies.

Man	age Users	s (i)						
Use	er Groups	User Rules User Policies	Authent	tication Servers				Cre
Not To c Use	e rreate a User r Policies wh	Policy, you need a prerequisite ich are <b>default</b> OR linked to an	e entity - <b>Aut</b> Iy <b>User Grou</b>	hentication Servers p will be disabled fro	om selection.			
14 TOT	AL					③ SEARCH	Q	l
	STATUS	NAME 🛧	DEFAULT 🔶	POLICY USER	ACCESS URL	SERVER	SERVER TYPE	DEVIC
0	>	accounts-auth		user	*/login/accounts/	account-a	SAML (Azu	
$\bigcirc$	>	accounts-enrollment		enroll	*/login/accountsenro	account-e	SAML (Azu	
0		Admin Signin	$\odot$	admin	*/login/admin/	Admin Auth	Local	
0		схо		admin	*/login/cxo/	схо	Local	
0		cxoics		admin	*/login/cxoics/	cxoics	Local	
0	>	Enrollment Signin	$\odot$	enroll	*/login/enroll/	AzureAD-E	SAML (Azu	
0	>	kan_mfa		admin	*/login/QA/	kan-samla	SAML (Azu	
0		netadmin		admin	*/login/netadmin/	net-admin	Local	

User Authentication Policies

To learn more about the policies on this page, see Viewing User Authentication Policies.

From this page, either create a new custom policy or edit an existing policy.

2. To add a new custom policy, select **Create User Policy**.

The Create Authenticat	on Policy form appears.
------------------------	-------------------------

Create User Policies 🔅				
Create Authentication Poli	Cy	oliay		
Linter a hame and description for	The Authentication P	Uncy		
POLICY NAME* Enter a name	i	(LOGIN URL* */login/your-path	(i)	
DESCRIPTION				
Add a description of the Authenti	cation Policy			
User type Users	~			
Select a Device Policy	~			
ENROLL DEVICE POLICY Select a Enroll Device Policy	~			
Auth Servers				
Note:				
Only Local and SAML servers will	be available for selec	tion as a Primary Auth Serve	r.	
A server which is selected as seco	ndary(if applicable)	would not be available for se	election as primary.	
PRIMARY AUTH SERVER - Select from Local and SAML Aut	n Servers			
Only Local and TOTP servers will b	e available for selec	tion as a Secondary Auth Se	rver.	
A server which is selected as prin	ary(if applicable) wo	ould not be available for selec	ction as secondary.	
SECONDARY AUTH SERVER Select from Local and TOTP Auth	Servers 🗸			
				[

#### Add User Authentication



At any point during this process, you can reset the form data by selecting Reset Fields.



To learn more about how custom policies are used for user login and enrollment, see Adding Custom Authentication Policies.

3. Enter a **Policy Name**.

4. Enter a Login URL using the format */login/<path>/.

The URL must start with "*/login/" and cannot contain any special characters. <path> should be set to a unique value reflecting the endpoint URL you want to define for this authentication policy (appended with a backslash):

- In the case of user sign-in policies, this is the URL endpoint (appended to the tenant FQDN) to which new users are invited to connect to enroll or sign-in a device with the *Controller*. Example value: "*/login/saleslogin/".
- In the case of user enrollment policies, this endpoint identifies the enrollment URL to which users are redirected if they attempt to connect to the equivalent sign-in policy with an un-enrolled device. In most cases, you do not advertise this endpoint to your users. Example value: "*/login/salesenroll/".



In some enrollment circumstances, such as when using a device pre-installed with an older version of *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, you connect directly to the enrollment policy endpoint to enroll the device. For more details, see Using User Authentication Policies.

- 5. (Optional) Enter a description for the authentication policy.
- 6. Select a **User Type** based on the intended authentication activity for this policy. Choose from:
  - **Users**: Select this option to define the user sign-in endpoint for enrolled devices. This is the endpoint that you provide to your users to access the service (regardless of enrollment status).
  - **Administrators**: Select this option to define the authentication endpoint for administrator-level sign-in. This endpoint is used for administrator login to the *Controller* only.

7. (for policies with a **User Type** of "Users" only): Select an **Enroll Device Policy** from the dropdown list to be linked to this sign-in policy (as indicated):

POLICY NAME* sales_auth_user_policy	Inclin url. */login/your-path	(i)
DESCRIPTION		
Add a description of the Authentica	tion Policy	
USER TYPE	~	
03613		
DEVICE POLICY		
IOSJailBreakRulePolicy		
ENROLL DEVICE POLICY		
IOSJailBreakRulePolicy	~)	

Linking an enrollment policy to a user sign-in policy

This is the enrollment policy to which a user is redirected if it is determined that the device is not yet enrolled. To learn more, see Using User Authentication Policies.

8. Under **Policy Server Details**, select **Primary Auth Server** and choose the required authentication method from the drop-down list:

Auth Servers
Note:
Only Local and SAML servers will be available for selection as a Primary Auth Server.
A server which is selected as secondary(if applicable) would not be available for selection as primary.
Only Local and TOTP servers will be available for selection as a Secondary Auth Server.
A server which is selected as primary(if applicable) would not be available for selection as secondary.
SECONDARY AUTH SERVER

Selecting a primary authentication method for this policy

Alternatively, select *Add New Server* and create a new authentication method as per the steps described earlier in this section.

9. (Optional) Where a secondary method is required for Multi-Factor Authentication, repeat the previous step for **Secondary Auth Server**.



Secondary authentication methods do not apply to *Enrollment User* type policies. The relevant field is hidden in this case.

10. Select Add to create the new policy.

The new policy is added to the list of authentication policies.

If you instead elect to update an existing custom or built-in policy:

1. Select the check box adjacent to the relevant policy, then select Actions > Edit.

The Update Authentication Policy form appears.



For built-in authentication policies, all properties except **Primary Auth Server** are readonly.

Set the Primary Auth Server to be the new Okta SAML user authentication method:



SAML authentication can be used only as a Primary Auth Server. If you are using MFA, specify either a *local authentication* or *TOTP* method as the **Secondary Auth Server**.



If you configure a secondary authentication method in a policy that is currently in use, any active user sessions must be disconnected and reconnected for the changes to take effect.

3. Select Update User Policy.

The list of authentication policies updates.

Complete these steps for each of your user enrollment and user sign-in policies in turn.

# Workflow: Creating a SAML Authentication Policy for Ping Identity

*nZTA* supports the use of Ping Identity (PingID) as a SAML service to provide authentication for your users.

If you choose to use PingID as a SAML Identity Provider (IdP), you do not create any users locally on the *Controller*. All users will already be present in your remote SAML service.

The process to configure PingID as a custom SAML authentication method within *nZTA* involves the following steps:

- 1. Create your PingID application and obtain the SAML IdP metadata, see <u>Creating a PingID SAML</u> <u>Application</u>.
- 2. Define a PingID SAML authentication method in *nZTA* and associate it with your authentication policies, see <u>Defining and Applying PingID Authentication in nZTA</u>.
- 3. Obtain the *nZTA* Service Provider (SP) metadata and upload it back to the PingID application, see Updating Your PingID SAML Application with Your SP Metadata.

Configuring *nZTA* to use PingID SAML authentication requires configuration of two separate authentication policies on the *Controller*, *user enrollment* and *user sign-in*. The *Controller* includes built-in default authentication policies for each of these purposes, and also includes the ability to create your own custom policies should you require this authentication mechanism to apply only to a sub-set of your users. Therefore, complete the above steps for each of these policies in turn. Begin with enrollment, and then repeat the process for user sign-in.

To ensure that your users can access the authentication mechanism defined in the policies you configure through this process, make sure your *Secure Access Policies* are configured with a **User Group** in which these authentication policies are defined. To learn more, see <u>Creating/Editing Secure Access</u> <u>Policies</u>.

# **Creating a PingID SAML Application**



To fully configure PingID as a SAML authenticator in *nZTA*, complete these steps for each of your user enrollment and user sign-in policies in turn.
For the latest configuration details, see PingIdentity Documentation.

To create a new PingID application and obtain the SAML IdP Metadata file:

 Log in to the *PingOne* web portal (<u>https://admin.pingone.com</u>) and navigate to **My** Applications. 2. Select Add Application > New SAML Application:

PingC	)ne"		DASHBOARD	APPLICATIONS	USERS	SETUP	ACCOUNT		0	surendra n	Sign Off
	My Applications	Application Catalog	PingID SDK	Applications	OAuth Se	ettings					
	My Applicatio	ons									
	Applications you've a <i>Active</i> applicatio <i>Details</i> displays	added to your account a ons are enabled for singl the application details.	re listed here. e sign-on (SS(	You can search D).	n by applic	ation nar	ne, descript	tion or entityId			
	Applicatio	on Name	Туре	9	Status			Enabled			
	zendesl	k	SA	ML	Active	e		Yes	Remove		
	Add Application - Search Application New SAML Appli Request Ping Ide	on Catalog cation entity add a new applica	tion to the app	lication catalog					Paus	e All SSO 🛛	-
© 2003	- 2020 Ping Identity	Corporation. All rights re	eserved.							Privacy   Te	erms   Abou

Adding a PingID application

3. In the *Application Details* step, enter an **Application Name** and **Application Description** for the new application:

	d here. You can sear	ch by application name, o	description or entityId	
e applications are enabled for single sign- iils displays the application details.	on (SSO).			
Application Name	Туре	Status	Enabled	
zendesk	SAML	Active	Yes	Remove
New Application	SAML	Incomplete	No	
unnication Details				
Application Nam		GIDP ENOLL	*	
Application Descriptio		ROLL	×	
, pproducti D costipilo				
		//		
		Max 500 characters		
Categor	y Engineering	✓ *		
Graphic	S Application Icon	ı	Application Logo	
	For use on the	dock	For use on the previous version of the dock	of
	No Image Available		Nolman	
			Available	
	Change		Change	
	Max Size: 256px x 2	256px	Max Size: 400px x 112px	

Entering a name and description for your new PingID application



*Ivanti* advises using a descriptive name that relates to the user authentication policy this application is created for.

4. Select Continue to Next Step.

In the *Application Configuration* step, locate the **SAML Metadata** field and select the adjacent
 **Download** link to obtain the SAML metadata file. Save this file to your local workstation:

New Application	SAME	mcompiete		
Application Configuration				
I have the SAML configuration		I have the S	SOURL	
You will need to download this SAML metad	ata to configure the	application:		
Signing Certificate	PingOne Univer	rsal Certificate 🗸		
SAML Metadata	Download			
Provide SAML details about the application y	ou are connecting	to:		
Protocol Version	SAML v 2.0	⊖ SAML v 1.1		
Upload Metadata 🛛 💿	Select File	Dr use URL		
Assertion Consumer Service (ACS)	https://sso.exam		*	
Entity ID			*	
Application URL				
Single Logout Endpoint @				
Single Logout Response Endpoint @				
Single Logout Binding Type	○ Redirect ○ P	ost		
Primary Verification Certificate @	Choose File N	o file chosen		
Secondary Verification Certificate @	Choose File N	o file chosen		
Encrypt Assertion @				
Signing @	Sign Assertion	n 🔿 Sign Response		
Signing Algorithm @	RSA_SHA256	~		
Force Re-authentication @				
Keep the following in mind when creating yo	ur connection:			
1. Both SP- and IdP-Initiated SS	O are allowed			

Downloading the PingID application IdP metadata file

- 6. Keep this browser page open in order to finish creating the application after you have obtained the SP metadata file from *nZTA*.
- 7. Proceed to define a new authentication method in *nZTA*, see <u>Defining and Applying PingID</u> Authentication in nZTA.

## Defining and Applying PingID Authentication in nZTA



To fully configure PingID as a SAML authenticator in *nZTA*, complete these steps for each of your user enrollment and user sign-in policies in turn.

To define a new authentication method using PingID as the SAML IdP:

1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see <u>Logging in as a Tenant Administrator</u>.

The Network Overview page appears.

 From the *nZTA* menu, select the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Users > Authentication Servers.

The Authentication Servers page appears. This page lists all existing user authentication methods.

3. To add a new custom SAML authentication method, select Create Authentication Server.

The Create Authentication Server form appears:

Manage Users 🕢				
User Groups User Rules Use	Authentication Server	<u> </u>		
Create Authentication Serve	r 🛈			
Choose Server Name and Authentica	stion Type			
Authentication Server Name*	) © (i	AUTHENTICATION TYPE Local	~ •	
Password Options				
Characters MIN & MAX 128	 ⊽			
Pasawords must have.				
🗆 🚺 🚔 digits				
Passwords must have mix of i	UPPERCASE and lowercase letters			
1     special characte	ra			
<ul> <li>New passwords can't be simil</li> </ul>	lar to the current password			
<ul> <li>New passwords can't be simil username</li> </ul>	lar to the			
New password must be differ	rent from 1 v previous pas	swords		
Password expires after 180	days			
Allow users to change their p	esswords			
USER(S) FOUND			CREATE USER     Betch D	elete
	FULL NAME	EMAIL	CHANGE PASSWORD	-
			Cancel Create Authenticati	ion Server

Adding a user authentication method

6

At any point during this process, you can reset the form data by selecting Reset Fields.

#### 4. Under Choose Authentication Name and Type:

• Select the Authentication Type of SAML (Custom).

The form expands to show additional settings:

Manage Users 🤅	
User Groups User Rules User Policies Authentication	1 Servers
Create Authentication Server (i)	
Create Authentication Server An authentication method is referenced from one or more authenti authentication methods: Local, SAML (Azure AD), SAML (Custom) s	tication policies. nSA supports user authentication through the following user Select Fields and TOTP.
Choose Server Name and Authentication Type	
AUTHEINTICATION SERVER NAME * sales_bingid	C SAML (Custom)
Enter SAML details by selecting an option below:	
Auth Metadata:	
<ul> <li>Upload SAML Auth metadata file</li> </ul>	
O Enter SAML Auth metadata details manually	
Fields required for SAML Authentication Server	
Allow Unsigned Metadata	
Download Auth Service Provider Metadata for IDP	
PiLE	
Upload XML	
Single Logout URL	
Single Logout URL	
C Enable Enrollment	
	Cancel Create Authentication Server

Configuring PingID SAML authentication settings

• Specify an **Authentication Server Name**. For example: *SAML_Ping_Enroll* or *SAML_Ping_SignIn*.

- 5. To provide your SAML IdP settings, select one of the following:
  - Select Upload SAML Auth metadata file to upload a digitally-signed (or unsigned)
     PingID Identity Provider (IdP) metadata file, as obtained while creating a new PingID
     SAML application for this activity. That is, for either user enrollment or user sign-in. See
     Creating a PingID SAML Application.

The Download Auth Service Provider Metadata for IDP link is enabled.

 (Optional) Specify a Single Logout URL. For more information, see <u>Using SAML</u> Single Logout to Force User Authentication.



By default, the *Controller* expects a signed metadata definition file. To allow an unsigned metadata file, select **Allow Unsigned Metadata**.

 Click the Download Auth Service Provider Metadata for IDP link. Retain the downloaded file for later use.  Select Enter SAML Auth metada details manually to manually enter the required IdP SAML settings. Use this option in scenarios where a SAML federation metadata file is not available or incomplete.

Then, enter the following details:

Enter SAML details by selecting an option below:	
Auth Metadata:	
O Upload SAML Auth metadata file	
Enter SAML Auth metadata details manually	
Fields required for SAML Authentication Server	
IDP Entity ID*	IDP SSO URL*
IDP SLO Service	vser name template * <assertionnamedn.uid></assertionnamedn.uid>
IDP SIGNING CERTIFICATE* Enter a valid base64 encoded certificate	G

Configuring SAML (Custom) IdP settings manually

The following minimum settings are required for your SAML authentication service to function correctly. Each setting relates to a value configured in the SAML application on your IdP. Contact your IdP administrator to obtain the relevant details:

- **IDP Entity ID**: The entity ID is sent as the Issuer value in the SAML assertion generated by the IdP. Specify the Issuer value in assertions generated by the SAML identity provider.
- **IDP SSO URL**: A URL provisioned by the SAML IdP to support service-providerinitiated Single Sign-On. Use the format https://<FQDN>.
- IDP SLO Service: (Optional) A URL to specify the Single Log-Out/sign out endpoint if you want to force re-authentication for increased security. Use the format https://<FQDN>. For more information, see <u>Using SAML Single Logout</u> to Force User Authentication.

- User Name Template: Specify how the system is to derive the username from the SAML assertion. The default value can be used, or replaced with an alternative specifier that the *Controller* uses from the incoming assertion. For example: <assertionNameDN.uid>, the NamelD value where *ICS* is the IdP, the UID from X509SubjectName, <userAttr.attr>, attr from AttributeStatement attributes.
- **IDP Signing Certificate**: The signing certificate to be used with the SAML app on the IdP. Type or paste in the contents of your Base-64 encoded public key.



If, at a later date, you need to replace the metadata definition file with a modified version, edit the authentication method through the *User Authentication* page and repeat this step. Either edit the existing metadata file and re-upload, or replace it completely with a new version. In both cases, however, make sure your metadata file is valid before uploading it through this process.

6. If this Auth server is used with User Policy of type "User", then click Enable Enrollment.

- 7. To provide your SAML IdP settings, select one of the following:
  - Select Upload SAML Enroll metadata file if not selected already. This is selected by default.
    - 1. (Optional) Specify a **Single Logout URL**. For more information, see <u>Using SAML</u> <u>Single Logout to Force User Authentication</u>.



By default, the *Controller* expects a signed metadata definition file. To allow an unsigned metadata file, select **Allow Unsigned Metadata**.

2. Click the Download Enroll Service Provider Metadata for IDP link.

 Select Enter SAML Enroll metada details manually to manually enter the required IdP SAML settings. Use this option in scenarios where a SAML federation metadata file is not available or incomplete.

The following minimum settings are required for your SAML authentication service to function correctly. Each setting relates to a value configured in the SAML application on your IdP. Contact your IdP administrator to obtain the relevant details:

- **IDP Entity ID**: The entity ID is sent as the Issuer value in the SAML assertion generated by the IdP. Specify the Issuer value in assertions generated by the SAML identity provider.
- **IDP SSO URL**: A URL provisioned by the SAML IdP to support service-providerinitiated Single Sign-On. Use the format https://<FQDN>.
- IDP SLO Service: (Optional) A URL to specify the Single Log-Out/sign out endpoint if you want to force re-authentication for increased security. Use the format https://<FQDN>. For more information, see <u>Using SAML Single Logout</u> to Force User Authentication.
- User Name Template: Specify how the system is to derive the username from the SAML assertion. The default value can be used, or replaced with an alternative specifier that the *Controller* uses from the incoming assertion. For example: <assertionNameDN.uid>, the NameID value where *ICS* is the IdP, the UID from X509SubjectName, <userAttr.attr>, attr from AttributeStatement attributes.
- **IDP Signing Certificate**: The signing certificate to be used with the SAML app on the IdP. Type or paste in the contents of your Base-64 encoded public key.

- When editing an existing SAML Auth server, the 'Enable Enrollment' option can be enabled or disabled if the SAML Auth server is not being used in any 'User Policy'. If the SAML Auth server is being used in a 'User Policy', then Enable Enrollment button will be grayed out.



- If 'Enable Enrollment' is not selected, then while creation of 'User Policy' of type 'User', the server you have created (without Enable Enrollment) will not be listed.

- When Enrollment is disabled, the enrollment SAML configuration will be deleted. To enable enrollment, you have to again provide enroll SAML auth server configuration.

 Confirm that your settings are correct, then select Create Authentication Server to create the authentication method.

The Authentication Server page lists the new PingID authentication method.

After you have created your PingID authentication method, create or update your authentication policies with the new authentication method:

1. From the *nZTA* menu, select the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Users > User Policies**.

The User Policies page appears. This page lists all existing user authentication policies.

Man	age Usei	rs (i)						
Use	er Groups	User Rules User Policie	s Authen	tication Servers				Create User Policy
Not To c Use	e rreate a Use r Policies w	r Policy, you need a prerequisi hich are <b>default</b> OR linked to a	te entity - <b>Aut</b> ny <b>User Grou</b>	<b>hentication Server</b> <b>p</b> will be disabled fr	s. rom selection.			
14 TOT	AL					③ SEARCH	Q	🗑 Batch Delete
	STATUS	NAME 🛧	DEFAULT 🔶	POLICY USER	ACCESS URL	SERVER	SERVER TYPE	DEVICE POLICY
	>	accounts-auth		user	*/login/accounts/	account-a	SAML (Azu	:
0	>	accounts-enrollment		enroll	*/login/accountsenro	account-e	SAML (Azu	:
0		Admin Signin	$\odot$	admin	*/login/admin/	Admin Auth	Local	:
0		схо		admin	*/login/cxo/	схо	Local	:
0		cxoics		admin	*/login/cxoics/	cxoics	Local	:
0	>	Enrollment Signin	$\odot$	enroll	*/login/enroll/	AzureAD-E	SAML (Azu	:
	>	kan_mfa		admin	*/login/QA/	kan-samla	SAML (Azu	:
		netadmin		admin	*/login/netadmin/	net-admin	Local	:

**User Authentication Policies** 

To learn more about the policies on this page, see Viewing User Authentication Policies.

From this page, either create a new custom policy or edit an existing policy.

2. To add a new custom policy, select Create User Policy.

The Create Authentication Policy form appears.

create osci i olicies ()				
Create Authentication P	olicy			
Enter a name and description f	or the Authentication Po	licy		
		(100mum +		
Enter a name	(i)	*/login/your-path	(1)	
DESCRIPTION				
	nationalism Delian.			
Add a description of the Autrie	included on Policy		J	
1000				
Users	~]			
Select a Device Policy	~			
Select a Enroll Device Policy	~			
·	)			
Auth Servers				
Note:				
Only Local and SAML servers v	vill be available for select	ion as a Primary Auth Server.		
4 server which is selected as s	econdary(ir applicable) v	vouid not be available for select	ion as primary.	
PRIMARY AUTH SERVER - Select from Local and SAML	Auth Servers			
	)			
Only Local and TOTP servers w	ill be available for selecti	on as a Secondary Auth Server		
A server which is selected as p	rimary(if applicable) wou	Ild not be available for selection	n as secondary.	
SECONDARY AUTH SERVER				
Select from Local and TOTP A	Auth Servers			

Create User Authentication



At any point during this process, you can reset the form data by selecting **Reset Fields**.



To learn more about how custom policies are used for user login and enrollment, see Adding Custom Authentication Policies.

3. Enter a Policy Name.

4. Enter a Login URL using the format */login/<path>/.

The URL must start with "*/login/" and cannot contain any special characters. <path> should be set to a unique value reflecting the endpoint URL you want to define for this authentication policy (appended with a backslash):

- In the case of user sign-in policies, this is the URL endpoint (appended to the tenant FQDN) to which new users are invited to connect to enroll or sign-in a device with the *Controller*. Example value: "*/login/saleslogin/".
- In the case of user enrollment policies, this endpoint identifies the enrollment URL to which users are redirected if they attempt to connect to the equivalent sign-in policy with an un-enrolled device. In most cases, you do not advertise this endpoint to your users. Example value: "*/login/salesenroll/".



In some enrollment circumstances, such as when using a device preinstalled with an older version of *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, you connect directly to the enrollment policy endpoint to enroll the device. For more details, see <u>Using User Authentication Policies</u>.

- 5. (Optional) Enter a description for the authentication policy.
- 6. Select a User Type based on the intended authentication activity for this policy. Choose from:
  - **Users**: Select this option to define the user sign-in endpoint for enrolled devices. This is the endpoint that you provide to your users to access the service (regardless of enrollment status).
  - **Administrators**: Select this option to define the authentication endpoint for administrator-level sign-in. This endpoint is used for administrator login to the *Controller* only.

7. (for policies with a **User Type** of "Users" only): Select an **Enroll Device Policy** from the dropdown list to be linked to this sign-in policy (as indicated):

POLICY NAME*     Sales_auth_user_policy     Iogin url*       */login/your-path	i
DESCRIPTION	
Add a description of the Authentication Policy	
USER TYPE	
Users	
IOSJailBreakRulePolicy	
ENROLL DEVICE POLICY IOSJailBreakRulePolicy	

Linking an enrollment policy to a user sign-in policy

This is the enrollment policy to which a user is redirected if it is determined that the device is not yet enrolled. To learn more, see Using User Authentication Policies.

8. Under **Policy Server Details**, select **Primary Auth Server** and choose the required authentication method from the drop-down list:

Auth Servers
Note:
Only Local and SAML servers will be available for selection as a Primary Auth Server.
A server which is selected as secondary(if applicable) would not be available for selection as primary.
PRIMARY AUTH SERVER*         Only Local and TOTP servers will be available for selection as a Secondary Auth Server.         A server which is selected as primary(if applicable) would not be available for selection as secondary.
SECONDARY AUTH SERVER

Selecting a primary authentication method for this policy

Alternatively, select *Create Authentication Server* and create a new authentication method as per the steps described earlier in this section.
9. (Optional) Where a secondary method is required for Multi-Factor Authentication, repeat the previous step for **Secondary Auth Server**.



Secondary authentication methods do not apply to *Enrollment User* type policies. The relevant field is hidden in this case.

10. Select Create User Policy to create the new policy.

The new policy is added to the list of authentication policies.

If you instead elect to update an existing custom or built-in policy:

1. Select the check box adjacent to the relevant policy, then select **Actions > Edit**.

The Update Authentication Policy form appears.



For built-in authentication policies, all properties except **Primary Auth Server** are read-only.

update Authentication	'olicy	
inter a name and description	or the Authentication Policy	
POLICY NAME * newadminpolicy	Comune.**	
DESCRIPTION		
Add a description of the Auth	ntication Policy	
user type Administrators	$\checkmark$	
DEVICE POLICY Select a Device Policy	~	
uth Servers		
ote:		
nly Local and SAML servers	ill be available for selection as a Primary Auth Server.	
server which is selected as	condary(it applicable) would not be available for selection as primary.	
PRIMARY AUTH SERVER * XPDPD	~	
inly Local and TOTP servers i	Il be available for selection as a Secondary Auth Server.	
Server withon is selected as	imary(in applicable) would not be available for selection as secondary.	

2. Set the **Primary Auth Server** to be the new PingID SAML user authentication method:

Editing an authentication policy



SAML authentication can be used only as a Primary Auth Server. If you are using MFA, specify either a *local authentication* or *TOTP* method as the **Secondary Auth Server**.

If you configure a secondary authentication method in a policy that is currently in use, any active user sessions must be disconnected and reconnected for the changes to take effect.

3. Select Update User Policy.

The list of authentication policies updates.

On the **Authentication Policies** page, select the authentication policy you just created (or updated), then select the corresponding **Download** link. Save the resulting SP metadata file to your local workstation.

After you have completed this process for both enrollment and sign-in activities, you can proceed to finish configuring your PingID application using the SP metadata file downloaded during this workflow. See Updating Your PingID SAML Application with Your SP Metadata.

### Updating Your PingID SAML Application with Your SP Metadata



To fully configure PingID as a SAML authenticator in *nZTA*, complete these steps for each of your user enrollment and user sign-in policies in turn.

After you have obtained the SP Metadata file from your *nZTA* Authentication Policy, update the PingID SAML application created in <u>Creating a PingID SAML Application</u>. Make sure you use the application that corresponds to the policy. In other words, if you have obtained metadata for the enrollment policy, update the PingID enrollment application.

To update the PingID application:

 Return to the PingID application previously started through the PingOne portal (https://admin.pingone.com):

I have the SAML configuration	I have the SSO URL
You will need to download this SAML metada	ata to configure the application:
Signing Certificate	PingOne Universal Certificate 🗸
SAML Metadata	Download
Provide SAML details about the application y	you are connecting to:
Protocol Version	SAML v 2.0 ○ SAML v 1.1
Unite of Materiata	
Opload Metadata 🔘	Uploaded file:saml-metadata-enroll (5).xml
	Select File Or use ORL
Assertion Consumer Service (ACS)	
Entity ID	*
Application URL	
Single Logout Endpoint @	
Single Logout Response Endpoint @	
Single Logout Binding Type	Redirect ○ Post
Primary Verification Certificate @	Choose File No file chosen
Secondary Verification Certificate @	Choose File No file chosen
Encrypt Assertion @	0
Signing @	Sign Assertion ○ Sign Response
Signing Algorithm @	RSA_SHA256
Force Re-authentication @	0

Continuing the PingID application creation process

2. Locate the Upload Metadata field and select Select File. Upload your SP metadata file.

3. Make any further changes you require to the application configuration, then select Next.

The Group Access section appears.

Application Name	Туре	Status	Enabled
zendesk	SAML	Active	Yes
New Application	SAML	Incomplete	No
Select all user groups that should see this application on their perso	I have access to this application. Use onal dock. Search	ers that are members of the ad	Ided groups will be able to SSO to this applicati
Select all user groups that should see this application on their perso	I have access to this application. Use onal dock. Search	ers that are members of the ad	Ided groups will be able to SSO to this applicati
Select all user groups that should see this application on their perso Group 1, Group 2, efc Group Name pulsesecure	I have access to this application. Use anal dock. Search	ers that are members of the ad	Ided groups will be able to SSO to this applicati
Select all user groups that should see this application on their perso Group 1, Group2, etc Group Name pulsesecure Users@directory	I have access to this application. Use onal dock. Search	ers that are members of the ad	Ided groups will be able to SSO to this applicati Remove

4. Add to your application any required user groups.



The user groups you require depend on your organization and might vary from those shown in this workflow. At least one user group is required.

5. To review your application configuration, select **Continue to next step**.

The <b>Review</b>	Setup	stage	appears.
-------------------	-------	-------	----------

Test your connection to the application	
Icon	© _
Logo	o O
Name	ZTADEMO_PINGIDP_ENOLL
Description	ZTADEMO PINGIDP ENOLL
Category	Engineering
Connection ID	
(Optional) Click the link below to in Invite SAAS Admin	nvite this SaaS Application's Administrator to register their SaaS Application with PingOne.
These parameters may be needed to config	ure your connection
saasid	
Issuer	
idpid	
Protocol Version	
ACS URL	
entityId	
Initiate Single Sign-On (SSO) URL @	
Single Sign-On (SSO) Relay State @	
Signing Certificate	Download
SAML Metadata	Download
SAML Metadata URL	
Single Logout Endpoint	
Single Logout Response Endpoint	
Signing @	Assertion
Signing Algorithm @	RSA_SHA256
Encrypt Assertion @	false
Force Re-authentication @	false
Click the link below to open the Single Sign-	-On page:
Single Sign-On	

Reviewing your application configuration

6. To complete configuration of your PingID application, select Finish.

### Workflow: Adding TOTP to an Authentication Policy



This feature is supported for client and gateway versions applicable to release 22.2R1 and later only.

*nZTA* supports the use of Time-based One Time Password (TOTP) as a secondary authentication method in *Multi-Factor Authentication* deployments.

To use TOTP, first create a TOTP authentication method in *nZTA* and then associate it with your user sign-in authentication policies.

To ensure that your users can access the authentication mechanism defined in the policies you configure through this process, make sure your *Secure Access Policies* are configured with a **User Group** in which these authentication policies are defined. To learn more, see <u>Creating/Editing Secure Access</u> Policies.

To configure a new TOTP authentication method:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, select the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Users > Authentication Servers.

The **Authentication Servers** page appears. This page lists all existing user authentication methods. For example:

Manage Users	5 (i)					
User Groups	User Rules User Policies	Authentication Servers				
Authentio	cation Servers which <b>default</b> OR thentication Servers which have	linked to any <b>User Policy</b> , v one or more users linked to	will be disabled from deletion o them will be disabled from	on. n deletion.		
Actions 🗸		+ Create Aut	hentication Server	arch	0 7	000 :≡
	NAME 🛧		AUTHENTICATION METHOD	USERS		
$\Box$ >	Admin Auth	$\odot$	Local	79 Users		
$\Box$ >	auth-test		Local	1 Users		
$\Box \rightarrow$	az-saml-auth-ProdScript		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A		
$\Box \rightarrow$	az-saml-enroll-ProdScript		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A		
$\Box$ >	az_auth_zta_dfs		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A		
<u> </u>	0		····· ··· ··· ··· ··· ··· ···· ···· ····			•
			Rows	per page: 10 🗸	1 - 10 of 13 found.	$\langle \rangle$



### 3. Select Create Authentication Server.

i.

A form appears that enables you to define the authentication method.

Jser Groups User Rules User Policies Authentication Servers	
reate Authentication Server 🕥	
hoose Server Name and Authentication Type	
Authentication Server Name*	~ ©
issword Options	
herecters $\begin{bmatrix} u w & a \\ b & v \end{bmatrix}$ $\begin{bmatrix} u w & a \\ 128 & v \end{bmatrix}$	
isswords must have	
(1	
Passwords must have mix of UPPERCASE and lowercase letters	
(1	
New passwords can't be similar to the current password	
New passwords cen't be similar to the username	
New password must be different from T v previous passwords	
Password expires after 180 days	
<ul> <li>Allow users to change their passwords</li> </ul>	
IST OF LOCAL USERS	CREATE USER     Batch Delete
	Change Secondar

Creating a new TOTP user authentication method

At any point during this process, you can reset the form data by selecting Reset Fields.

- 4. Under Choose name and type:
  - Specify an Authentication Server Name.
  - Select the **Authorization Type** of *TOTP*.

The form expands to show additional TOTP authentication settings:

Add Authentication Method	View Auth Methods Res
Choose name and type	
Authentication server name CO	
umber of Attempts ax number of consecutive wrong attempts allowed after which account will be locked	
NO OF ATTEMPTS ~ ~ 3	
ustom message for registration page uu will need to install two factor authentication application(Google Authenticator) on your smart phone or tablet	
CUSTOM MESSAGE FOR REGISTRATION PAGE	
CUSTOM MESSAGE FOR REGISTIRATION PAGE TOTP auth for user <u>signin</u>	
CUSTOM MESSAGE FOR REGISTRATION PAGE	
CUSTOM MESSAGE FOR REGISTRATION PAGE TOTP auth for user sign() Allow Auto Unlock pocked account will be automatically unlocked after specified period (min: 10 minutes to max:90 days)	
CUSTOM MESSAGE FOR REGISTRATION PAGE TOTP auth for user <u>sign()</u> Allow Auto Unlock Docked account will be automatically unlocked after specified period (min: 10 minutes to max:90 days) AUTO UNLOCK PERIOD TO MINUTES MINUTES MINUTES V	
CUSTOM MESSAGE FOR REGISTRATION PAGE         TOTP auth for user slamin         TOTP auth for user slamin         Allow Auto Unlock         bocked account will be automatically unlocked after specified period (min: 10 minutes to max:90 days)         NUTO UNLOCK PERIOD         IO         MINUTES         MINUTES         MINUTES         Display QR code during User Registration	
CUSTOM MESSAGE FOR REGISTRATION PAGE TOTP auth for user <u>sign(r)</u> Allow Auto Unlock ocked account will be automatically unlocked after specified period (min: 10 minutes to max:90 days) Auto UNLOCK PERIOD MINUTES MIN	

Adding TOTP authentication settings

- 5. Enter the following settings:
  - **No of Attempts**: The maximum number of consecutive wrong attempts allowed before the account is locked (minimum: 1 attempt, maximum: 5 attempts). To view user attempts and to unlock locked accounts, see <u>Unlocking Locked User Accounts</u>.
  - **Custom message for registration page**: A custom message to be shown on the new TOTP-user registration web page.
  - Allow Auto Unlock: When selected, a locked account is automatically unlocked after the specified period. (minimum: 10 minutes, maximum: 90 days).
  - **Display QR code during User Registration**: When selected, a QR code is displayed during user registration.
  - **Disable Generation of Backup Codes**: When selected, the *Controller* does not generate TOTP backup codes.
- 6. To create an authentication method based on these settings, select Add.

The new TOTP user authentication method is added to the list of methods and the process is complete.

After you have created your TOTP authentication method, create or update your user sign-in authentication policies with the new method. *nZTA* supports using TOTP *only as secondary authentication*, so make sure you have previously configured a primary authentication method before continuing this process. To view workflows for all available authentication types, see <u>Introduction</u>.



Secondary authentication methods do not apply to *Enrollment User* type policies. The relevant field is hidden in this case.

Complete the following steps for your user sign-in authentication policy:

1. From the *nZTA* menu, select the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Manage Users > User Policies**.

The **User Policies** page appears. This page lists all existing user authentication policies.

Man	Manage Users (i)									
Us	User Groups User Rules User Policies Authentication Servers Create User Policy									
Not To c Use	Note To create a User Policy, you need a prerequisite entity - Authentication Servers. User Policies which are default OR linked to any User Group will be disabled from selection.									
14 TOT	STATUS	NAME 🕇	DEFAULT 个	POLICY USER	ACCESS URL	SERVER	SERVER TYPE	DEVICE POLICY		
0	>	accounts-auth		user	*/login/accounts/	account-a	SAML (Azu	:		
$\square$	>	accounts-enrollment		enroll	*/login/accountsenro	account-e	SAML (Azu	:		
0		Admin Signin	$\odot$	admin	*/login/admin/	Admin Auth	Local	:		
0		схо		admin	*/login/cxo/	схо	Local	:		
$\bigcirc$		cxoics		admin	*/login/cxoics/	cxoics	Local	:		
$\square$	>	Enrollment Signin	$\odot$	enroll	*/login/enroll/	AzureAD-E	SAML (Azu	:		
	>	kan_mfa		admin	*/login/QA/	kan-samla	SAML (Azu	:		
		netadmin		admin	*/login/netadmin/	net-admin	Local	:		

**User Authentication Policies** 

To learn more about the policies on this page, see <u>Viewing User Authentication Policies</u>.

2. Select the check box adjacent to your desired user sign-in policy, then select Actions > Edit.

The **Edit Authentication Policy** form appears.

dit Authentication Policy				View Auth Policies R	S Reset
olicy Details					
POLICY NAME User Signin	í	USER TYPE USERS	~		
login url */login/	í	ENROLLMENT POLICY Enrollment Signin	$\underline{v}$		
DESCRIPTION					
User Auth					
alicy Server Details	)				
Dicy Server Details Rimary auth server AzureAD-Auth	~	SECONDARY AUTH SERVER	~		
Dicy Server Details Rimary auth server AzureAD-Auth		SECONDARY AUTH SERVER + Add new server Aditi		Save	
<b>Dicy Server Details</b> Rimary Auth Server AzureAD-Auth	~	SECONDARY AUTH SERVER + Add new server Aditi cxo	~   	Save	
Dicy Server Details hrmary auth server AzureAD-Auth		SECONDARY AUTH SERVER + Add new server Aditi cxo cxoics	~ 	Save	
olicy Server Details nrmary auth server AzureAD-Auth	~	SECONDARY AUTH SERVER + Add new server Aditi cxo cxoics cxonew		Save	
olicy Server Details PRIMARY AUTH SERVER AzureAD-Auth	~	SECONDARY AUTH SERVER + Add new server Aditi cxo cxoics cxonew net-admin	~	Save	
olicy Server Details Primary auth server AzureAD-Auth		SECONDARY AUTH SERVER + Add new server Aditi cxo cxoics cxonew net-admin networkics	~	Save	
olicy Server Details PRIMARY AUTH SERVER AzureAD-Auth		SECONDARY AUTH SERVER + Add new server Aditi cxo cxoics cxonew net-admin networkics readonlyadmin		Save	

Selecting a secondary TOTP authentication method for this policy

3. For **Secondary Auth Server**, select your new TOTP authentication method from the drop-down list (as indicated).

Alternatively, select *Add New Server* and create a new authentication method as per the steps described earlier in this section.

4. Select **Save** to update the policy.



If you configure a secondary authentication method in a policy that is currently in use, any active user sessions must be disconnected and reconnected for the changes to take effect.

### **Unlocking Locked User Accounts**

After you have created a TOTP authentication method and assigned it to an active user authentication policy, you can use the authentication method configuration page to view users that have attempted authentication through TOTP. This information enables you to unlock locked user accounts, if required.

To access user attempt information, perform the following steps:

- 1. Select Secure Access > Manage Users > Authentication Servers.
- 2. Select the check box adjacent to your TOTP authentication method, then select Actions > Edit.

At the bottom of the page, a Users table is presented:

USEF 1 USER	<b>RS</b> (S)		SEARCH Q	💍 RESET
	USER NAME	LAST ATTEMPTED 1	LAST SUCCESSFUL LOGIN 个	STATUS 个
	user1	Thu, 23 Jun 2022 03:35:37 AM GMT	Thu, 23 Jun 2022 03:35:37 AM GMT	Active

Viewing the list of users who attempted TOTP authentication through this method

This table lists each user who has attempted to authenticate a device through TOTP, including the last attempt and last successful login times.

- (Optional) If a user account is locked through too many consecutive failed authentication attempts (that exceed the value configured in **No of Attempts**), unlock the account by selecting the checkbox adjacent to the user entry and selecting **UNLOCK**. The user is then free to reattempt authentication using valid authentication codes.
- 4. (Optional) To remove a user from the list, select the checkbox adjacent to the user entry and select **RESET**. This means a user must then re-register their device with the TOTP policy.



Reset and unlock operations of individual users are supported only when the TOTP authentication method is associated with a user authentication policy. To reset or unlock all users in a disassociated TOTP authentication method, delete the TOTP authentication method itself.

# Working with Applications and Application Groups

- Introduction
- Adding Applications to the Controller
- Adding Application Groups to the Controller
- Workflow: Publishing Applications to nZTA Gateways

## Introduction

After you have defined the user authentication system for your *Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access* (*nZTA*) service, you can:

- Create definitions of applications to which your end users require access, see <u>Adding</u> <u>Applications to the Controller</u>.
- Group together multiple applications for which a single secure access policy is required, see <u>Adding Application Groups to the Controller</u>.
- Create secure access policies through which you can publish your applications, or application groups, to a *nZTA Gateway*, see Workflow: Publishing Applications to nZTA Gateways.



An application, or application group, can be associated with only one secure access policy.

## **Adding Applications to the** *Controller*

For each application you want to make available through *nZTA*, you add an application definition to the *Controller*. Application definitions are referenced from a *secure access policy* in the following ways:

- A single application can be referenced from a secure access policy to identify an application for the policy.
- Multiple applications can be referenced from an application group, to enable all of the applications in the application group to be identified for a secure access policy.

To add an application:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Applications > Applications.

The Applications page appears. This page lists all applications defined on the Controller.

Man	Manage Applications (i)									
Ap	plications	Application Groups				Cr				
	Applicat	ions which are either <b>default</b> C	R linked to any Applic	ation Groups or Secure Access Policies will be a	disabled	from selection.				
<b>306</b> T	OTAL - <b>O</b> SEI	LECTED			0	SEARCH Q				
	STATUS	NAME 个	туре 🛧	APPLICATION DETAIL	APPLICAT	ION GROUP(S)				
()		10.90.6.11	application	ssh://10.90.6.11	bookr	narked				
$\bigcirc$		1_app_icon_adp_bookmark	application	https://1_app.com						
$\odot$		Application discovery	application	*:*						
		FQDN_port1	application	www.example.com:9090						
$\Box$		FQDN_portA_portB	application	www.example.com:9090-9099						
()		IP_path	application	http://1.1.1.1	bookr	narked, nw-group, combined				
$\odot$		aajtak	application	aajtak.in	perfte	st_apps3, combined_grp, all				
$\bigcirc$		about	application	about.google	perfte	st_apps, perftest_apps4, allo				
$\bigcirc$		abplive	application	abplive.com	perfte	st_apps5, allowd_group, perf				
$\bigcirc$		academia	application	academia.edu	perfte	st_apps2, perftest_apps5, pe				

Manage Applications Page

This page also includes a built-in application called *Application discovery*. The **Application Detail** for this application is *:*, indicating that all applications that it applies to all unlisted applications. This application is used by the *nZTA* application discovery feature, and cannot be deleted.

### 3. Click Create Application.

A form appears enabling you to create the application.

Manage Applications (i)			
Applications Application Groups			
Create Application			
Application Details			
Application Name*	Application URL*		0
Add a description of the Application			
Add Ons			
Create Bookmark for application	<ul> <li>Enable Application Disc.</li> </ul>	overy (i)	
Allowed Domains	0		
SAML Access Config	0		
Add to Application Groups	0		
Select / Upload an Application Icon		Search	
O 🔥 Bamboo	O bamboohr	O Bitbucket	0
O Concur		O Cornerstone	0
O Cocusign	O 🛟 Dropbox	Github	• <b>G</b>
		Cre	ate another Cancel

Create Application

4. Enter the **Application Name**.

5. Enter the **Application Details**. That is, the URI (Uniform Resource Identifier) you use to access the application. To view a complete list of valid entries for this field, see <u>Defining Applications</u> and <u>Application Groups</u>.

6. For scenarios that require one or more additional domains to be associated with an application, select **Allowed Domains**:

Create Application			
Allowed Domains	0		
Enter Allowed Domain	(i) + ADD DOMAIN	CSV UPLOAD Select a CSV file	
ALLOWED DOMAINS 1 DOMAINS - 1 SELECTED		SEARCH	Q 🗊 Dele
ODMAIN 1			
a.c.com			
			EDIT

Adding allowed domains for an application

Add your domains through one of the following methods:

- Individually, by entering valid domains in the **Enter Allowed Domain** text box, then selecting **Add Domain** to add the domains to the list. You can add several domains at the same time by using a comma (,) separator. Repeat this step for each domain you want to add.
- In bulk, by uploading a Comma-Separated Value (CSV) text file containing the full list of your domains.

Domains added to this list must conform to the same scheme rules as the URI used in the **Application Details** field. To view a complete list of valid domain schemes, see <u>Defining</u> <u>Applications and Application Groups</u>.

In the list of added domains:

- to edit an entry, click the three dots next to the entry and then select Edit.
- to remove individual entries, click the three dots next to the entry and then select Delete.
- to remove all entries, select all check boxes and click Delete.

7. For HTTP/HTTPS applications, the **SAML Access** setting appears.

The *Controller* can use SAML to provide a secure connection to your application or resource. In this scenario, *nZTA* acts as a SAML Identity Provider (IdP), with the application acting as the SAML Service Provider (SP). To learn more about using SAML, see <u>SAML Authentication</u>.

- Disable this setting if you are using a application-level login for the application.
- Enable this setting if you are using SAML single sign-on for the application. Then:
  - Under **Download IdP Metadata**, click **Download the IDP metadata file using the link** and save the IdP metadata file.
  - Log into your application and upload the IdP metadata file. Refer to the product documentation for the third-party application for details of this process.
  - In the application, download the SAML metadata as a file. Refer to the product documentation for the third-party application for details of this process.
  - Under Upload the file below, select and upload the SAML metadata file from the application.



You must keep the SAML metadata up-to-date, especially after renewing certificates. This is essential for a secure and successful SaaS Apps SAML SSO flow. Regularly updating configurations in both the Identity Provider and Service Providers helps prevent authentication failures and ensures the security of the authentication process.

8. (Optional) If you want to add custom SAML attributes, use **Attribute** and **Value** to add key-value pairs. Click **Add** to add an attribute pair, and repeat as required.

Added attributes are displayed beneath the input fields. Click the corresponding **X** indicator to remove an attribute.

- 9. To associate an icon with this application, either:
  - Select an **Application Icon** from the list of supported icons. This field auto-populates based on the scheme you use in **Application Details**.
  - Click Upload your own Icon to upload a bespoke image file as the reusable custom icon. Then select the icon from the list to associate to this application. Make sure your icon is in JPEG format using the maximum dimensions 48 x 48 pixels (maximum file size 1 MB). *Ivanti* recommends you use only square images for your application icons. You can edit or remove the uploaded custom icon.
- 10. Enter a **Description** for the application.
- 11. (Optional) To create a bookmark for this application, select **Create bookmark for application**.



Use the Bookmark option, where applicable, to allow the end user to copy the **Application Details** URI for use with other applications. For example, a TCP URI can be bookmarked to facilitate copy and paste into VNC or similar.

12. (Optional) To enable application discovery for this application, select **Enable Application Discovery**.



To use application discovery, your application must be defined as a wildcard-prefixed FQDN (for example, "*.example.com"). To learn more about application discovery, see Defining Applications and Application Groups.

 (Optional) If you want to add the new application to an application group, select the Add to Application Group check box, and then select the required application group.



When using SAML authentication, make sure you add to a single application group only those applications that use the same SAML authentication source.

14. To save this application and create another application, select the **Create another** check box.

#### 15. Click Create Application.

The new application appears in the list of applications.



Applications can also be added to the *Controller* during the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow, see <u>Workflow: Publishing Applications to nZTA Gateways</u>.

After you have defined your applications in the *Controller*, you can publish the actual applications to your *nZTA Gateways*, see Workflow: Publishing Applications to nZTA Gateways.

## **Editing and Deleting Applications**

To edit an existing application definition, select the corresponding check box and click **Edit**. *nZTA* shows the *Edit Application* form, populated with the details of the application. Use this form to update the name and other details of your application.

For SAML applications, you can use the **Upload SAML Metadata** form to replace the metadata definition file previously-uploaded with a new or modified version. However, be aware that that federation metadata files can be digitally-signed and, in that case, cannot be manually edited prior to upload back into *nZTA*. In this scenario, you must obtain a new digitally-signed metadata file from your SAML SP suitable for uploading through this page. The parameters in an unsigned metadata file can be edited before the file is re-uploaded.

To delete an existing application, select the corresponding check box and click **Delete**.



You cannot delete the Application discovery application.

# Adding Application Groups to the Controller

Multiple applications can be referenced from an *application group*.

When you select an application group during any subsequent process, all applications in the group are included automatically.

That is:

- During the creation of a secure access policy, see Creating/Editing Secure Access Policies.
- During the Create Secure Access Policy workflow, see <u>Workflow: Publishing Applications to nZTA</u> <u>Gateways</u>.



For SAML authentication, make sure you add to a single application group only those applications that use the same SAML authentication source. A secure access policy can associate an application group with only one authentication method. Therefore, all applications added to the group must use the same SAML metadata for authentication.

To create an application group:

- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see <u>Logging in as a Tenant Administrator</u>.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Applications > Application Groups.

The *Applications Groups* page appears. This page lists all application groups defined on the *Controller*.

Man	Manage Applications (i)							
Ap	plications	Application Groups				Create A		
	Applica	ation Groups which are linked to	any <b>Applications</b> or <b>Secure</b> A	Access Policies will be disable	d from selection.			
<b>11</b> TOT.	AL - <b>O</b> SELE	ECTED			0	SEARCH Q		
0	STATUS	NAME 🛧	NO OF APPS	FQDN APPS	URL APPS	NETWORK APPS		
$\odot$		67_apps	44	43	1	0		
$\odot$		allowd_group	6	5	1	0		
$\odot$		bookmarked	21	4	16	1		
$\odot$		combined_grp	24	9	15	0		
$\odot$		nw-group	6	2	1	3		
$\odot$		perftest_apps	88	85	3	0		
$\odot$		perftest_apps1	35	35	0	0		
$\odot$		perftest_apps2	44	44	0	0		
$\odot$		perftest_apps3	35	35	0	0		
$\odot$		perftest_apps4	26	26	0	0		

Manage Application Groups Page

3. Click Create Application Group.

The **Create Application Group** form appears.

	Applic	ations A	Application Groups				
	Create	e Applica	tion Group				
	Applica	cation Group ations	o Name*	٩			
	26 TO	TAL - O SELE	CTED				0
		STATUS	NAME 🛧	TYPE	APPLICATION DETAIL	APPLICATION GROUP(S)	
	$\Box$		alapp	application	http://asdf.com		
			a2app	application	http://adf.com		
			anc	application	http://acn.com	81	
	$\odot$		Application discovery	application	*.*		
			confluence	application	https://jira.cam.zeus.com/	81	
			Duo	application	https://www.duo.google.com/	a1	
	$\Box$		Facebook	application	https://www.facebook.com/	a1	
	Rows p	erpage: 10	~				<<
N						Cancel	

Create Application Group

4. Enter the Group Name.

5. Select the Applications you want to add to the group.



You cannot add the Application discovery application to a group.

6. Click Create Application Group.

The application group is added to the list.

# Workflow: Publishing Applications to *nZTA Gateways*

After you have added any required application definitions to the *Controller*, you can publish these definitions to your *nZTA Gateway*(s) so that they are available for use.

To do this, use the Create Secure Access Policy workflow.

To publish applications to the *nZTA Gateway*(s), start the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow.

You can access the Create Secure Access Policy workflow from:

- The Secure Access Setup (Onboarding) wizard, see Working with the Onboarding Wizard.
- The toolbar at the top-right of each page, see below.

To start the Create Secure Access Policy workflow using the toolbar:

1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.

The Network Overview page appears.

 Click the Workflows pull-down menu, and then select the Create Secure Access Policy workflow.



Select the Create Secure Access Policy Workflow

The Create Secure Access Policy workflow appears.

The Create Secure Access Policy workflow includes a multi-step workflow:

- Select or Create Applications that you want to publish, see <u>Selecting Applications</u> for Publication.
- **Select Device Policies** that apply to the application, see <u>Selecting Device Policies</u> for Applications.

- Select or Create User Rules that apply to the application, see <u>Selecting User Rules</u> for Applications.
- **Select Gateways** to which you want to publish applications, see <u>Selecting a nZTA</u> <u>Gateway for your Applications</u>.
- **Summary**, a confirmation-only step, see <u>Confirming the Create Secure Access</u> <u>Policy Workflow</u>.

After the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow finishes, all selected applications are pushed to the selected *nZTA Gateway*.

If you are using multiple gateways, you will need to repeat the publication process for each gateway.

## **Selecting Applications for Publication**

The **Select or Create Applications** step of the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow enables you to create a new application, or to select an existing application that you want to publish.



You can also create applications independently of the Create Secure Access Policy workflow, see <u>Adding Applications to the Controller</u>.

To select an existing application:

- Access the Create Secure Access Policy workflow, see <u>Workflow: Publishing Applications to</u> <u>nZTA Gateways</u>.
- 2. In the Create Secure Access Policy workflow, select the Select or Create Application step.
- 3. Click Select an Application and select the required application from the drop-down list.
- 4. (Optional) If you want to add the application to an application group, select the **Add to Group** check box, and then select the required application group.



The applications in a group can be published as a single action.

To learn more about the process of creating an application group, see <u>Adding Application</u> <u>Groups to the Controller</u>.

5. Click **Next** to continue to the next step of the workflow, see <u>Selecting Device Policies for</u> <u>Applications</u>.

To create a new application:

- 1. Access the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow, see <u>Workflow: Publishing Applications to</u> <u>nZTA Gateways</u>.
- 2. In the Create Secure Access Policy workflow, select the Select or Create Application step.
- 3. Click **Select an Application** and select *Add New Application*.

The add new Application form appears.

- 4. To add a new Application, follow the steps described in Adding Applications to the Controller.
- (Optional) If you want to add the new application to an application group, select the Add to Group check box, and then select the required application group.



The applications in a group can be published as a single action.

To learn more about the process of creating an application group, see <u>Adding Application</u> <u>Groups to the Controller</u>.

 Click Next to continue to the next step of the workflow, see <u>Selecting Device Policies for</u> <u>Applications</u>.

### **Selecting Device Policies for Applications**



The **Select Device Policies** step of the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow enables you to select the required device policy for the application that you want to publish.



To create device policies, see Creating Device Policies and Device Policy Rules.

To select device policies:

- Access the Create Secure Access Policy workflow, see <u>Workflow: Publishing Applications to</u> nZTA Gateways.
- 2. In the Create Secure Access Policy workflow, select the Select Device Policies step.

A list of existing device policies appears.

- 3. Select a device policy.
- Click Next to continue to the next step of the workflow, see <u>Selecting User Rules for</u> <u>Applications</u>.

### **Selecting User Rules for Applications**

The **Select or Create User Rules** step of the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow enables you to compile a list of one or more user rules (and the groups to which they optionally belong) that apply to the applications you want to publish.

You can create user rules independently of the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow, see <u>Creating User Rules</u>.



You can create user groups independently of the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow, see <u>Creating User Groups</u>.

You can create authentication policies independently of the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow, see <u>Working with User Authentication</u>.

To create a user rule:

- 1. Access the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow, see <u>Workflow: Publishing Applications to</u> <u>nZTA Gateways</u>.
- 2. In the Create Secure Access Policy workflow, select the Select or Create User Rules step.
- 3. For the user group, either:
  - Click Select or Create User Group(s), and select the required user group.
  - Click the *plus* symbol for the Select or Create User Group(s) property, and create the required user group using a Group Name, an Authentication Policy and (optionally) a Description.
- 4. For the authentication policy, either:
  - Click Select an Authentication Policy, and select the required policy.
  - Click the *plus* symbol for the **Select an Authentication Policy** property, and create the required authentication policy, see Working with User Authentication.

- 5. For the user rule, either:
  - Click **Select or Create Rule**, and select the required user rule.
  - Click the *plus* symbol for the **Select or Create Rule** property, and create the required user rule:
    - Enter a Rule Name for the rule.
    - Click **Select Attribute Type** and select the required authentication attribute type. The following options are supported: *Username, SAML (Azure AD)* and *Custom*.
    - Click **Expression** and select either *Matching* or *Not Matching*.
    - Enter the required **User** match string for the selected Expression. Wildcard matches are supported. For example: *
    - Click Add to List.

#### 6. Click Add User Rule.

The new user rule is added to the list of rules.

- 7. (Optional) Repeat steps 3 to 6 to create additional rules, if required.
- 8. In the list of rules, select each rule that is required by enabling its check box.
- 9. Click **Next** to continue to the final step of the workflow, see .<u>Confirming the Create Secure</u> Access Policy Workflow

To select an existing user rule:

- 1. Access the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow, see <u>Workflow: Publishing Applications to</u> <u>nZTA Gateways</u>.
- 2. In the Create Secure Access Policy workflow, select the Select or Create User Rules step.

The Select or Create User Rules page lists all existing user rules.

- 3. In the list of rules, select each rule that is required by enabling its check box.
- 4. Click **Next** to continue to the next step of the workflow, see <u>Confirming the Create Secure Access</u> <u>Policy Workflow</u>.

### Selecting an nZTA Gateway for your Applications

The **Select Gateways** step of the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow enables you to identify the *nZTA Gateway* to which you want to publish applications.

To select the required *nZTA Gateway*(s):

- 1. Access the **Create Secure Access Policy** page, see <u>Workflow: Publishing Applications to nZTA</u> <u>Gateways</u>.
- 2. On the Create Secure Access Policy page, select the Select Gateways step.
- 3. Click **Select Gateway** and select the required *nZTA Gateway*.
- Click Next to continue to the next step of the workflow, see <u>Confirming the Create Secure Access</u> <u>Policy Workflow</u>.

### **Confirming the Create Secure Access Policy Workflow**

After you have successfully completed all steps of the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow, the final **Summary** step of the workflow becomes active.

This step displays all information that was defined/gathered during the **Create Secure Access Policy** workflow, and enables you to complete the workflow.

- 1. Access the Create Secure Access Policy workflow.
- 2. In the Create Secure Access Policy workflow, select the Summary step.

A summary page displays all information that was defined/gathered during the previous steps.

- 3. Examine the summary information.
- 4. Click Finish to confirm the summary and complete the Create Secure Access Policy workflow.

The applications are published to the selected *nZTA Gateway*.

After you have published applications to your *nZTA Gateway*(s), users can enroll their desktop and mobile devices, see Enrolling Mobile/Desktop Clients.

# **Creating Device Policies and Device Policy Rules**

- Introduction
- Viewing Device Policies and Rules
- Creating Device Policies
- <u>Configuring Default Device Policy for Users</u>
- <u>Creating Device Policy Rules</u>
- "Setting Global Device Preferences" on page 604

### Introduction

**Device Policies** define how desktop and mobile devices access cloud and on-premise applications in your *Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access (nZTA)* deployment.



Device policies act as one of the four dimensions of a Secure Access Policy, see Creating/Editing Secure Access Policies.

You create a device policy and then create / associate the device rules to form a complete **Device Policy**, suitable for adding to a **Secure Access Policy**. Device policies encompass a set of rules that define the minimum standard a device must meet to be considered compliant with the applications and services served by your Secure Access Policies.

To learn more about Device Policies and Rules, see "Viewing Device Policies and Rules" below.

## **Viewing Device Policies and Rules**

*nZTA* provides a number of built-in default device policies, each containing a set of appropriate built-in device rules. You cannot modify / delete these built-in default device policies. These policies and rules are suitable for general use. In addition, *nZTA* allows the definition of custom policies and rules to fit an organization's specific requirements.

To view the list of all default and custom device policies or rules defined on the Controller:
- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin.
- From the *nZTA* menu, select the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Devices > Device Policies.

The Device Policies page appears. This page lists all current device policies.

Manage Devi	ces (i)				
Device Policies	s Global Device Preferences				
	_				
(Actions 🗸			+ Create Device Po	licy	] ▼ 3 Ⅲ ≔
	NAME 1	DEFAULT $\uparrow$	DESCRIPTION	RULES	I
0	AllAVWindows			AllAVWindows	
0	AndroidRootRulePolicy	$\odot$	Checks whether android device is rooted	AndroidRootRule	MORE 💠
	CommonPolicies			Android +6	
	devops		DevOps	SymantecAntiVirusLow +1	
0	нв			HB +1	
0	IOSJailBreakRulePolicy	$\odot$	Checks whether ios device is jail broken o	IOSJailBreakRule	MORE 💠
0	McAfeeAVHigh	$\oslash$	McAfee AntiVirus Check (High)	McAfeeAntiVirusHigh	
0	McAfeeAVLow	$\odot$	McAfee AntiVirus Check (Low)	McAfeeAntiVirusLow	
0	McAfeeAVMedium	$\oslash$	McAfee AntiVirus Check (Medium)	McAfeeAntiVirusMedium	
	Notepad			Notepad	
				Rows per page: 10 🗸 1	• 10 of 19 found. < 🔉

The Device Policies page

Built-in default policies are indicated by a tick in the **Default** column. Custom policies are not ticked.

On this page, you can:

- Add a new custom device policy, see Creating Device Policies.
- Edit / Delete custom device policy, see "Editing / Deleting Custom Device Policy" on page 582.
- Edit / Delete custom device policy rule, see "Editing / Deleting a Custom Device Policy Rule" on page 590.

You can also:

- Sort the list by a selected column in ascending or descending order.
- Switch between normal and denser data views.

# **Creating Device Policies**

You can create **Device policies** and then create / associate one or more **Device Rules** as required.

To create a device policy:

- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin.
- 2. From the *nZTA* menu, select the Secure Access, then select Manage Devices > Device Policies.

The Device Policies page appears. This page lists all current device policies.

3. Click Create Device Policy.

A form appears to enable you to create the device policy.

Manage Devic	es (i)						
Device Policies	Global Device Pre	ferences					
Create New Dev	ice Policy					S Reset Fields	
Policy Name And	Description	]0					
Add a description	n of the policy						
Select / Create D	evice Rules						
						+ Create Device Rule	
RULE TITLE	DEFAULT	RULE TYPE	SECURITY LEVEL	PLATFORM	ATTRIBUTES	ACTIONS	
							-
					(	Cancel Create Device F	olicy

Create a new Device Policy



At any point during this process, you can reset the form data by selecting **Reset Fields**.

- 4. Enter a **Name** for the device policy.
- 5. Add a **Description** for the device policy.

Select each of the listed **Rules** that are required for the device policy, or select **Create Device Rule** to use the in-line rule creation form. To learn more about this process, see <u>Creating Device</u>
 <u>Policy Rules</u>.

- 7. (Optional) In the *Rule Requirement* section: Specify for each end-user device **Platform** how you want to enforce your policy rules by choosing one of the following **Rule Requirement** options:
  - All of the above rules: The end-user device must comply with all rules defined in the policy.
  - **Any of the above rules**: The end-user device must comply with at least one of the defined rules in the policy.

• **Custom**: The end-user device must comply with the conditions specified in a custom expression. Use the **Custom Expression** field to define an expression for the rules defined in this policy and how they should be evaluated. You can use the Boolean operators AND, OR and NOT, and also use parentheses to group or nest conditions.

The following is a list of sample custom expressions:

- customExpr
- (customExpr)
- NOT customExpr
- customExpr OR customExpr
- customExpr AND customExpr

As an example, where a policy has associated with it the rules "Rule1", "Rule2", and "Rule3", the following expression is valid: *Rule1 AND (NOT Rule2 OR (NOT Rule3))* 

When using custom expressions, consider the following points:

- Using NOT: When using "*NOT expr*", the negated expression evaluates to true if the outcome of *expr* is false and evaluates to false if the outcome of *expr* is true.
- AND, OR, NOT precedence: These operators are evaluated from highest to lowest precedence in this order: NOT (from right), AND (from left), OR (from left).
- A combination of any device rule is allowed in an expression, except location, time of day, and network rules. For example, the following expressions are not allowed:
  - Windows_Process AND Locationrule
  - Windows_Process AND Networkrule
  - Windows_Process AND Time-of-Day_Rule

After you have set a platform and rule requirement, select **Apply** to add the entry. Then, repeat this procedure if you want to add any rule requirements for other device platforms.



If you intend to add multiple rules of varying types to a device policy, be aware that individual rules might not by themselves guarantee allowed or denied access to an application depending on the outcome of other evaluated rules in a device policy, and the rule requirements settings configured here.

 (Optional) In the *Remediation* section: To provide custom remediation instructions for the policy, tick **Enable Custom Instruction** and enter your remediation text into **Custom Instruction**. This option also requires selection of a target **Platform**.

These instructions are presented through *Ivanti Secure Access Client* when a device compliance check fails based on this policy.



This feature is applicable to Windows, Mac, and Linux device policies only.
Also note that custom instructions are restricted to a 500 byte limit and can contain only plain text or an HTML document with HREF links.

#### 9. Select Create Device Policy.

The new device policy appears in the list of **Device Policies**.

10. Repeat steps 3-7 to create all required device policies.

After you have created all required device policies, you can move to the next stage of *nZTA* configuration, which is Creating/Editing Secure Access Policies.

## **Editing / Deleting Custom Device Policy**

Built-in default device policies are indicated with a tick mark in the Devices column, and they cannot be edited or deleted.

To edit a custom device policy:

1. In the Device Policies page, select the check box next to the custom device policy that you want to edit.

#### 2. Select Actions > Edit.

Manage Devices	i								
Device Policies	Global Device Preferen	nces							
Edit Device Policy							S R	eset Fields	
Policy Name And De	escription								
DEVICE POLICY NAME * CommonPolicies		i)							
DESCRIPTION									
adsdsds									
Select / Create Devi	ice Rules								
						+ Cre	eate Devi	ice Rule	
RULE TITLE 1	DEFAULT	RULE TYPE 🔶	SECURITY LEVEL 个	PLATFORM 个	ATTRIBUTES	ACTIONS		1	
Android		os		android	Platform: android	0	۵	MORE 💠	
IOS		os		ios	Platform: ios, Co	0	۵	MORE 💠	
Mac_Catalina		OS		mac	Platform: mac, O	0	۵	MORE 💠	
Mac_Mojave_os		os		mac	Platform: mac, O	0	۵	MORE 💠	
MacOS		os		mac	Platform: mac, O	0	Ū	MORE 💠	▼
					(	Cancel	Upd	ate Device Pol	icy

3. Make the necessary changes, such as change the policy description, or create / edit / delete rules. You are not allowed to change the policy name.

#### 4. Click Update Device Policy.

To delete custom device policy:

- 1. In the Device Policies page, select one or more check boxes next to the custom device policies that you want to delete.
- 2. Select Actions > Delete.
- 3. In the delete confirmation window, click Yes, Delete.

# **Configuring Default Device Policy for Users**

As part of configuring an application, we can associate a device policy, which may have one or more same or different type of device rules configured. When a user tries to login, AAA evaluate these policies, log failures and allows sign in. When a user tries to access applications, device policies are evaluated and enforced. If a device policy evaluation fails, application access is denied.

With Default device policy for users, Admins can configure policies that get enforced even before device authentication, that is during the user enrollment or user authentication.

- For default enrollment policy, User Group will always be added.

- For a new multi-sign-in policy of type enroll, always add User Group first with the new enroll policy.

- Visibility/analytics in the form of charts are not available, but logs are available in Insight >logs.



- Risksense policy when enforced on enrollment sign-in policy is not supported with web/browser based enrollment, but is supported when Ivanti Secure Access Client is already installed.

- Time of day rule type is not supported for default device policy.

- Time of day and OS check rules are not supported on the enrollment sign in url when trying to enroll from iOS endpoint.

You can use the existing default polices or can create new policy and use the default device policy.

To configure default Device Policy for users:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin.
- 2. From the *nZTA* menu, select Secure Access and then select Manage Users > User Policies.

#### 3. Click Create User Policy.

Man	age User	s (i)						
Use	er Groups	User Rules User Policies	Authen	tication Servers				Create User Policy
Not To c Use	Note To create a User Policy, you need a prerequisite entity - Authentication Servers. User Policies which are default OR linked to any User Group will be disabled from selection.							
14 TOT	AL					③ SEARCH	٩	Batch Delete
	STATUS	NAME 🛧	DEFAULT 🔶	POLICY USER	ACCESS URL	SERVER	SERVER TYPE	DEVICE POLICY
	>	accounts-auth		user	*/login/accounts/	account-a	SAML (Azu	:
	>	accounts-enrollment		enroll	*/login/accountsenro	account-e	SAML (Azu	:
		Admin Signin	$\odot$	admin	*/login/admin/	Admin Auth	Local	:
		схо		admin	*/login/cxo/	схо	Local	:
0		cxoics		admin	*/login/cxoics/	cxoics	Local	:
	>	Enrollment Signin	$\odot$	enroll	*/login/enroll/	AzureAD-E	SAML (Azu	:
	>	kan_mfa		admin	*/login/QA/	kan-samla	SAML (Azu	:
0		netadmin		admin	*/login/netadmin/	net-admin	Local	:

Manage User Policy

- 4. Enter the Policy Name, Login URL using the format */login/<path>.
- 5. Select the User Type: Enrollment Users/ Users/Administrators.
- 6. Select the **Device Policy** from the drop-down menu. For example, Deny_Location.

There are a few exceptions while creating User Policies when user Type is Administrator. The following device policies are not applicable to Administrator user.



- Any device policy having Risk Sense rule.
- Any device policy having Time of Day rule.
- Any device policy having combination of Location and Network rules.



Continuous Device Posture Assessment (CARTA) is not supported for Admin Access. However, the Device Posture Assessment will occur during the administrator login process, if configured.

- 7. Select the Auth Server.
- 8. Click Create User Policy.

Manage Users 🕐		
User Groups User Rules User Policies Authentication Servers		
Create User Policies (i)		
Create Authentication Policy Enter a name and description for the Authentication Policy		
(roucrisme* Enter a name )♥ ^{Loom sme*} */login/your-path		
Add a description of the Authentication Policy		
Enrollment Users		
DEVICE POLICY Select a Device Policy		
Auth Servers		
Note: Only Local and SAML servers will be available for selection as a Primary Auth Server.		
	Cancel	Create User Policy

Create User Policy

9. Click Create User Policy.

10. Users can also edit the existing Default policy to include the Device policy during the enrollment sign-in/user authentication.

Manage Users					
User Groups User Rules User Policie	s A	uthentication Servers			
Edit User Policies					
Update Authentication Policy Enter a name and description for the Authent	ication	Policy			
POLICY NAME* rbac-test	í	LOGIN URL * */login/rbac/	0		
DESCRIPTION Add a description of the Authentication Policy	(				
USER TYPE Administrators	~				
Select a Device Policy	~				
Auth Servers Note: Only Local and SAML servers will be available	for sel	ection as a Primary Auth Server.			
				Cancel	Update User Policy

Edit User Policy

# **Creating Device Policy Rules**

Before you begin, decide what kind of rule you want to create. For each rule type, make sure you have the supporting parameters. For example, if you are creating a *Network* rule, make sure you know the IP address and netmask range you want to apply.

To create a device rule:

1. In the Create Device Policy page, click **Create Device Rule**.

The **Create Device Rule** form appears.

Create Device Rule CONFIGURE DEVICE RULE			
ule Details			
RULE TYPE Choose a Rule Type	V RULE NAME.* Enter a Rule Name	O	
DESCRIPTION			
Enter a description			
		•	

Create Device Rule

- 2. Select **Rule Type** and select one of the following options:
  - Antispyware: Checks compliance to designated anti-spyware requirements.
  - Antivirus: Checks compliance to designated anti-virus requirements.
  - *CVE check*: Checks for protection against a list of publicly disclosed Common Vulnerability and Exposure (CVE) notices (Windows client devices only).
  - *Command*: Runs a command on the client device to check against an expected value (macOS client devices only).
  - File: Checks for the existence of a known file on the client.
  - Firewall: Checks compliance to designated firewall requirements.
  - *Hard Disk Encryption*: If encryption software is installed on the client device, this rule type checks the device's hard disks for applied encryption.
  - *Location*: Checks the client device's geographic location matches, or avoids, a list of defined locations.
  - Mac Address: Checks the client device's MAC address.
  - Netbios: Checks the client device's Netbios domain name.
  - Network: Checks the client device complies with a defined IP address and netmask range.
  - OS: Checks the client device's Operating System meets a defined minimum standard.
  - Process: Checks for the existence of a known process on the client.
  - Port: Checks the client device's network interface ports.
  - *Patch Management*: If patch management software is installed on a client device, this rule type checks for the existence of missing software patches.
  - Registry: Checks for a value in a registry key (Windows client devices only).
  - Risk Sense: Supports Allow access, Block access and Notify based on the risk level.
  - *System Integrity*: Checks the system integrity of the client device (macOS client devices only).

• *Time of day*: Checks resource access requests against compliance with a time-based access schedule.

Restrictions exist for rule type availability on the following *Ivanti Secure Access Client* platform variants:



- Android clients are limited to rules based on *jail_break_root* and OS.
- iOS clients are limited to rules based on *jail_break_root*, OS, and *Time of day*.
- Linux clients are limited to rules based on File, Port, and Process.
- 3. Enter a **Rule Name** for your device rule.
- 4. (Optional) Enter a Rule Description for your device rule.

5. The remaining options are dependent on the **Rule Type** you selected:

For Antispyware and Firewall rules, see Options for Antispyware and Firewall Rules.

For Antivirus rules, see Options for Antivirus Rules.

For CVE check rules, see Options for CVE Check Rules.

For Command rules, see Options for Command Rules.

For File rules, see Options for File Rules.

For Hard Disk Encryption rules, see Options for Hard Disk Encryption Rules.

For Location rules, see Options for Location Rules.

For Mac Address rules, see Options for MAC Address Rules.

For Netbios rules, see Options for Netbios Rules.

For Network rules, see Options for Network Rules.

For OS rules, see Options for OS Rules.

For Process rules, see Options for Process Rules.

For Port rules, see Options for Port Rules.

For Patch Management rules, see Options for Patch Management Rules.

For Registry rules, see Options for Registry Rules.

For Risk Sense rules, see Options for Risk Sense Rules.

For System Integrity rules, see Options for System Integrity Rules.

For *Time of day* rules, see Options for Time of Day Rules.

6. Select Create Rule to create the device rule.

The new rule is added to the list of device rules.

Individual device policies cannot be referenced by a secure access policy. After you have created all required device policies, you must organize them into device policy groups, see <u>Creating Device Policy</u>.

## **Editing / Deleting a Custom Device Policy Rule**

To edit a device policy rule:

1. In the Device Policies page, under the Rules column, click the rule link that you want to modify.



Edit Device Rule

- 2. In the side-panel that is displayed:
  - To add more rules, click Add Rule. To learn more, see "Creating Device Policy Rules" on page 586.
  - To delete a rule, click the delete icon next to the rule that you want to delete.
  - To delete more than one rule, select the check boxes next to the rules that you want to delete, and then click **Delete**.

## **Options for Antispyware and Firewall Rules**

- 1. Select **Platform** and select one of the following options:
  - windows
  - *mac*

Using the selected platform, *nZTA* populates the lists of *Vendors* and *Products* that can be selected for this rule.

2. (Optional) Select **Select Vendors** and use the drop-down list to select or deselect one or more product vendors. When done, select anywhere outside of the list.

Each selected vendor is added to the panel below the drop-down list. To remove a selection, select the corresponding  $\mathbf{X}$  indicator.

3. (Optional) Select **Select Products** and use the drop-down list to select or deselect one or more products. When done, select anywhere outside of the list.

Each selected product is added to the panel below the drop-down list. To remove a selection, select the corresponding X indicator.



While both *Vendor* and *Product* fields are optional, you must select at least one vendor or product for your rule.

4. (Optional) To set advanced options for this rule, select Advanced Configuration.

The following options are provided:

• Enable monitoring of this rule in Ivanti Secure Access Client.

#### **Options for Antivirus Rules**

- 1. Select **Platform** and select one of the following options:
  - windows
  - *mac*

Using the selected platform, *nZTA* populates the lists of *Vendors* and *Products* that can be selected for this rule.

2. (Optional) Select **Select Vendors** and use the drop-down list to select or deselect one or more product vendors. When done, select anywhere outside of the list.

Each selected vendor is added to the panel below the drop-down list. To remove a selection, select the corresponding  $\mathbf{X}$  indicator.

3. (Optional) Select **Select Products** and use the drop-down list to select or deselect one or more products. When done, select anywhere outside of the list.

Each selected product is added to the panel below the drop-down list. To remove a selection, select the corresponding  $\mathbf{X}$  indicator.



While both *Vendor* and *Product* fields are optional, you must select at least one vendor or product for your rule.

- 4. Select Enforcement Level and select one of the following options:
  - high
  - moderate
  - low
- 5. (Optional) To set advanced options for this rule, select Advanced Configuration.

The following options are provided:

- Add a maximum allowed time limit since the last successful system scan, in days.
- Add a maximum allowed age limit for the most recent virus definition file update, either by number of available updates or by number of days.
- Enable monitoring of this rule in Ivanti Secure Access Client.

## **Options for CVE Check Rules**

This rule type is applicable to Windows devices only.

- 1. Select one of the following options:
  - To check all supported CVEs, select Require all supported CVE checks.
  - To check a list of specific CVEs, select Check for specific CVE, then use the Select CVE Checks drop-down control to select or deselect CVEs to be included.

0

To remove a selected CVE from the list, select the "X" button adjacent to the CVE tag.

## **Options for Command Rules**



This rule type is applicable to macOS devices only.

In this release, Command Type is limited to "Defaults Read Command" only. This runs the /usr/bin/defaults read command on the client device.

- Enter a value in Argument1 to represent the path of the Property List file to read. For example, /Applications/Utilities/Terminal.app/Contents/Info.plist.
- 2. Enter a value in **Argument2** to represent the property key name. For example, CFBundleShortVersionString.
- Enter one or more Expected Values to be returned by the command, as a comma-separated list.
   "*" (wildcard) values are also accepted.

#### **Options for File Rules**

This rule type is applicable to Windows and macOS devices only.

- 1. Select **Platform** and select one of the following options:
  - windows
  - *mac*
  - linux
- 2. Enter a full file name and path in **File Name**. For example, "c:test.txt" or "/Users/exampleuser/Downloads/test.txt".
- 3. Select **Checksum Type** and select one of the following options:
  - md5
  - sha256
- 4. Enter the **Checksum** value for the file.

- 5. Select Mode and select one of the following options:
  - allow. Select this to allow access where the file exists and is valid.
  - *deny*. Select this to deny access if the file does not exist or is invalid.

#### **Options for Hard Disk Encryption Rules**

This rule type is applicable to Windows and macOS devices only.

- 1. Select the device **Platform** to which this rule applies.
- 2. Select the Vendors and associated encryption Products you want this rule to check.
- 3. Choose which hard drives you want the rule to check:
  - To check all drives detected on the client device, select All Drives.
  - To check specific drives on the client device, select **Specific Drives**, then enter the drive identifiers required.
- 4. Select Advanced Configuration to provide additional rule configuration:
  - (Specific drives only) To ensure the rule does not trigger a failure where one or more of the specified drives are not detected, select Consider policy as passed if the drives are not detected.
  - To ensure the rule does not trigger a failure where detected drives are currently undergoing encryption, but are not yet fully encrypted, select Consider policy as passed if the drive encryption is in progress.

#### **Options for Location Rules**

- 1. Select Mode and select one of the following options:
  - *allow*. Select this to enable access for devices identified as being present at one of the set locations in the rule.
  - *deny*. Select this to disallow access for devices identified as being present at one of the set locations in the rule.

- 2. Use the "Add a location" section to define one or more geographic locations to which the current **Mode** applies:
  - Select a Country, State (optional), and City (optional).
  - To add the location, select **Add**.
- 3. Repeat the above steps for each location you want to add to the rule. Multiple "allow" and "deny" locations are possible in a single rule, with each added location identified by a green (allow) or red (deny) tag in the list.



To remove a location, select the "X" button adjacent to the location tag.

#### **Options for MAC Address Rules**

- 1. Select **Platform** and select one of the following platform options:
  - windows
  - *mac*
- Enter the MAC address as a comma-separated list (without spaces) of MAC addresses in the form HH:HH:HH:HH:HH where the HH is a two-digit hexadecimal number. Duplicate MAC addresses are not supported.
- 3. Select Mode and select one of the following options:
  - *allow*. Select this to enable access from a listed MAC address.
  - deny. Select this to disallow access from a listed MAC address.

#### **Options for Netbios Rules**

- 1. Select **Platform** and select one of the following platform options:
  - windows
  - *mac*
- Enter the Netbios domain Names as a comma-separated list (without spaces) of domain names.
   Each name can be 15 characters. Duplicate names are not supported.

- 3. Select Mode and select one of the following options:
  - allow. Select this to enable access from a listed Netbios domain name.
  - *deny*. Select this to disallow access from a listed Netbios domain name.

#### **Options for Network Rules**

1. Enter the IP Address and Netmask from which you want to either allow or deny access.



Multiple IP addresses are not supported.

- 2. Select Mode and select one of the following options:
  - allow. Select this to enable access for the given IP address and netmask.
  - *deny*. Select this to disallow access for the given IP address and netmask.

## **Options for OS Rules**

- 1. Select **Platform** and select one of the following options:
  - windows
  - *mac*
  - ios
  - android

- 2. The remaining fields are dependent on your choice of **Platform**:
  - Where you selected a platform of *windows* or *mac*, select **OS Name** and select an Operating System edition. For example, "Windows 2008" or "macOS Mojave".

Then, select **OS Version** and select the version number or service pack associated with that edition of the Operating System. For example, "SP2" or "10.14.3". To not enforce the version number, select "Ignore".

- Where you selected a platform of *ios* or *android*, select **Equality** and select one of the following options pertaining to how you want to enforce Operating System versions numbers:
  - above
  - below
  - equal

Then, select OS Version and select the version number you want to check against.

#### **Options for Process Rules**

D Th

This rule type is applicable to desktop devices only.

- 1. Select **Platform** and select one of the following options:
  - windows
  - *mac*
  - linux
- 2. Enter a Process Name. For example, "explorer.exe".
- 3. Select Checksum Type and select one of the following options:
  - md5
  - sha256
- 4. Enter the **Checksum** value for the process executable.

- 5. Select Mode and select one of the following options:
  - allow. Select this to allow access where the process exists and is valid.
  - deny. Select this to deny access if the process does not exist or is invalid.

#### **Options for Port Rules**

- 1. Select **Mode** and select one of the following options:
- 2. Enter the **Ports** as a comma-separated list (without spaces) of ports. Port ranges are supported. Duplicate ports are not supported.
  - windows
  - *mac*
  - linux
- 3. Select **Platform** and select one of the following platform options:
  - *allow*. Select this to enable access from a listed port.
  - deny. Select this to disallow access from a listed port.

#### **Options for Patch Management Rules**

This rule type is applicable to Windows and macOS devices only.

- 1. Select the device **Platform** to which this rule applies.
- Select the Vendors and associated patch management Products you want this rule to check the presence of.

- 3. (Optional) Select Advanced Configuration to view more options:
  - Choose the Severity levels of missing patches you want to check in this rule:
    - Critical
    - Important
    - Moderate
    - Low
    - Unspecified/Unknown



For some products, the patch severity level might not be detectable. In this case, select *Unspecified/Unknown* to detect missing patches.

- Choose the **Category** types of missing patches you want to check in this rule:
  - Security Update
  - Rollup Update
  - Critical Update
  - *Regular Update*
  - Driver Update
  - Service Pack Update
  - Unknown



i.

For some products, the patch category might not be detectable. In this case, select *Unknown* to detect missing patches.

#### **Options for Registry Rules**

This rule type is applicable to Windows devices only.

- 1. Select **Rootkey** and select one of the following options:
  - HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE
  - HKEY_USERS
  - HKEY_CURRENT_USER
  - *HKEY_CURRENT_CONFIG*
  - HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT
- 2. Enter a **Subkey** for the registry path: System\\CurrentControlSet\\Services\\Tcpip\\Parameters
- 3. Select **Key Type** and select one of the following key types:
  - string
  - dword
  - binary
- 4. Enter a **Key** name.
- 5. Enter a **Value** for the registry key.
- 6. Tick the **64-bit** check box to use the 64-bit registry store. Leave this check box unticked to use the 32-bit registry store.

The following example values would create a rule to ensure the client device contained a registry key HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\zta with a value 123:

Field	Value
Rootkey	HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE
Subkey	SOFTWARE
Кеу Туре	string
Кеу	zta
Value	123
64-bit	ticked

## **Options for Risk Sense Rules**

RiskSense provides vulnerability management and prioritization to measure and control cybersecurity risk. The cloud-based RiskSense platform uses a foundation of risk-based scoring, analytics to identify critical security weaknesses with corresponding remediation action plans, dramatically improving security and IT team efficiency and effectiveness.

Integrating RiskSense's Vulnerability Risk Rating (VRR) scores with nZTA provides an additional layer of security by isolating and preventing vulnerable devices from connecting to the nZTA network thereby protecting enterprise resources.



This rule type is applicable to Windows only.

- 1. Enter the Rule Name.
- 2. Enter the Rule Details.
- 3. Select **Risk Level** and select one of the following options:
  - Low
  - Medium
  - High
  - Critical
- 4. Select Action and select one of the following options:
  - Allow: Select this to allow access when the risk level is low or medium.
  - Block: Select this to block the access based on the risk level.
  - Notify: Select this to notify the user about the risk identified.



- RiskSense Alert will not be generated if the RiskSense device policy is enforced on the enrollment sign-in URL.

- RiskSense device policy should always be enforced on the authentication login URL.

To view Top Risky Applications, see the *Reviewing User Activity* section in <u>Using the Insights Menu to</u> <u>Monitor User Activity and Service Usage</u>.

#### **Options for System Integrity Rules**

0

This rule type is applicable to macOS devices only.

1. To enable this rule type, select **Enable**.

## **Options for Time of Day Rules**

This rule type applies a resource restriction (allow or deny access) based upon a specified period frequency within a defined date and time range. Enter the following parameters:

- 1. Select the frequency with which you want the rule to apply inside the date range you specify:
  - **Custom**: Apply the rule for the whole period continuously between the start date/time and end date/time.
  - **Daily**: Apply the rule for the specified days in each month. Enter a comma-separated list of numerical days (1-31), for example: "1,5,19,28".
  - **Weekly**: Apply the rule for the specified days of each week. For **Select Days**, select the checkbox for each day on which you want the rule to apply.
  - **Monthly**: Apply the rule for all days in the specified months. For **Month**, select one or more months from the drop-down list.
- 2. Enter the **Start Date** and **End Date** to apply to the selected period frequency. For custom rules, the date range entered here is continuous. For daily, weekly, and monthly rules, each day in the range is executed individually according to the selected times and frequency.



Start and end date values are optional for **Daily**, **Weekly**, and **Monthly** frequencies. If not specified, the rule applies indefinitely.

3. Enter the **Start Time** and **End Time** to apply to the selected period frequency. For custom rules, the times are applied with the corresponding start and end date to provide a continuous period within which the rule applies. For daily, weekly, and monthly rules, the times are applied for each day in the schedule.



All times are applied as UTC timezone values. Your *nZTA Gateway*s must also use UTC time for the rule schedule to apply.

Time periods for daily, weekly, and monthly rule frequencies are restricted to the 24 hours in a single day, such that you cannot enter an end time that is earlier than the start time. Therefore, in cases where you want to apply a rule allowing access for a time period that spans across midnight into the next day, add separate rules for each day in the range covering the time period for that day only. For example, to allow access during the period 21:00 Monday until 12:00 Tuesday, configure the following rules: Rule 1: **Period**: *weekly*, **Days**: *Monday*, **Start Time**: *21:00*, **End Time**: *23:59*, **Mode**: *allow* Rule 2: **Period**: *weekly*, **Days**: *Tuesday*, **Start Time**: *00:00*, **End Time**: *11:59*, **Mode**: *allow* 

- 4. Choose the Mode that should apply during the specified times:
  - **allow**: Devices accessing resources to which this policy is applied are *authorized only* during the selected days and times.
  - **deny**: Devices accessing resources to which this policy is applied are *not authorized* during the selected days and times.

# **Setting Global Device Preferences**

*nZTA* enables a system administrator to configure settings that control and restrict the functionality available in *Ivanti Secure Access Client* when a user enrolls their device with the *Controller*. Using the settings provided, you can control if your users are able to perform functions inside the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* application such as adding or removing connections, disconnecting from the *Controller*, or exiting the application completely.

Changes are replicated out to your end user devices at the point they next connect to the Controller.



To take advantage of the restriction settings described in this section, your users must be running the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* version applicable to *nZTA* 20.12 or later. To learn more about supported software versions, see the *Release Notes*.



These setting affect Windows and macOS desktop clients only. *Ivanti Secure Access Client* Linux variants are currently not supported.

To configure Ivanti Secure Access Client settings for your user's devices:

- 1. Log into the Tenant Admin Portal.
- 2. Click Secure Access > Manage Devices.
- 3. Click the **Global Device Preferences** tab.

Device Policies Global Device Preferences	Ģ	Download Clie	nt C
e these settings to control and restrict the functionality available in Pulse Client when an end-user enrolls their device with t ntroller. These settings apply to all users in your organization, regardless of role.	he NZTA		
Enrollment			
ENROLLMENT URL			
The end-user enrollment URL for your NZTA service. Provide this URL to your users to enable them to enroll their devices with the NZTA Controller.			
https://t1.olden.pzt.dev.perfsec.com/login/enroll	SERVER CA CE	RTIFICATES	
OVERRIDE IVANTI CONNECT SECURE (ICS/IPS) SETTINGS			
When connecting simultaneously to NZTA and Ivanti Connect Secure endpoints, allow the settings on this page to override any equivalent Ivanti Connect Secure preferences for Ivanti Secure Access Client.	NO 💽	YES	
RESTRICT SETTINGS FOR NON-ADMIN USERS ONLY			
Place restrictions on Ivanti Secure Access Client functionality for non-admin device users only.	NO 💽	YES	
ENABLE BROWSER EXTENSION		1/50	
By enabling this PSAL follows browser Extension path.	NO 💽	YES	
Client Statistics			

#### Configuring Global Device Preferences

Through this page, you can configure the following settings for *Ivanti Secure Access Client* on your end-user devices:

Setting	Category	Default Value	Description
Enrollment URL	Enrollment	None	A tenant-specific end-user enrollment URL. This setting is read-only, and can be used to inform your users of the correct <i>nZTA</i> enrollment URL.
Override Classic VPN (ICS/IPS) Settings	Enrollment	No	If your users use <i>Ivanti Secure</i> <i>Access Client</i> to simultaneously connect to classic VPN products from <i>Ivanti</i> , such as ICS or IPS, enable this setting to allow <i>nZTA</i> settings on this page to take precedence over any equivalent settings configured by the classic VPN. If you disable this option, <i>Ivanti Secure Access</i> <i>Client</i> functionality is determined by the classic VPN product you are connected to.
Restrict Settings for Non- Admin Users Only	Enrollment	No	By default, <i>Application Control</i> and <i>Connection Control</i> settings are enforced for all users. Enable this setting to apply the restrictions on this page to non- admin client device users only. Admin users are unaffected. For example, with this setting enabled, if <b>Allow DISCONNECT</b> <b>connection</b> is set to "No", a non-admin user is not allowed to disconnect a <i>nZTA</i> connection in the <i>Ivanti Secure</i> <i>Access Client</i> application whereas an admin user retains this capability.

Ivanti Secure Access Client Settings

Setting	Category	Default Value	Description
Start With Splash Screen	Application Control	Yes	Display the splash screen when launching the <i>Ivanti Secure</i> <i>Access Client</i> application.
Disallow Pulse Application Exit	Application Control	No	Prevent the end user from exiting the <i>Ivanti Secure Access</i> <i>Client</i> application.
Enable Embedded Browser	Application Control	Yes	This enables PSAL to follow browser extension path. Chrome/Edge browser to install and launch Ivanti Secure Access Client.
Suppress EUP Auto Launch	Application Control	No	Prevent the end user portal auto launch.
Allow Add New Connection	Connection control	Yes	Allow the end user to add new connections in <i>Ivanti Secure Access Client</i> .
Allow Delete Connection	Connection control	Yes	Allow the end user to delete connections in <i>Ivanti Secure Access Client</i> .
Allow Disconnect Connection	Connection Control	Yes	Allow the end user to disconnect a <i>nZTA</i> connection in <i>Ivanti</i> <i>Secure Access Client</i> .
Save User Credentials	Connection Control	No	By default, users cannot save and re-use their username and password credentials with a <i>nZTA</i> connection. Enable this setting to allow credentials to be saved.
Enable Always on Mode	Always on and Lock Down Mode	No	Always-on Mode allows the Ivanti Secure Access Client to establish a connection that is always active. The feature

Setting	Category	Default Value	Description
			restricts the users to manually connect/disconnect nZTA connection.
Enable Lock Down Mode	Always on and Lock Down Mode	No	If the tunnel is disconnected, for any reason, the machine has limited connectivity (only traffic allowed with exception rules) required to re-establish the tunnel. Always-ON mode with Lockdown mode enabled denies all network traffic until connected via nZTA connection. Exemption rules can be setup to allow network traffic.

## **Configuring Lock Down Mode**

To enable Lock down this connection option, follow the below steps:

- 1. Select Secure Access > Manage Devices > Global Device Preferences.
- 2. Select Enable Always ON mode and Enable LockDown Mode option.
- 3. Click View Exceptions. When Always-on mode feature with Lockdown mode is enabled, Admin can add more exceptions to the Core Access Rules using exception rules. Exceptions already configured in the client are called Core Access Rules. DHCP, DNS, Kerberos, LDAP, SMP and Portmapper are already configured as Core Access Rules in the client. Exception rules can be configured to exempt certain types of traffic.

4. Click Add to add exception.

<	Lo	ockdown Configuration ()									
LOCKDOWN MODE EXCEPTION When Always-on VPN feature with Lockdown mode is enabled, Admin can add more exceptions to the Core Access Rules using exception rules. Exceptions already configured in the client are called Core Access Rules. DHCP, DNS, Keberos, LDAP, SMP and Portmapper are already configured as Core Access Rules in the client. Exception rules can be configured to exept certain types of traffic.											
Windows Mac											
EXCEPTIONS											
25 EXCEPTIONS				SEARCH		~ 5	7 +	ADD	<b>S</b> RESET	Û	DELETE
		NAME 🛧	PROGRAM		PROTOCOL	DIRECTION 1	ACTION	LOCAL ADDRESS	REMOTE ADDRESS	LOCAL PORT	REMOTE
=		LSA-NetLogon-UDP-Out	<%windir%>\Sysnative\lsass.	exe	UDP	Outbound	Allow	11 <del>x</del> =	***	=±11	**** <b>^</b>
=	$\Box$	LSA-NetLogon-TCP-Out	<%windir%>\Sysnative\lsass.	exe	TCP	Outbound	Allow	11. <del>x</del> =	***	=±1	***
=	$\Box$	SCCMNotification	<%windir%>\CCM\SCNotifica	ation.exe	=*=	Outbound	Allow	"*=	***	=×=	"*"
=	$\Box$	PrinterSpooler	<%windir%>\Sysnative\spool	sv.exe	=±=	Outbound	Allow	"*=	***	=**	"*"
=	$\Box$	DHCP-IPv4-In-Accept	<%windir%>\Sysnative\svchc	st.exe	UDP	Inbound	Allow	127.0	***	68	67
=	$\Box$	DHCP-IPv4-Out-Connect	<%windir%>\Sysnative\svchc	ost.exe	UDP	Outbound	Allow	127.0	***	68	67
=		Kerberos-TCP	<%win_system%>		TCP	Outbound	Allow	"*"	***	=**	88

Lock Down configuration

- 5. Select the Platform (Windows/Mac).
- 6. Enter the exception Name and Description.
- 7. Select the type:
  - Program
  - Port
  - Custom
- 8. Select the traffic type.
  - Inbound traffic is always directed towards user's machine.
  - Outbound traffic is always directed towards outside the machine.
  - Select Allow or Deny actions to configure the exception rules.
- 9. Click Add Exception.

## **Downloading Device Preferences for use with an External Service**

*nZTA* provides the facility to download a file containing the device preferences and settings on the **Global Device Preferences** tab, in JSON format, for use with external Mobile Device Management (MDM) and Mobile Application Management (MAM) services, such as *Microsoft Intune* or *Jamf* (for Apple devices). This can be useful in enabling your end-users to receive the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* package from your MDM/MAM service along with preset configuration representing your specific enrollment details. Thus, your end-users need not perform post-installation configuration of *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, and can instead connect straight to the *nZTA* service.

To download the device preferences file, use the *Download* icon at the top of the page:



Downloading Global Device Preferences as a JSON file

This link activates a download dialog to save the device preferences file, in JSON format, to your local workstation.

To use the device preferences file with *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, base64-encode the JSON contents. This is necessary to enable the JSON structure to be presented as a singular string input argument to the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* package. Several freely-available applications such as text editors, or online services, provide this facility.

Then, to specify the configuration as a command-line argument to the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* package executable, copy and paste the encoded string into the **JSONCONFIG** argument using the following syntax:

JSONCONFIG="<base64-encoded-config>"

For example:

JSONCONFIG="eyJhcHBsaWNhdGlvbl9jb250cm9sIjp7ImRpc2FsbG93a...ddjsK a435sag"

Browser-based interfaces such as Intune provide command-line argument specifiers as part of the application definition. Enter the complete argument=value string as shown above.

Providing the JSONCONFIG argument as part of the application definition on your end-user devices means that *Ivanti Secure Access Client* is installed fully-configured with the enrollment details provided by the downloaded device preferences file.



When using this mechanism to update an end-user device that has *Ivanti Secure Access Client* already installed, the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* software is upgraded as necessary, but pre-existing *nZTA* connections remain unaffected.

To learn more about how this facility might be used with your own MDM/MAM service, see your support representative.

# **Creating/Editing Secure Access Policies**

- Introduction
- <u>Viewing your Secure Access Policies</u>
- <u>Creating a Secure Access Policy</u>
- Editing a Secure Access Policy
# Introduction

A secure access policy defines how end-users can connect to *Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access (nZTA)* to access applications. Each secure access policy is defined in terms of four dimensions:

- **Gateways**: An *nZTA Gateway* (or *nZTA Gateways*) through which Application access is controlled, and on which the secure access policy is deployed, see <u>Working with Gateways</u>.
- **Users**: The user methods, user policies, and user groups that are required on the *nZTA Gateway*, see Working with User Authentication.
- **Devices**: The device policy rules and device policies that define which end user devices can access applications, see <u>Creating Device Policies and Device Policy Rules</u>.
- **Applications**: The on-premise and cloud applications to which end users have access, see Working with Applications and Application Groups.

When a secure policy is created on the *Controller*, it is downloaded automatically and applied to the *nZTA Gateway* referenced by the policy.

*nZTA* has one built-in secure access policy, *Application discovery*. This policy, when enabled and configured, directs any request from an application that is not referenced by a policy to a *default Gateway*. See Configuring a Default Gateway for Application Discovery.

## **Viewing your Secure Access Policies**

To see the list of secure access policies currently defined on the Controller:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- 2. From the *nZTA* menu, select the **Secure Access** icon, then select **Secure Access Policies**.

The Secure Access Policies page appears.

Sec	ure Acce	ss Policies (i)	43					Create
SECU 54 POI	URE ACCE	ESS POLICIES LECTED			⑦ SEARCH	Q	7	🛱 Batch Delete
	STATUS	APPLICATION / APPLICATION GROUP	GATEWAY / GATEWAY GROUP/ GATEWAY SELECTOR	USER GROUP	DEVICE POLICY	ENABLED		
		O 10.204.88.244_telnet	blackthorn-bng-2	sj group			on	:
		© 10.96.75.63_rdp	blackthorn-bng-2	sj group	RiskSenseCriticalNot		on	:
$\Box$		O 3liftWildcard	aws-blackthorn	sj group			on	:
		O 54.159.47.183_ipv4	aws-blackthorn	sj group	notepad_reqd		on	:
		O ad.doubleclick.net_will	blackthorn-debug	bng group			on	:
		Adobe	blackthorn-bng-2	bng group	Time_Of_Day_Policy_B		on	:
		Adp	az-bkthrn-eastus	bng group	OnlyIP		on	:
$\Box$		O Amazon	blackthorn-bng-2	bng group			on	:
$\bigcirc$		<ul> <li>Application discovery</li> </ul>	blackthorn-bng-3	default group			on	:
$\Box$		<ul> <li>Atlassian</li> </ul>	blackthorn-bng-2	bng group	Antivirus		on	:
		BambooHR	az-bkthrn-eastus	mac group			on	:
		BIGIP-F5	blackthorn-bng-4	bng group	OnlyIP		on	:

Viewing the list of secure access policies

Each policy is shown with the following details:

- Statusindicator: The current availability of the application.
- **Applications/Application Groups**: The Application or Application Group this secure access policy is configured for.
- **Gateways**: The *nZTA Gateway* or *nZTA Gateway* Group or *nZTA Gateway* Selector that controls access to the applications named in this secure access policy.
- **Users**: The User Group for this secure access policy.
- Device Policies: The device policy that applies to this secure access policy.
- Enabled: Whether or not this secure access policy is enabled.

### 0

Select the application name to view the Application or Application Groups page.

An *application group* is identified by the arrow adjacent to the application name. Select the arrow to show the applications available in this group:

~	Pulse Secure	esxi-169	Users	Common-Device-Policy	YES
APP					
<ul> <li>Baml</li> </ul>	000				
Conf	luence				
• JIRA					
• SJ-VF	'N Portal				
Stash	1				

The applications contained in an application group

The Status indicator uses one of the following color schemes to determine application health:

- Green: The application (or application group) is reachable.
- Gray: The Controller cannot determine the availability of the application (or application group).
- Red: The application (or application group) is unreachable.

Application health status is available only for URL or IP address-based applications. Application definitions using a URI that contain a wildcard-based FQDN are not monitored for this purpose and are shown with a *gray* status indicator to denote that the status cannot be determined.



The built-in *Application Discovery* policy is not monitored for this purpose and uses a gray status indicator.



To view a chart showing the top non-reachable applications, see <u>All Applications</u>.

Through this page you can:

- Create a new secure access policy, see Creating a Secure Access Policy.
- *Edit* an existing secure access policy, see Editing a Secure Access Policy.
- Use the *View Details* link in the message, which appears on successful creating/updating of policy, to view the newly created/updated policy in the list.
- *Enable* or *disable* a secure access policy. Select the policies you want to enable/disable using the toggle button, then select the corresponding link at the top of the page.

- *Delete* a secure access policy. Use the three dots adjacent to the policies you want to delete, then select **Delete**.
- Perform *Search* for occurrences of named applications, application groups, gateways, gateway groups, device policies, user groups and enabled status (yes/no) for the policies listed on this page.
- *Filter* the policies displayed on the page by application/application group, gateway, user, device policy, or status. When you select the *Filter* icon, a side panel dialog appears within which you can select specific criteria to filter the display to show only matching policies. Applied filters remain in place until you select **Clear All** from the side-panel, or until you leave the page.

# **Creating a Secure Access Policy**

A secure access policy defines how end users can connect to *nZTA* to access applications.

To create a secure access policy:

- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- 2. From the *nZTA* menu, select **Secure Access > Secure Access Policies**.

The Secure Access Policies page appears. This lists all current secure access policies.

Secure Acc	ess Policies (i)	43					Create
SECURE ACC 54 POLICIES - 0 SI	CESS POLICIES			SEARCH	Q	7	n Batch Delete
STATUS	APPLICATION / APPLICATION GROUP	GATEWAY / GATEWAY GROUP/ GATEWAY SELECTOR	USER GROUP	DEVICE POLICY	ENABLED		
0	© 10.204.88.244_telnet	blackthorn-bng-2	sj group			on	:
	© 10.96.75.63_rdp	blackthorn-bng-2	sj group	RiskSenseCriticalNot		on	:
	③ 3liftWildcard	aws-blackthorn	sj group			on	:
	© 54.159.47.183_ipv4	aws-blackthorn	sj group	notepad_reqd		on	:
	ad.doubleclick.net_wik	blackthorn-debug	bng group			on	:
	O Adobe	blackthorn-bng-2	bng group	Time_Of_Day_Policy_B		on	:
	Adp	az-bkthrn-eastus	bng group	OnlyIP		on	:
	O Amazon	blackthorn-bng-2	bng group			on	:
0	Application discovery	blackthorn-bng-3	default group			on	:
	O Atlassian	blackthorn-bng-2	bng group	Antivirus		on	:
	BambooHR	az-bkthrn-eastus	mac group			on	:
	BIGIP-F5	blackthorn-bng-4	bng group	OnlyIP		on	:

Viewing the Secure Access Policies page

#### 3. Click Create:

A Sec o cre Optic	te Secure Access Policy cure Access Policy defines h eate a Secure Access Policy onal Selection: Device Policy	ow end users can connect to , user has to define Application	o nSA to access applications on/Application Group, Devic	s. ce Policy, User Group and Gateway/Gat	wway Group/Gateway Selector.
1 Appl	ications/Application Groups	2 Device Policies	User Groups	4 Gateways/Gateway Groups/Gateway Selectors	5 Summary
	MOTION LICATIONS AND APP PLICATIONS AND APPLICATION	actionable-insight LICATION GROUPS	accounts-auth	esxi-21-12r1-95	
	NAME	TYPE		APPLICATION DETAILS	APPLICATION GROUP
0	amazon	single		*.amazon.com	
0	Bamboo	single			Onprem,OnPrem Apps
0	Confluence	single			Onprem,OnPrem Apps
$\bigcirc$	dailymotion	single		https://www.dailymotion.com	
0	Dropbox	single		https://www.dropbox.com/login	
0	Eng Portal	single			Onprem,OnPrem Apps
0	Flipkart	single		*.flipkart.com	
0	G1	single		*.google.com	Google
0	G2	single		*.googleapis.com	Google
0	G3	single		*.googleusercontent.com	Google
lows p	ber page: 10 🗸				<< ← 1 2 3 →

Creating a new Secure Access Policy

At any point during this process, you can reset the form data by selecting **Reset**. You can also view existing secure access policies in a pop-up dialog by selecting **View Secure Access Policies**.

4. Select the application, or application group, for the policy. Click Next.



An application, or application group, can be associated with only one secure access policy.

- From the Device Policies list, select the device policy to apply to your Secure Access Policy. Click Next.
- From the User Groups list, select the user group to apply to your Secure Access Policy. Click Next.

- From the Gateways, Gateway Groups and Gateway Selectors list, select the nZTA Gateway/Gateway Group to which you want to publish your Secure Access Policy. Click Next.
- 8. Verify the Summary details and then click Create.

The policy is created and added to the list of secure access policies.

- (Optional) To edit a listed secure access policy, select the adjacent three dots and then select
   Edit. After the secure access policy is updated, it is automatically applied to the nZTA Gateway
   that it references.
- 10. (Optional) To enable a disabled secure access policy, use the toggle button. After the secure access policy is enabled, it is automatically applied to the *nZTA Gateway* that it references.
- 11. (Optional) To disable an enabled secure access policy, use the toggle button.
- 12. (Optional) To delete an *unused* secure access policy, select the adjacent three dots and then select **Delete**. Confirm the deletion in the subsequent dialog.

After the secure access policy is created, it is automatically downloaded and applied to the *nZTA Gateway* that it references.



Secure Access Policies can take several minutes to reach their destination *nZTA Gateway*(s). If an entered policy contains configuration that fails to apply properly due to a compatibility or validation problem, *nZTA* displays an error message that the applied configuration is incorrect. *nZTA* attempts to re-apply the configuration in the policy at 15 minute intervals, and repeats this process until such a time as the policy is corrected or deleted.

## **Editing a Secure Access Policy**

You can edit a secure access policy to change how end users connect to *nZTA* to access applications.

For example, you must edit the *Application discovery* secure access policy if you want to use a default gateway to support the application discovery feature. To do this, you must assign an unused gateway to the secure access policy. See <u>Configuring a Default Gateway for Application Discovery</u> for details of default gateways.

To edit a secure access policy:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- 2. From the nZTA menu, select the Secure Access icon, then select Secure Access Policies.

The Secure Access Policies page appears. This lists all current secure access policies.

3. Select the three dots adjacent to the secure access policy you want to edit, then select Edit.

The Edit Secure Access Policy form appears.

	У					
Secure Access Policy de	fines how end users can conr	nect to nSA to access applicition (Application Group)	ations. Device Policy, User Group a	ad Gatoway/G	Satoway Group/Gatoway	
elector.	Folicy, user has to define App	plication/Application oroup,	Device Folicy, Oser Oroup a	iu Galeway/G	Saleway Oroup/Galeway	
)ptional Selections: Devic	e Policy and Gateways					
1	2	3	4)		- 5	
Applications/Application Gr	oups Device Policies	User Groups	Gateways/Gateway	y electors	Summary	
			Oloups/ Outeway (	0000013		
facebook	None	accounts-auth	None			
		accounts-auth	None			
APPLICATIONS AND	APPLICATION GROUF	accounts-auth	None			
APPLICATIONS AND APPLICATIONS AND APPLIC AME	APPLICATION GROUPS	accounts-auth PS	None	APPLIC	CATION GROUP	
Facebook	None APPLICATION GROUF CATION GROUPS TYPE	accounts-auth	None	APPLIC	CATION GROUP	
facebook APPLICATIONS AND APPLICATIONS AND APPLIC IAME acebook	None  APPLICATION GROUP CATION GROUPS  TYPE single	accounts-auth 2S Appl http	ICATION DETAILS	APPLIC	CATION GROUP	
Tacebook	None O APPLICATION GROUP CATION GROUPS TYPE single	accounts-auth PS APPL http	None	APPLIC	CATION GROUP	
facebook PPLICATIONS AND APPLICATIONS AND APPLIC AME acebook	None O APPLICATION GROUP CATION GROUPS TYPE single	accounts-auth PS Appl http	ICATION DETAILS	APPLIC	CATION GROUP	

Editing a Secure Access Policy

The Application Type and Application cannot be changed.

- 4. Make any required changes to the secure access policy.
- 5. Select Save.

# **Setting Up Secure Access Client**

This chapter covers the following topics:

- "Enrolling Ivanti Secure Access Client" on the next page
- "Using Ivanti Secure Access Client with nZTA" on page 676
- "Upgrading Ivanti Secure Access Client" on page 695

## **Enrolling Ivanti Secure Access Client**

- Introduction
- Enrolling a Windows Device
- Enrolling a macOS Device
- Enrolling a Linux Device
- Enrolling an iOS Device
- Enrolling an Android Device

### Introduction

After you have created the required configuration for your *Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access (nZTA)* service, you can begin to enroll your end user devices.

To see which devices have been enrolled, and to perform certain actions on enrolled devices, use the **Insights > Devices** page. For more details, see "Viewing Currently Enrolled User Devices" on page 161.

To configure settings that control and restrict the functionality available in Ivanti Secure Access Client when a user enrolls their device with the Controller, use the **Global Device Preferences** tab in the **Secure Access > Manage Devices** page. For more details, see "Setting Global Device Preferences" on page 604.



For security reasons, only the authorized user account used to enroll a device is subsequently permitted to sign-in to *nZTA* on that device.

The following desktop and mobile device types are supported:

- Ivanti Secure Access Client on Windows OS desktop, see Enrolling a Windows Desktop Device.
- Ivanti Secure Access Client on macOS desktop, see Enrolling a macOS Desktop Device.
- Ivanti Secure Access Client on Linux desktop, see Enrolling a Linux Desktop Device.
- Ivanti Secure Access Client on iOS mobile device, see Enrolling an iOS Mobile Device.
- Ivanti Secure Access Client on Android mobile device, see Enrolling an Android Mobile Device.

The table below summarizes feature support for each device type:

Feature	iOS	Android	macOS	Windows	Linux
On-Demand Connection	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
End User Portal	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes (SSO,RDP,SSH not supported)
SAML Auto Sign-in & Single Logout (SLO)	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Simultaneous Connection	No	No	Yes	Yes	No
Automatic <i>Ivanti</i> <i>Secure Access Client</i> Upgrade	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Browser-Based Enrollment	No	No	Yes	Yes	No
Dynamic Policy/CARTA	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes (CARTA message is not supported)
Device Policy	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes (limited to support for File, Port number, and Process policy types)
FQDN/IP based Application	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes (Split DNS is not supported)
Client Disconnect	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Log Upload	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
<i>nZTA</i> Client Settings	No	No	Yes	Yes	No

Feature Support for Clients

Feature	iOS	Android	macOS	Windows	Linux
CNAME FQDN App	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Application Discovery Default Gateway	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
GSLB Support	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Customer PKI support (BYOC)	No	No	Yes	Yes	No
Multiple sign-in URL support	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

After a device is enrolled with *nZTA*, requests from each application are handled by the Gateway referenced in the secure access policy for the application.

A default Gateway can also be configured on the *Controller*, which handles requests from all applications that are not referenced by a secure access policy, see <u>Application Discovery with Ivanti</u> <u>Secure Access Client</u>.

## **Enrolling a Windows Device**

Before you start this process, you must have an Windows sign-in URL for *nZTA*, based on the tenant FQDN provided by the *lvanti* DevOps/Support organization.



If you have an existing *Ivanti Secure Access Client* installed, you must first uninstall it before beginning the *nZTA* enrollment process.



The Domain Admin must also ensure that Windows desktop machines can successfully connect to the Windows domain by updating the Trusted Root CA Certificates on all machines, see Enabling Trusted Root CA Certificate on Windows Domain.

To enroll a Windows desktop device:

- 1. Log into your Windows desktop.
- 2. Start a browser session.

 In your browser, enter the *nZTA* enrollment URL into your address bar. For example, "https://tenant1.mycompany.com/login/" or "https://tenant1.mycompany.com/login/saleslogin/".

A login page appears.

4. Provide your credentials to access *nZTA* enrollment.

The launcher page appears, for example:

ivanti [®] Ivanti NEURONS FOR ZTA
Searching for the application launcher
32
If you know that the application launcher is not installed, skip the wait and download now Download
If you do not want to proceed, please click <u>have</u> to go back.

nZTA Launcher (Windows)

5. Click **Download** and save the application launcher *PulseSecureAppLauncher.msi* file locally.



A "HERE" hyperlink is displayed in the browser. This is required *after* the launcher has installed.

- 6. Run the downloaded file to install the launcher.
- 7. Confirm the completion of the launcher installation.
- 8. In the browser, click the "HERE" hyperlink to continue with the enrollment.

A browser dialog requests confirmation to start the launcher app.

9. Click Open Pulse Secure Application Launcher.

The launcher starts.

10. Accept any certificate warnings.

A progress bar indicates installation status.

- 11. Accept that the *PulseSetupClientOCX.exe* file can make changes to your device.
- 12. Accept that the *PulseSetupClientOCX64.exe* file can make changes to your device.
- 13. Accept that the *Pulse Secure Component Manager* Installer application can make changes to your device.

Ivanti Secure Access Client then downloads.

14. Accept that the Pulse Secure Component Manager can make changes to your device.

Ivanti Secure Access Client then installs and starts, and reports on a number of tasks:

- Enrolling the User.
- Fetching and Importing Client Certificates. You must confirm any certificate requests.
- Fetching and Importing CA Certificates. You must confirm any certificate requests.
- Launching the Windows Edge/Webview2 browser. In a typical enrollment, upon successful authentication to the Controller, *Ivanti Secure Access Client* automatically shows the end-user portal applications page through a Windows Edge/Webview2 browser. This feature is supported with ISAC client version 22.6R1.

Onboarding is then complete.

Ivanti Secure Access Client appears as a task in the Windows task bar. For example:



Ivanti Secure Access Client Task in Taskbar (Windows)

- 15. When the Controller requests a certificate from the client, accept the request.
- 16. Log into the Controller using your Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access service user credentials.

The compliance of the device is checked.

17. (Optional) If your sign-in authentication policy is configured for Multi-Factor Authentication, you might be required to complete a TOTP (Time-based One Time Password) secondary authentication step each time you sign in.

For a first time login, the user is presented with a TOTP registration page:

Lunti Course Assess Client							_	-	$\sim$
Ivanu secure Access Client	WELCOME TO IVANTI NE	URONS FOR ZTA						U	^ '
	Add test1 user account to you	r two factor authenticatio	on app						
	1. Configure the App: Open your two factor authenti	ication app and add "test1	" user account by sca	nning the below QR cod	de.lf you can't use QR coo	ie,			
	ulen enter tni <b>s lext</b>								
	2. Store Backup Codes: Backup codes can be used to authentication codes. Followir	access your account in th ng backup codes are only	ie event you loose acc for one time use, we	cess to your device and recommend you to save	cannot receive two-facto • them securely.	r			
	107203 108 201204 104	1115 MR	1754	NUT A	101000F	Ð			
	3. Enter token code that the Enter Token Code Sign In	application generates	H H						

First-time login TOTP registration

Use this page to add your user details to an authenticator app on your device, such as Google Authenticator or Microsoft Authenticator. If you do not yet have such a two-factor authenticator app installed, do that now.

Scan the QR code, or enter the provided text, to add the user details to your authenticator app. Then, store the generated backup codes in a secure location for future retrieval of a lost account.

Finally, enter the token code generated by the authenticator app into the box provided, then select **Sign In**.



For future sign-in attempts, the TOTP challenge dialog appears without the registration details or backup codes. As before, you provide the generated token code from your authenticator app into the box provided and select **Sign In**.

When Ivanti Secure Access Client connects, it is minimised to the taskbar.

18. Open Ivanti Secure Access Client from the taskbar.

*Ivanti Secure Access Client* appears. It shows the active connection to the *Controller* and presents a **Connect** button to access assigned applications and resources. For example:

Ivanti Secure Access Client	- 🗆 X
E 1 Active Connection	(«) Enroll Status
Connections	Onboarding status:ZTA Onboarding Successful. Do you wish to connect to the ZTA
desk1 ZTA 💿 :	Controller?
Ivanti Secure Access Client (Windows)	



To learn more about how *Ivanti Secure Access Client* maintains a connection with the *Controller*, and how user sessions are validated with your *nZTA Gateways*, see Introduction.

19. In a typical enrollment, upon successful authentication to the *Controller*, *Ivanti Secure Access Client* automatically shows the end-user portal applications page through an embedded browser. For example:

ivanti Ivanti Neuron	NS FOR ZTA							<b>°</b>
Applications						-0-	E	⊞
Web 3							↑ /	^
⊕ flipkart	Ľ	⊕ ndtv	Ľ	⊕ msys				
Custom 0							↑ <i>/</i>	~
				(i) No A	pplications available			

Assigned Applications and Resources (Windows)

After the *nZTA* end-user portal applications page appears, click any displayed resource to launch that item in your default system browser. To re-show the end-user portal at a future time, use the **ZTA** button in the *Ivanti Secure Access Client nZTA* connection.



When you launch an SSO (Single Sign-on) application from the end-user portal for the first time in a session, *nZTA* presents a pop-up dialog requesting the user to select a certificate with which to authenticate this device with the *Controller*. This is a one-time activity at the beginning of a session, and all further SSO application accesses (to any SSO application) re-use the same certificate.



If a default Gateway is configured on the *Controller*, and *nZTA* is the only active connection, the default Gateway handles all requests for unlisted applications from your Windows device. Refer to Using Application Discovery with Ivanti Secure Access Client.

#### **Enabling Trusted Root CA Certificate on Windows Domain**

To ensure that Windows desktop machines can successfully connect to the Windows domain, each machine must update its Trusted Root CA Certificates.

*Ivanti* recommends that the Domain Admin configures the Public Key Policies on the Group Policy Object and publishes it to all connected Windows desktops.

To add certificates to the Trusted Root Certification Authorities store for a Windows domain:

1. Access the Windows domain server and log in.



*Domain Admins* is the minimum group membership required to complete this procedure.

- 2. Open the Server Manager.
- 3. Under Features Summary, click Add Features.
- 4. Select the Group Policy Management check box.
- 5. Click Next.
- 6. Click Install.

- 7. Wait until the **Installation Results** page shows that the installation of the **Group Policy Management Console** was successful.
- 8. Click Close.
- 9. Click Start, click Administrative Tools and then click Group Policy Management.

The Group Policy Management Console appears.

- 10. In the console tree, double-click to expand *Group Policy Objects* in the forest and domain that contains the *Default Domain Policy* GPO.
- 11. Right-click the Default Domain Policy object, and then click Edit.
- 12. In the **Group Policy Management Console**, select *Computer Configuration > Windows Settings* > *Security Settings > Public Key Policies*.
- 13. Right-click the Trusted Root Certification Authorities store.
- 14. Click Import and follow the steps in the Certificate Import Wizard to import the certificates.



Enabling Trusted Root CA Certificate

When each Windows desktop machine next connects, the required Trusted Root CA Certificate installs automatically on the machine.

#### **Enrolling a macOS Device**

Before you start this process, you must have a sign-in URL for *nZTA*, based on the tenant FQDN provided by the *Ivanti* DevOps/Support organization.



If you have an existing *Ivanti Secure Access Client* installed, you must first uninstall it before beginning the *nZTA* enrollment process.

To enroll a macOS desktop device:

- 1. Log into your macOS desktop.
- 2. Start a browser session.
- 3. In your browser, enter the *nZTA* sign-in URL into your address bar.

For example,

- Default: "https://tenant1.mycompany.com/login/enroll"
- Custom: "https://tenant1.mycompany.com/login/<custom_user_signin>/".

A login page appears.

4. Provide your credentials to access *nZTA* enrollment.

The launcher page appears, for example:

ivant ¹ Ivanti Neurons For ZTA
Searching for the application launcher
32
If you know that the application launcher is not installed, skip the wait and download now
Download
If you do not want to proceed, please click <u>have</u> to go back.

nZTA Launcher macOS

5. Click **Download** and save the application launcher PulseSecureAppLauncher.dmg file locally.



6. Click the downloaded file.

The downloaded file opens, and a folder appears that contains the *PulseSecureAppLauncher.mpkg* file.

- 7. Double click the PulseSecureAppLauncher.mpkg file.
- 8. Click **Continue** when the install starts.
- 9. Wait until the install completes.
- 10. In the browser, click the "HERE" hyperlink to continue with the enrollment.

A browser dialog requests confirmation to start the launcher app.

#### 11. Click Open PulseApplicationLauncher.

The launcher starts.

- 12. Confirm that you want to **Open** the application.
- 13. Confirm that you want the client to contact the *Controller*.

Ivanti Secure Access Client then downloads and installs.

14. Enter your macOS device credentials.

*Ivanti Secure Access Client* then installs and starts. The *nZTA* connection starts automatically. For example:

	vanti Secure	Access Client	
≡		Connection Deta	ils
		Connection Informati	on
1		Name	ZTA
Active Connection		Status	CONNECTING
		Connection source	Manual
		Server URL	
Connections	Ð	0.00040.00000	.com/login/
		enroll	
(0)	:		
1411-011-011-014	:		
We depend of the	:		
IN CONTRACTOR	:		
1961 No. 100 (1960)	:		
100 - 100 mar (201) a	:		
ZTA ZTA (***)	:		Cancel

macOS Ivanti Secure Access Client



To learn more about how *Ivanti Secure Access Client* maintains a connection with the *Controller*, and how user sessions are validated with your *nZTA Gateways*, see Introduction.

*Ivanti Secure Access Client* appears as an icon in the macOS system tray.

🚰 💴 🎁 🕑 💿 100% 🗺 🗢 😳 🔍 🚍 🍨

Ivanti Secure Access Client in the System Tray (indicated)

The connection activity reports on a number of tasks:

- Enrolling the User.
- Fetching and Importing Client Certificates. You must confirm any certificate requests.
- Fetching and Importing CA Certificates. You must confirm any certificate requests.

• Installing the CEF (Chromium Embedded Framework) browser. This is an embedded browser used by Ivanti Secure Access Client for SAML-based login and to display the nZTA end-user portal applications page.

Onboarding is then complete.

15. In a typical enrollment, upon successful authentication to the *Controller, Ivanti Secure Access Client* automatically signs in the user.

(Optional) If your sign-in authentication policy is configured for Multi-Factor Authentication, you
might be required to complete a TOTP (Time-based One Time Password) secondary
authentication step each time you sign in.

For a first time login,	the user is pro	esented with a	TOTP regist	ration page:
<u> </u>			<u> </u>	

🔄 Ivanti Secure Access Client	WELCOME TO IVA	NTI NEURONS FOR	714				_	σ	×^
	Add test1 user account	nt to your two factor auth	entication app						
	1. Configure the App								
	Open your two factor then enter this text	authentication app and a	dd "test1" user account	by scanning the below (	QR code.lf you can't use Q	R code,			
	2. Store Backup Code	es:							
	Backup codes can be used to access your account in the event you loose access to your device and cannot receive two-factor authentication codes. Following backup codes are only for one time use, we recommend you to save them securely.					factor			
	01918	10.5116	MIPSUM	1027.0	101008	Ð			
	100058	104227	111220	56,8150	0.010				
	3. Enter token code t	hat the application ge	nerates:						
	Enter Token Code								
	Sign In								
									1

First-time login TOTP registration

Use this page to add your user details to an authenticator app on your device, such as Google Authenticator or Microsoft Authenticator. If you do not yet have such a two-factor authenticator app installed, do that now.

Scan the QR code, or enter the provided text, to add the user details to your authenticator app. Then, store the generated backup codes in a secure location for future retrieval of a lost account.

Finally, enter the token code generated by the authenticator app into the box provided, then select **Sign In**.



For future sign-in attempts, the TOTP challenge dialog appears without the registration details or backup codes. As before, you provide the generated token code from your authenticator app into the box provided and select **Sign In**.

When Ivanti Secure Access Client connects, it is minimised to the taskbar.

- 17. Accept the request to access the private key.
- 18. Accept the request to present a certificate for access to browser-based resources.

The *nZTA* end-user portal applications page appears. For example:

pplications					-0- -0-	∷≡	E
Veb 3						<b>↑</b> ،	^
flipkart	Ľ	⊕ ndtv	Ľ	msys			
urtom 0						<b>^</b>	^

Assigned Applications and Resources

After the *nZTA* end-user portal applications page appears, click any displayed resource to launch that item in your default system browser. To re-show the end-user portal at a future time, click the **ZTA** button in the *Ivanti Secure Access Client nZTA* connection.

When you launch an SSO (Single Sign-on) application from the end-user portal for the first time in a session, *nZTA* presents a pop-up dialog requesting the user to select a certificate with which to authenticate this device with the *Controller*. This is a one-time activity at the beginning of a session, and all further SSO application accesses (to any SSO application) re-use the same certificate.

If a default Gateway is configured on the *Controller*, and *nZTA* is the only active connection, the default Gateway will handle all requests for unlisted applications from the macOS desktop device. Refer to <u>Using Application Discovery with Ivanti Secure Access Client</u>.

### **Enrolling a Linux Device**



Ð

Browser-based enrollment is not supported for *Ivanti Secure Access Client* on Linux devices. Follow the instructions in this section to enroll the device by creating a *nZTA* connection through the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* application. To see the full feature support list for Linux devices, see Introduction.

Before you start this process, you must have:

- A Linux sign-in URL for *nZTA*, based on the tenant FQDN provided by the *lvanti* DevOps/Support organization.
- The download location URL for your required installation package, as provided by the *Ivanti* DevOps/Support organization.

If you have an existing *Ivanti Secure Access Client* installed, you must first uninstall it before beginning the *nZTA* enrollment process.

Ivanti Secure Access Client is fully supported for use with nZTA on the following Linux variants:

• Ubuntu, see Enrolling on Ubuntu or Debian.

While not fully supported, the following Linux variants are considered compatible:

- Debian, see Enrolling on Ubuntu or Debian.
- Fedora, see Enrolling on Fedora or CentOS/RHEL.
- Centos/RHEL, see Enrolling on Fedora or CentOS/RHEL.

To learn more, contact your support representative.

#### **Enrolling on Ubuntu or Debian**

This section describes the installation of a *Ivanti Secure Access Client* Linux variants on either Ubuntu or Debian. If you want to install on either Fedora or CentOS/RHEL operating systems, refer to Enrolling on Fedora or CentOS/RHEL.

To enroll a Linux desktop device on Ubuntu or Debian:

- 1. Log into your Linux device.
- 2. Obtain the required *Ivanti Secure Access Client* for Linux installation package and download it to your Linux device. To obtain the installation package, contact your support representative.
- 3. Start a command line interface (CLI) terminal session.
- 4. If not already installed, install the prerequisite packages nss3-tools and net-tools. Make sure your package manager availability list is up to date, then run the following command for each package in turn:

sudo apt-get install <dependency package name>

Repeat this step for each prerequisite package.

5. Start the Ivanti Secure Access Client for Linux package installation at the prompt:

```
sudo dpkg -i <client installation package>
```

The installation process reports back to the session. For example, for Ubuntu:

```
Selecting previously unselected package pulsesecure.
(Reading database ... xxxxx files and directories currently
installed.)
Preparing to unpack pulsesecure_9.1.R11_amd64.deb ...
Unpacking pulsesecure (9.1.R11) ...
Setting up pulsesecure (9.1.R11) ...
Created symlink /etc/systemd/system/multi-
user.target.wants/pulsesecure.service →
/lib/systemd/system/pulsesecure.service.
Processing triggers for desktop-file-utils (0.24-lubuntu3)
...
Processing triggers for gnome-menus (3.36.0-lubuntu1) ...
Processing triggers for mime-support (3.64ubuntu1) ...
Processing triggers for dbus (1.12.16-2ubuntu2.1) ...
Processing triggers for man-db (2.9.1-1) ...
```

6. Start the client. To do this, either start the *PulseUI* app from the **Activities** bar, or use the following from the command line:

/opt/pulsesecure/bin/pulseUI

The client appears:



nZTA Ubuntu/Debian Linux Client

- 7. Add the required connection. To do this:
  - Click the *plus* icon in the client toolbar.

The Add Connection dialog appears.

	Add Connection	8
Type:		
Policy Secure (UAC) of	or Connect Secure (VPN)	-
Name:		
Server URL:		
	Connect	Cancel
	Connect	Calicer

nZTA Linux Add Connection

- For **Type**, select *nZTA Connection*.
- For Name, enter a suitably identifying name for the connection.
- For **Server URL**, enter the Linux sign-in URL provided by the *Ivanti* DevOps/Support organization.

For example,

- Default: "https://tenant1.mycompany.com/login/enroll"
- Custom: "https://tenant1.mycompany.com/login/<custom_user_signin>/".

• Click Add to add the connection and close the dialog.

Pulse Secure
 - 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 · 
 ·

The new connection is added to the list of connections.

nZTA Linux nZTA Connection

8. For the Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access connection, click Connect.

A login dialog appears. For example:

S Pulse Secure	-	• •		S Pu	I <b>lse</b> Secure
File Help			Г	v	
Connections			L	Connect to	o: desk1
Connections (+	) @	×	L	Describerth	he fellender med entitle to some late the some stime
desk1 Connecting	Cance	1	L	Flovide d	ne following credentials to complete the connection.
Server URL: desk1.coral.pzt.dev.perfsec.com/login/enroll Status : Connecting			L		User Name:
Compliance:			L		
			L		
			L		Password:
			L		
			L		Connect
			L		
			1		
© 2010-2021 by Pulse Secure, LLC All rights reserved	C	Close			

nZTA Linux nZTA Credentials

9. Enter your controller credentials and click Connect.

A connection activity dialog reports a number of tasks:

- Enrolling the user.
- Fetching and Importing of Client Certificates. You must confirm any certificate requests.
- Fetching and Importing of CA Certificates. You must confirm any certificate requests.
- Installing the CEF (Chromium Embedded Framework) browser. This is an embedded browser used by Ivanti Secure Access Client for SAML-based login and to display the nZTA end-user portal applications page.
- Completion of the connection. For example:



nZTA Linux ZTA Connection Success

10. Click **OK** to connect to *nZTA*.

When this completes, the connection updates. For example:



nZTA Linux ZTA Connected

Onboarding is then complete.



To learn more about how *Ivanti Secure Access Client* maintains a connection with the *Controller*, and how user sessions are validated with your *nZTA Gateways*, see <u>Introduction</u>.

(Optional) If your sign-in authentication policy is configured for Multi-Factor Authentication, you
might be required to complete a TOTP (Time-based One Time Password) secondary
authentication step each time you sign in.

For a first time login, the user is presented with a TOTP registration page:

🔲 kunti Sanun Aanaa (*						_	-	× +
🖭 wanti Secure Access Client	WELCOME TO IVANTI NEURONS F	OR ZTA				_	U	Â
	Add test1 user account to your two factor	authentication app						
	1. Configure the App: Open your two factor authentication app a then enter this text	and add "test1" user accoun	t by scanning the below C	QR code.lf you can't use Q	IR code,			
	Store Backup Codes: Backup codes can be used to access your account in the event you loose access to your device and cannot receive two-factor authentication codes. Following backup codes are only for one time use, we recommend you to save them securely.							
	07103 10103 01003 100027	NUPLA IVERS	META MARKA	10100.00 015110	G			
	3. Enter token code that the application Enter Token Code Sign In	n generates:						ľ

First-time login TOTP registration

Use this page to add your user details to an authenticator app on your device, such as Google Authenticator or Microsoft Authenticator. If you do not yet have such a two-factor authenticator app installed, do that now.

Scan the QR code, or enter the provided text, to add the user details to your authenticator app. Then, store the generated backup codes in a secure location for future retrieval of a lost account.

Finally, enter the token code generated by the authenticator app into the box provided, then select **Sign In**.



For future sign-in attempts, the TOTP challenge dialog appears without the registration details or backup codes. As before, you provide the generated token code from your authenticator app into the box provided and select **Sign In**.

- 12. In a typical enrollment, upon successful authentication to the *Controller, Ivanti Secure Access Client* automatically shows the end-user portal applications page through an embedded browser. To re-show this portal at a future time, click the **ZTA** button in the *Ivanti Secure Access Client nZTA* connection. Alternatively, access your permitted applications from the Linux command line.
- 13. (Optional) To uninstall *Ivanti Secure Access Client* Linux variants, enter the following command at the prompt and provide a password:

[sudo] password for <user>: sudo apt-get purge pulsesecure

After the process completes successfully, the Linux client has been removed.



Ivanti Secure Access Client Linux variants do not support the use of default gateways.



Device rule types for *Ivanti Secure Access Client* Linux variants are limited to *File*, *Port*, and *Process*. For details of these device rule types, see <u>Creating Device Policy</u> Rules.

#### **Enrolling on Fedora or CentOS/RHEL**

This section describes the installation of *Ivanti Secure Access Client* Linux variants on either Fedora or CentOS/RHEL. If you want to install on either Ubuntu or Debian operating systems, refer to Enrolling on Ubuntu or Debian.

To enroll a Linux desktop device on Fedora or CentOS/RHEL:

- 1. Log into your Linux device.
- 2. Obtain the required *Ivanti Secure Access Client* for Linux installation package and download it to your Linux device. To obtain the installation package, contact your support representative.
- 3. Start a command line interface (CLI) terminal session.

4. If not already installed, install the prerequisite packages nss3-tools and net-tools. Make sure your package manager availability list is up to date, then run the following command for each package in turn:

sudo yum install <dependency package name>

Repeat this step for each prerequisite package.

5. Start the Ivanti Secure Access Client for Linux package installation at the prompt:

sudo rpm -ivh <client installation package>

The installation process reports back to the session. For example, for Fedora:

6. Start the client. To do this, either start the *PulseUI* app from the **Activities** bar, or use the following from the command line:

/opt/pulsesecure/bin/pulseUI

The client appears:



nZTA Ubuntu/Debian Linux Client
- 7. Add the required connection. To do this:
  - Click the *plus* icon in the client toolbar.

The Add Connection dialog appears.

Type:	N	
Policy Secure (UAC) or	r Connect Secure (VPN)	•
Name:		
Comer LIDI		
Server UKL:		

nZTA Linux Add Connection

- For **Type**, select *nZTA Connection*.
- For Name, enter a suitably-identifying name.
- For **Server URL**, enter the Linux sign-in URL provided by the *Ivanti* DevOps/Support organization.

For example,

- Default: "https://tenant1.mycompany.com/login/enroll"
- Custom: "https://tenant1.mycompany.com/login/<custom_user_signin>/"

• Click Add to add the connection and close the dialog.

The new connection is added to the list of connections.



nZTA Linux nZTA Connection

8. For the Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access connection, click Connect.

A login dialog appears. For example:

<b>Secure</b>	- • 🛞	<b>Pulse</b> Secure
File Help		$\mathbf{v}$
Connections		Connect to: desk1
desk1 Connecting Server URL: desk1.coral.pzt.dev.perfsec.com/login/enroll	Cancel	Provide the following credentials to complete the connection.
Status : Connecting Compliance:		User Name:
		Password:
		Connect Cancel
© 2010-2021 by Pulse Secure, LLC All rights reserved	Close	y y y

nZTA Linux nZTA Credentials

9. Enter your controller credentials and click Connect.

A connection activity dialog reports a number of tasks:

- Enrolling the user.
- Fetching and Importing of Client Certificates. You must confirm any certificate requests.
- Fetching and Importing of CA Certificates. You must confirm any certificate requests.
- Installing the CEF (Chromium Embedded Framework) browser. This is an embedded browser used by Ivanti Secure Access Client for SAML-based login and to display the nZTA end-user portal applications page.
- Completion of the connection. For example:



nZTA Linux ZTA Connection Success

Onboarding is then complete.



To learn more about how *Ivanti Secure Access Client* maintains a connection with the *Controller*, and how user sessions are validated with your *nZTA Gateways*, see <u>Introduction</u>.

(Optional) If your sign-in authentication policy is configured for Multi-Factor Authentication, you
might be required to complete a TOTP (Time-based One Time Password) secondary
authentication step each time you sign in.

For a first time login, the user is presented with a TOTP registration page:

WELCOME TO IVANTI NEURONS FOR ZTA         Add test1 user account to your two factor authentication app         1. Configure the App:         Open your two factor authentication app and add "test1" user account by scanning the below QR code.If you can't use QR code, then enter this text         Image: Comparison of the provide the test of the provide the test of the provide the test of the provide test of test of the provide test of the provide test of the provide test of the provide test of tes
Add test1 user account to your two factor authentication app         1. Configure the App:         Open your two factor authentication app and add "test1" user account by scanning the below QR code.If you can't use QR code, then enter this text         Image: Comparison of the problem o
<ul> <li>1. Configure the App: Open your two factor authentication app and add "test!" user account by scanning the below QR code.If you can't use QR code, then enter this text</li> <li>Image: Image: Imag</li></ul>
Contract of the second se
2. Store Backup Codes: Backup codes can be used to access your account in the event you loose access to your device and cannot receive two-factor
authentication codes. Following backup codes are only for one time use, we recommend you to save them securely.
artes inters berton sertor (P
EXEMPT FYERE MALENCE OFFICE
3. Enter token code that the application generates:
Enter Token Code
Sign In

First-time login TOTP registration

Use this page to add your user details to an authenticator app on your device, such as Google Authenticator or Microsoft Authenticator. If you do not yet have such a two-factor authenticator app installed, do that now.

Scan the QR code, or enter the provided text, to add the user details to your authenticator app. Then, store the generated backup codes in a secure location for future retrieval of a lost account.

Finally, enter the token code generated by the authenticator app into the box provided, then select **Sign In**.

For future sign-in attempts, the TOTP challenge dialog appears without the registration details or backup codes. As before, you provide the generated token code from your authenticator app into the box provided and select **Sign In**.

- 11. In a typical enrollment, upon successful authentication to the *Controller, Ivanti Secure Access Client* automatically shows the end-user portal applications page through an embedded browser. To re-show this portal at a future time, click the **ZTA** button in the *Ivanti Secure Access ClientnZTA* connection. Alternatively, access your permitted applications from the Linux command line.
- 12. (Optional) To uninstall *Ivanti Secure Access Client* Linux variants, enter the following command at the prompt and provide a password:

```
sudo rpm -e pulsesecure
[sudo] password for <user>:
```

After the process completes successfully, the Linux client has been removed.



Ivanti Secure Access Client Linux variants do not support the use of default gateways.



Device rule types for *Ivanti Secure Access Client* Linux variants are limited to *File, Port,* and *Process.* For details of these device rule types, see <u>Creating Device Policy Rules</u>.

## **Enrolling an iOS Device**



Application discovery and the use of a default Gateway is not supported from iOS mobile devices.



For mobile devices, Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access compliance requires iOS v12.0 or later.

Before you start this process, you must have an iOS sign-in URL for *nZTA*, based on the tenant FQDN provided by the *Ivanti* DevOps/Support organization. The procedure to enroll your iOS device differs depending on whether you have an existing *Ivanti Secure Access Client* app installed and configured with a connection to a classic VPN product.

To enroll an iOS device that has a previous connection to a classic VPN product:

- 1. Start your iOS device and access its home page.
- 2. Locate and start the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* app.

3. In the main app menu, select Enroll To ZTA:



The Ivanti Secure Access Client app menu

The Enroll with ZTA screen appears.

4. The network type auto populates as Zero Trust Access. For Connection Name, specify a descriptive name for this connection. The name you specify appears in the Ivanti Secure Access Client interface.

5. For URL, specify the network that you want to connect to. Enter the nZTA controller URL as provided by the administrator.

Freedill with 770	
Enroll with ZTA	
Access	
n Name	
provided by your admin	
Add	
	t Access n Name ) . provided by your admin

Enter sign-in URL

- Click Add to save your new connection and the connection displays in the Home page. Click
   Enroll to add the connection and initiate a connection to the network.
- 7. To complete the enrollment procedure, follow the remaining steps below

To enroll an iOS device with no previous Ivanti Secure Access Client installation:

- 1. Start your iOS device and access its home page.
- 2. Open the App Store application.

3. In the search function, enter "Ivanti Secure Access Client".



Searching the iOS App Store for Ivanti Secure Access Client

4. From the search results, locate, download, and install the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* app.

The *Ivanti Secure Access Client* app is installed on your device and added to the interface. For example:



Ivanti Secure Access Client App Icon

5. Start the Ivanti Secure Access Client app.

The welcome screen appears. For example:

:48 🗸	🗢 🚺
	@
Welcome to	
ivanti	
Secure Access Client	
Please enter either your corpora	te email address
or the URL provided by your com	npany.
Corporate email or URL	
	Connect
Version 22.3.1.91069	
© 2010-2022 by Ivanti, Inc. All rights rese	erved.

Ivanti Secure Access Client Welcome Screen

6. On the welcome screen, enter the *nZTA* sign-in URL provided in your invitation email.

For example,

- Default: "https://tenant1.mycompany.com/login/enroll"
- Custom: "https://tenant1.mycompany.com/login/<custom_user_signin>/".
- 7. Click Connect.
- 8. To complete the enrollment procedure, follow the remaining steps below

For both of the previous iOS device procedures, continue with the following steps:

1. Perform any required authentication for enrolling. (Local or Azure AD credentials)

The **Connections** screen appears.

2. Accept any request to download a VPN configuration from the Controller. For example:



Adding VPN Configuration

After the *nZTA* profile is added to your Client configuration, the compliance of the device is checked. Then, session information is gathered and a VPN tunnel to the *Controller* is created automatically. This is indicated in the iOS status bar.

The **Connections** screen shows the active *Controller* connection:

9:41	.11 🤇	<b>,</b>
≡		
1		
Active Connection Test2		
Connections		Ŧ
Swipe and Tap (=) to connect/disconnec	t	
Test2	((0))	:
Test1	((0))	:
Test1	((0))	:
Test1	((0))	:
Test1	(co))	:
Test1	(0)	:
Test1	((0)	:
Test1	((0)	:
Test1	((0)	:
Test1	((0))	:

iOS Active nZTA Connection



To learn more about how *Ivanti Secure Access Client* maintains a connection with the *Controller*, and how user sessions are validated with your *nZTA Gateways*, see <u>Introduction</u>.

3. (Optional) If your sign-in authentication policy is configured for Multi-Factor Authentication, you might be required to complete a TOTP (Time-based One Time Password) secondary authentication step each time you sign in.

For a first time login, the user is presented with a TOTP registration page:

9:41		<b>''II 🕹 </b>
deak)	https://	Cancel
Open your two fa "ios" user accour you can't use QF	actor authentication ap nt by scanning the belo R code, then enter <u>this</u>	p and add ow QR code.lf <u>text</u>
Store Backup Co	odes:	
receive two-facto backup codes ar recommend you	or authentication codes e only for one time use to save them securely	s. Following s, we
CA1255		
CORPUS N		
100905		
10000		
1000		
NP8003		
(		)
Copy to Clipboard		
Enter token code	e that the application g	enerates:
•••••		
Sign In		
rst-time sian i	n TOTP registration	ı

Use this page to add your user details to an authenticator app on your device, such as Google Authenticator or Microsoft Authenticator. If you do not yet have such a two-factor authenticator app installed, do that now.

Scan the QR code, or enter the provided text, to add the user details to your authenticator app. Then, store the generated backup codes in a secure location for future retrieval of a lost account.

Finally, enter the token code generated by the authenticator app into the box provided, then tap **Sign In**.



For future sign-in attempts, the TOTP challenge dialog appears without the registration details or backup codes. As before, you provide the generated token code from your authenticator app into the box provided and select **Sign In**.

- 4. (Optional) Tap the **Disconnect** button to manually disable the *nZTA* connection. This facility overrides the on-demand connection feature and prevents *Ivanti Secure Access Client* from connecting to the *Controller* or any *nZTA Gateways*. By tapping this button, your *nZTA*-protected applications become inaccessible until the connection is restored. For more details, see Disabling the nZTA Connection.
- 5. (Optional) Tap the connection to view the connectivity status. For example:

9:41	.ul 🗢 🔳
≡	
<b>Connection Details</b>	5 ×
Connection information	
Name	Test2
Status	Connected
Connection Source	Manual
Server URL	https://test.net/
Assigned IPV4	10.97.9.41
VPN Type	SSL
Assigned IPV6	fd70:1889:79fb:1ff::223
Tunnel Type	VPN
FIPS	Disabled
Connection statistics	
Session Duration	00:00:23
Remaining Session	00:05:37
Bytes Received	1 KB
Bytes Sent	748



iOS Connectivity Status

To use a supported app, start the app as usual from the iOS interface, and enter any credentials if requested.

#### Installing a Beta Release of the iOS Client

Periodically, *Ivanti* might make available a pre-release *beta* version of *Ivanti Secure Access Client* for iOS for limited testing purposes. Beta releases of *Ivanti Secure Access Client* for iOS use the TestFlight package, a third-party app that enables users to download and test pre-GA packages of products. To learn more about TestFlight, see <u>https://testflight.apple.com/</u>.

Before you start, you must:

- Have an iOS sign-in/enrollment URL for *nZTA*, as provided by the *lvanti* DevOps/Support organization.
- Install and register the TestFlight package from the Apple App Store.
- Configure TestFlight to have access to the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* app, using information provided by the *Ivanti* DevOps/Support organization.

To enroll a beta client on your iOS mobile device:

1. Locate and start the TestFlight app. For example:



TestFlight App Icon

2. In the TestFlight app, select the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* app and install it. For example:



TestFlight Ivanti Secure Access Client App Install

3. After the app installs, it is added to the iOS interface. For example:



Ivanti Secure Access Client App Icon

4. Continue to enroll the device using the standard iOS Client enrollment procedure. Start the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* app and follow the remaining steps.

### **Enrolling an Android Device**



Application discovery and the use of a default Gateway is not supported from Android devices.



For mobile devices, *Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access* compliance requires Android v8.0 or later.

Before you start this process, you must:

- Have an Android sign-in URL for *nZTA*, based on the tenant FQDN provided by the *Ivanti* DevOps/Support organization.
- (For testing pre-GA/Beta *Ivanti Secure Access Client* packages only) Have an invitation email from your *Ivanti* representative that describes how to access pre-GA builds of the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* app from the Google Play store.

The procedure to enroll your Android device differs depending on whether you have an existing *Ivanti Secure Access Client* app installed and configured with a connection to a classic VPN product.

To enroll an Android device that has a previous connection to a classic VPN product:

- 1. Start your Android device and access its home page.
- 2. Locate and start the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* app.

3. In the main app menu, select Enroll To ZTA:

6:48 ◀ Settings		al 🗢 😭
<b>ivanti</b> Secure Access Client		
Home		
Settings		
About		
Support		
UI Mode	>	
Enroll To ZTA		
		* :
Version 22.3.1.91069		
© 2010-2022 by Ivanti, Inc. All rights reserved.		
	•	

The Ivanti Secure Access Client app menu

The Enroll with ZTA screen appears.

4. The network type auto populates as Zero Trust Access. For Connection Name, specify a descriptive name for this connection. The name you specify appears in the Ivanti Secure Access Client interface.

5. For URL, specify the network that you want to connect to. Enter the nZTA controller URL as provided by the administrator.

all 🗢	9:41 AM	•
+	Enroll with ZTA	
Туре		
Zero Tru	ut Access	
Connectio	on Name	
(Optiona	0	
URL		
ZTAUR	L provided by your admin	
	Add	
C		

Enter sign-in URL

- Click Add to save your new connection and the connection displays in the Home page. Click Enroll to add the connection and initiate a connection to the network.
- 7. To complete the enrollment procedure, follow the remaining steps below.

To enroll an Android device with no previous Ivanti Secure Access Client installation:

- 1. Start your Android device and access its home page.
- 2. Locate the Ivanti Secure Access Client app in the Google Play store and install it.



If you are testing pre-GA/Beta builds of *Ivanti Secure Access Client* for Android, use the instructions provided in your invitation email to locate and download applicable pre-GA *Ivanti Secure Access Client* app builds in the Google Play store.

After the app installs, it is added to the Android interface. For example:



Ivanti Secure Access Client App Icon

3. Start the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* app.

The welcome screen appears. For example:

16:23 🛦		🗟 43% 🔊
		ĝ
Welcon	ne to	
iva	nti	
Secur	e Access Client	
Please en address company	nter either your corporate or the URL provided by yc y.	email our
Corpora	te email or URL	
	Co	nnect
Version 22 © 2010-20	2.3.1 (r824030.23) 022 by Ivanti, Inc. All rights reserv	ved.

Ivanti Secure Access Client Welcome Screen

4. Enter the corporate email or *nZTA* sign-in URL.

For example,

- Default: "https://tenant1.mycompany.com/login/enroll"
- Custom: "https://tenant1.mycompany.com/login/<custom_user_signin>/".
- 5. Click Connect.
- 6. To complete the enrollment procedure, <u>follow the remaining steps below</u>.

_For both of the previous Android device procedures, continue with the following steps:

1. Perform any required authentication for enrolling. (Local or Azure AD credentials)



When using Azure AD authentication during onboarding, if you select "No" at the "Stay Signed In" prompt, you must re-enter your AD credentials whenever the login page prompts. To avoid this, make sure you select *Yes* at the **Stay Signed In** page.

The compliance of the device is checked, session information is gathered, and a VPN tunnel to the *Controller* is created automatically. This is indicated by a key icon and a *Ivanti Secure Access Client* icon.

The **Connections** screen shows the active *Controller* connection:

9:07		مر	V∂LTE	▼⊿∎
Home				
Connection				
				•••
	Disconnect			

Android Active nZTA Connection

To learn more about how *Ivanti Secure Access Client* maintains a connection with the *Controller*, and how user sessions are validated with your *nZTA Gateways*, see <u>Introduction</u>.

2. (Optional) If your sign-in authentication policy is configured for Multi-Factor Authentication, you might be required to complete a TOTP (Time-based One Time Password) secondary authentication step each time you sign in.

For a first time login, the user is presented with a TOTP registration page:

Open your two factor authentication app and add "ios" user account by scanning the below QR code.If you can't use QR code, then enter <u>this text</u>



Store Backup Codes:

Backup codes can be used to access your account in the event you loose access to your device and cannot receive two-factor authentication codes. Following backup codes are only for one time use, we recommend you to save them securely.

0.000	
CHORNE	
CASSSE .	
VORINGY.	
10000	
009955	
10000	
S168	
10000	

Copy to Clipboard

Enter token code that the application generates:



First-time sign in TOTP registration

Use this page to add your user details to an authenticator app on your device, such as Google Authenticator or Microsoft Authenticator. If you do not yet have such a two-factor authenticator app installed, do that now.

Scan the QR code, or enter the provided text, to add the user details to your authenticator app. Then, store the generated backup codes in a secure location for future retrieval of a lost account.

Finally, enter the token code generated by the authenticator app into the box provided, then tap **Sign In**.



For future sign-in attempts, the TOTP challenge dialog appears without the registration details or backup codes. As before, you provide the generated token code from your authenticator app into the box provided and select **Sign In**.

3. (Optional) Tap the **Disconnect** button to manually disable the *nZTA* connection. This facility overrides the on-demand connection feature and prevents *Ivanti Secure Access Client* from connecting to the *Controller* or any *nZTA Gateways*. By tapping this button, your *nZTA*-protected applications become inaccessible until the connection is restored. For more details, see Disabling the nZTA Connection.

4. (Optional) Tap the connection to view the connectivity status. For example:



Android Connectivity Status

5. (Optional) Tap the page to view the Gateway Status. For example:

÷	a	ws-lb	3
IP and po	ort endpoints		
Client IP:	Port		
Gateway	IP: Port		
Through	put & Bytes tr	ansfer	
Through	put (Ingress)	12 B/s	
Through	put (Egress)	4 B/s	
Bytes Se	nt	1 KB	
Bytes Re	ceived	464 B	
Secure a Destinati	ccess policy : on	IP routes	
Secure a Destinati Secure a Applicati	ccess policy : on ccess policy : on	IP routes FQDN's	
Secure a Destinati Secure a Applicatio	ccess policy : on ccess policy : on ww.bbc.com	IP routes	>
Secure a Destinati Secure a Applicati 근 w 근 w	ccess policy : on ccess policy : on ww.bbc.com ww.carwale.cc	IP routes	>
Secure a Destinati Secure a Applicati - 아 w - 아 w - 아 w	ccess policy : on ccess policy : on ww.bbc.com ww.carwale.co thehindu.com	IP routes	> >
Secure a Destinati Secure a Applicati 군 w 군 w 군 *.	ccess policy : on ccess policy : on ww.bbc.com ww.carwale.co thehindu.com amazon.com	IP routes	> > > >

Android Gateway Status

6. (Optional) Tap the left arrow to return to the **Connections** screen.

To use a supported app, start the app as usual from the Android interface, and enter any credentials if requested.

## Using Ivanti Secure Access Client with nZTA

- Introduction
- On-Demand and Simultaneous Connection Handling
- <u>Resource Precedence Over Simultaneous Connections</u>
- Using SAML Single Logout to Force User Authentication
- Disabling the nZTA Connection
- Dynamic Policy Update and CARTA
- Using an Existing Enterprise PKI

## Introduction

*Ivanti* provides a *nZTA*-ready version of the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* software required for end-user devices to be able to connect to your secure applications and resources.

*Ivanti Secure Access Client* connects to *nZTA* services, by default, through an on-demand connection basis and can handle multiple simultaneous *nZTA* and non-*nZTA* connections. To learn more, see <u>On-</u><u>Demand and Simultaneous Connection Handling</u>.

*Ivanti Secure Access Client* maintains communication with the *Controller* to continuously-enable synchronization of policy and configuration updates. Through this mechanism, user requests to access resources and applications are subject to continuous assessment for risk and authorization. For more details, see <u>Dynamic Policy Update and CARTA</u>.

To learn more about enrolling user devices for use with *nZTA*, see Enrolling a User Device.

# On-Demand and Simultaneous Connection Handling

While active, *Ivanti Secure Access Client* maintains two connection channels for *nZTA* services, a *control channel* to the *Controller*, and a *data channel* to your *nZTA Gateways*. For more details on networking considerations when deploying *nZTA Gateways*, see Working with Gateways.

The *control channel* connection to the *Controller* is activated when *Ivanti Secure Access Client* is started up and remains in an *always-on* state, silently in the background. If *Ivanti Secure Access Client* is able to locate a valid session cookie from an earlier session, the connection is re-established automatically. If no valid cookie is present, *Ivanti Secure Access Client* requests re-authentication from the user. The control channel is terminated when *Ivanti Secure Access Client* is shut down.

*Ivanti Secure Access Client* user sessions with a *nZTA Gateway* are subject to the following default timeout values:

- **5 minutes idle timeout**: If *Ivanti Secure Access Client* does not receive any traffic within this time period, the data channel to the connected Gateway is terminated, but the user session information is retained. If the user attempts the access the same resource(s) after this time (but before the maximum session timeout), the Gateway restores the data channel using the session information it currently holds.
- 60 minutes idle timeout: If a nZTA Gateway receives no traffic from a connected client within this time period, the Gateway deletes the user session and instructs the Controller to do the same. If the user attempts to access the same resource(s) after this time, Ivanti Secure Access Client resumes the session with the Gateway automatically using cached credentials. However, if a Single Logout URL is specified in the SAML authentication methods covering user enrollment and sign-in, the user must re-authenticate manually for the connection to resume (see Using SAML Single Logout to Force User Authentication).



User sessions for client connections with other Gateways are unaffected.

• **720 minutes session timeout**: If the user session reaches this maximum length, the session is terminated and re-authentication is requested from the client.

These values are the default settings. To configure custom *idle timeout* and *max session length* values for your user sessions, see <u>Configuring Session Timeouts</u>.

*Ivanti Secure Access Client* creates *data channel* connections to *nZTA Gateways* as an *on-demand* service. That is, connections to resources and applications controlled by *nZTA Gateways* become active only when required, and the connection is suspended after a period of inactivity. The user remains unaware of the connection state, unless re-authentication becomes necessary. As a user makes a request for a resource, *Ivanti Secure Access Client* transitions automatically from disconnected to connected. The connection remains in this state for the duration of the session, or until one of the following events occurs:

- An idle time-out occurs (after 5 minutes)
- The connection is actively placed in a disconnected state
- Ivanti Secure Access Client is shut down

To avoid the data channel being reconnected unnecessarily, non-*nZTA* DNS traffic is redirected to the device's physical network adapter.

Applicable *Ivanti Secure Access Client* versions can manage simultaneous connections with the *Controller*, and with other *Ivanti* services such as *Ivanti Connect Secure (ICS)*. While *ICS* connections must be activated and deactivated by the user, connections to *nZTA* are provided on-demand, as mentioned. Therefore, a *nZTA* connection in the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* does not provide the same **Connect** and **Disconnect** controls. Instead, *nZTA* connections include only a **ZTA** button to provide access to the *nZTA* Applications page. If this button is active, the connection to the *Controller* has been established. If the button is inactive, the connection to the *Controller* has not yet been established, or a communication problem has occurred. In this case, access to your applications is prevented.

In a simultaneous dual connection scenario:

The standard VPN connection must be started first. Then, the *nZTA* VPN connection can be started.

- If the *nZTA* VPN connection is started first, a standard VPN connection *cannot* be started afterwards if a default Gateway is in use, see <u>Application Discovery with Ivanti Secure Access</u> <u>Client</u>.
- All requests from applications referenced in secure access policies are handled by *nZTA Gateways*. All other requests will be processed over the standard VPN outside *nZTA*, and will potentially be insecure.
- When simultaneous dual VPN connections are active, application discovery using a default Gateway is *not* supported.



Simultaneous dual connections are not currently supported on Linux clients.

When using simultaneous dual connections, if the standard VPN is subsequently disabled, application discovery and a default Gateway will be activated automatically if configured. Currently, a default Gateway can only be utilized by requests from applications on macOS/Windows desktop devices.

When running active connections to both *nZTA* and *ICS* simultaneously, note that the following *ICS* features are not supported:

- Route Monitoring
- Traffic Enforcement
- Stealth Mode

Ð

- Always on VPN/LockDown
- Location awareness
- IPv6 support

0

On-demand connections are not currently supported on Linux clients.

# **Resource Precedence Over Simultaneous Connections**

In some cases, the simultaneous connection handling feature in *Ivanti Secure Access Client* can mean that FQDN-based or IP address-based resources can be configured across multiple *nZTA* and non-*nZTA Gateways* (such as *ICS*) simultaneously. Where such conflicts occurs, *Ivanti Secure Access Client* evaluates the order of precedence before establishing the connection.

The following table describes the order of precedence from highest to lowest:

Priority	Order of Application Precedence	Remarks
1	nZTA FQDN resource	<i>nZTA</i> FQDN resources have the highest precedence
2	<i>nZTA</i> IP address resource - with Deny Policy	
3	<i>nZTA</i> IP address resource - with Allow Policy	
4	Non- <i>nZTA</i> FQDN/IP Address resources	Non- <i>nZTA</i> resources have the lowest precedence in simultaneous connection handling mode

Order	of Droc	adanca	for	Decourco	Accore
Order	or Prec	.euence	101	Resource	Access

The following table describes various resource conflict use-cases and the resolution applied by *nZTA* based on the above order of precedence:

#### Resource Conflict Use Cases

Use Case	Resource Conflict	Resolution
1	A <i>nZTA</i> FQDN resource conflicts with a <i>nZTA</i> IP Allow resource or <i>nZTA</i> IP Deny resource.	The <i>nZTA</i> FQDN resource is given precedence.
2	A <i>nZTA</i> IP Deny resource conflicts with a <i>nZTA</i> IP Allow resource.	The <i>nZTA</i> IP Deny resource is given precedence.
3	A <i>nZTA</i> IP Deny resource through one <i>nZTA</i>	The first nZTA Gateway IP resource takes

Use Case	Resource Conflict	Resolution
	<i>Gateway</i> with a <i>nZTA</i> IP Deny Resource in another <i>ZTA Gateway</i> .	effect as both are of same precedence.
4	A <i>nZTA</i> IP Allow resource through one <i>nZTA Gateway</i> with a <i>nZTA</i> IP Allow resource in another <i>ZTA Gateway</i> .	The first <i>nZTA Gateway</i> IP resource takes effect as both are of same precedence.
5	A <i>nZTA</i> FQDN resource conflicts with a non- <i>nZTA</i> FQDN or IP resource.	The <i>nZTA</i> FQDN resource is given precedence.
6	A <i>nZTA</i> IP Deny or Allow resource conflicts with a non- <i>nZTA</i> IP resource.	The <i>nZTA</i> IP resource is given precedence.
7	A <i>nZTA</i> single IP resource is conflicted to a <i>nZTA</i> subnet range of IP addresses.	Both routes are added to the client device routing table and the Operating System behavior is leveraged to choose the longest prefix match. Routing is established based on this criteria.
8	A <i>nZTA</i> single IP/subnet resource is conflicted to a non- <i>nZTA</i> subnet range of IP addresses	Both routes are added to the client device routing table and the Operating System behavior is leveraged to choose the longest prefix match. Routing is established based on this criteria.
9	A non- <i>nZTA</i> include FQDN resource is also configured as a <i>nZTA</i> FQDN resource.	<b>[Split tunnel]</b> First connect to the non- <i>nZTA</i> endpoint, and then to the <i>nZTA</i> endpoint (establishing simultaneous connection handling mode). Then, access the resource. The <i>nZTA</i> FQDN is given precedence.
10	A non- <i>nZTA</i> include FQDN Resource is also configured as a <i>nZTA</i> FQDN resource.	<b>[Split tunnel]</b> First connect to the <i>nZTA</i> endpoint, and then connect to the non- <i>nZTA</i> endpoint (establishing simultaneous connection handling mode). Then, access the resource. The <i>nZTA</i> FQDN is given precedence.

The following scenarios are exceptions and can result in unexpected behavior:

Case	Resource Conflict	Remarks
1	A <i>nZTA</i> FQDN or IP resource conflicts with a DNS IP address	Currently, precedence is not given to the DNS IP address configuration. This can result in unexpected behavior.
2	A <i>nZTA</i> IP resource conflicts with local subnet routes in a non- <i>nZTA</i> connection with local subnet route precedence.	The <i>nZTA</i> IP resource is given precedence and the non- <i>nZTA</i> endpoint does not operate as expected in simultaneous connection handling mode.
3	A <i>nZTA</i> IP resource conflicts with a non- <i>nZTA</i> server URI.	If the non- <i>nZTA</i> server URI is resolved to an IP address which is configured as a <i>nZTA</i> IP resource, traffic is directed through <i>nZTA</i> due to the higher precedence.

Exceptions

# Using SAML Single Logout to Force User Authentication

By default, *Ivanti Secure Access Client* attempts to re-authenticate a connection to a *nZTA*-controlled resource using cached credentials for the session. In other words, during a single valid session, a user is not required to re-enter their credentials each time the on-demand connection is reactivated following an idle timeout or manual disconnection.



To learn more about on-demand client connections, see <u>On-Demand and</u> <u>Simultaneous Connection Handling</u>.

An organization might want to establish a policy of increased security for connecting devices, such that prior to reconnecting the user is required to re-authenticate manually with the SAML IdP. To support this, *nZTA* includes the ability to specify a single logout/sign-out URL in the SAML authentication method you use for user enrollment or login.

By specifying a Single Logout URL in your SAML user authentication methods, your users must re-enter their credentials each time the *nZTA* connection is re-established.

To add a Single Logout URL to an existing user authentication method:
- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Secure Access icon, then select Manage Users > Authentication Servers.

The **Authentication Servers** page appears. This page lists all existing user authentication methods. For example:

Manage User	S (i)								
User Groups	User Rules User Policies	Authentication Servers	_						
Authenti Local Au	Authentication Servers which <b>default</b> OR linked to any <b>User Policy</b> , will be disabled from deletion. Local Authentication Servers which have one or more users linked to them will be disabled from deletion.								
Actions 🗸		+ Create Auth	nentication Server Sea	rch	0 7	000 :≡			
	NAME 🛧			USERS					
$\Box \rightarrow$	Admin Auth	$\odot$	Local	79 Users					
$\Box \rightarrow$	auth-test		Local	1 Users					
$\Box \rightarrow$	az-saml-auth-ProdScript		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A					
$\Box \rightarrow$	az-saml-enroll-ProdScript		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A					
$\Box \rightarrow$	az_auth_zta_dfs		SAML (Azure AD)	N/A					
<u> </u>			o			•			
			Rows p	oer page: 10 🗸	1 - 10 of 13 found.	$\langle \rangle$			

User Authentication Methods

3. Click the three dots adjacent to the user authentication method you want to modify, and click **Edit**.

The Edit Authentication Method dialog appears.

4. Specify your Single Logout URL in the text box provided:

ູ	Edit Authentication Method	৩
1	Choose name and type           Authentication steves name         Authentication type	
	sami-userauth	
	Back Next	
0	Metadata location	
0	Summary	

Adding a Single Logout URL to a SAML authentication method

- 1. To save your changes, click **Save Changes**.
- 2. Click **Next**, then **Next** again to view the *Summary* step.



Conversely, to re-establish the default service behavior of not requiring manual authentication upon re-connection, repeat these steps and remove the **Single Logout URL** from your existing authentication method.

To learn more about configuring an authentication method, see Working with User Authentication.

# **Disabling the** *nZTA* **Connection**

*Ivanti Secure Access Client* additionally provides the ability to actively disable the on-demand connection feature. Use of this facility disables the *nZTA* connection, avoiding the scenario where *Ivanti Secure Access Client* attempts to repeatedly request authentication even after the user might be unable to authenticate due to too many failed attempts, or where the user just does not require access to any *nZTA*-controlled resources during that session.

If a user attempts to request a *nZTA*-controlled resource during the period a *nZTA* connection is disabled, the request fails. Other *Ivanti Secure Access Client* connections are unaffected.

To disable a *nZTA* connection, use one of the following mechanisms:

• For *Ivanti Secure Access Client* on macOS and Windows, click **Disconnect** in the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* connection list context menu. Right-click a *nZTA* connection profile to see the available options.

Þ	<b>pcs</b> Disconnected	Disconnect Suspend Extend Session	ЖТ	onnect
•	<b>zta</b> Connected	Remove Override (return to automatic control) Remediation Info Advanced Connection Details	ЖО ЖI ЖD	ZTA
Г	Server URL: desktop	Select Server URL Edit	жU ЖE	

Manually disabling a *nZTA* connection through the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* connection list context menu

• For *Ivanti Secure Access Client* on macOS and Windows, click **Disconnect** from the *System Tray* client icon. View the sub-menu for the *nZTA* connection you want to disconnect.

🚱 🔁 💈 🍣 100% 🕼	Fri 7:40 PM Karthic
Open Pulse Secure	
Launch ZTA	ə-animal@apeanimal: ~
Pulse Secure: Connected	
Beta - Secure Internet	•
DFS - Connect - BNG	•
DFS - Connect1 - SJ	
DFS - Connect2 - BNG	
VPN - Bangalore Office	
VPN - Cambridge Office	
VPN - San Jose Office	
L3 To SJ-PPS	
L3 to CBR-PPS	
pcs	
<b>⊘</b> zta	Connect
Exit	Disconnect

Manually disabling a *nZTA* connection through the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* System Tray control  For Ivanti Secure Access Client on macOS and Windows, click Disconnect through the Ivanti Secure Access Client application menu. Open Ivanti Secure Access Client and select the nZTA connection profile. Then click File > Connections > Disconnect.

ile Help				
Connections	>	Disconnect		
Logs	>	Advanced Connection Details		
UI Mode	>	Disable Block Messages		
Close		Edit		
	_	Delete		
<ul> <li>dfs</li> <li>Disconnected</li> </ul>		Add		
Zta Connected		ZTA		
2010-2023 by Ivanti, In	с.	Close		

Manually disabling a *nZTA* connection through the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* application menu

• For *Ivanti Secure Access Client* on Android and iOS devices, use the **Disconnect** option in the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* application. Open *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, locate the *nZTA* connection profile, and tap the **Disconnect** button.



Manually disabling a *nZTA* connection through the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* application (Android device example)

By setting the *nZTA* connection to be disconnected, *Ivanti Secure Access Client* suspends both the *control channel* and the *data channel* (where either are active). If the *control channel* was previously logged-in to the *Controller*, this remains the case to facilitate session resumption through a subsequent reconnect.

The disconnect feature is not activated by clicking or tapping **Cancel** in the *nZTA* authentication dialog. Canceling an authentication request triggers a timeout interval, after which *Ivanti Secure Access Client* re-displays the authentication dialog. The disconnect feature instead disables the authentication request process until the user manually reinstates it.

To reinstate the *nZTA* connection on macOS and Windows devices, use the **Launch ZTA** option in the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* system tray menu:

i .



Restarting a *nZTA* connection through the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* System Tray menu (macOS and Windows variants)

To reinstate the *nZTA* connection on Android and iOS devices, tap the **ZTA** button in the *nZTA* connection profile in the *lvanti Secure Access Client* application:



Restarting a *nZTA* connection through the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* application (Android device example)

This method also works for macOS and Windows devices.

Ŧ

If the existing session cookie is still valid, the *control channel* is re-established. If the session is now invalid, *Ivanti Secure Access Client* prompts the user for their *nZTA* credentials as normal. On successful re-establishment of the *nZTA* session, the user is presented with the *nZTA* End User Portal in the default browser.

When restarting *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, *nZTA* connections default to being on-demand services. That is, a previously disabled *nZTA* connection is re-enabled when *Ivanti Secure Access Client* starts.

# **Dynamic Policy Update and CARTA**

To complement the zero-trust approach, *nZTA* supports dynamic policy updates and CARTA (Continuous Adaptive Risk and Trust Assessment) for your end user devices. This framework establishes an approach of continuous assessment and updating of secure access policies on the client, without the requirement to disconnect and reconnect to establish an updated authorization posture.

As your policies, applications, and authentication configuration are updated by the administrator on the *Controller*, changes are synchronized out to client devices dynamically and take effect immediately. *Ivanti Secure Access Client* ensures that any application updates are applied and any new authentication requirements are met before continuing the session, providing the end user with a seamlessly-updated experience. This method ensures that *Ivanti Secure Access Client* is always updated at the point of change, and not just when establishing a connection to a *nZTA Gateway* to access an affected resource.

The CARTA implementation in *Ivanti Secure Access Client* means that the security posture of the end user is continuously assessed in conjunction with policies configured in the *Controller*, with *allow* or *deny* decisions enforced through dynamic assessment and updating of the current policy set. Where application access is denied or restricted, *Ivanti Secure Access Client* informs the user of any access restrictions or policy contravention at the point of use. For example, the *nZTA* Applications Home page updates to provide visual cues with applicable error messages whenever a specific application becomes unavailable:

😑 💲 PULSE ZERO TRUS	T ACCESS					ង	Û	Ø	0	<mark>ہ</mark> …
Applications					Search			÷۹	ï≡	⊞
Web 6									↑	^
bipkart flipkart	^ت ۾	O stg6 stg6	^ت ر	A thoughtful web	^ت	A place to share know	ledge	, ¹³		
<b>M msys</b> msys	۵	/20 myhealth health								
Custom Apps 0									¢	^
			(i) No	Applications available						

Access restricted to the "myhealth" application

By hovering your pointer over the *warning* symbol in the inactive application, *nZTA* provides an explanatory message.

Furthermore, user attempts to access a restricted web resource in a browser trigger a CARTA response with *Ivanti Secure Access Client* presenting a pop-up *resource blocked* message:



*Ivanti Secure Access Client* prevents browser access to a particular web resource where a device policy has been breached.

Pop-up resource blocked messages are not currently supported on Linux clients.

*Ivanti Secure Access Client* implements a no-repeat interval for *resource blocked* messages of 2 minutes, to avoid a user repeatedly seeing the same pop-up message for every browser request for the same restricted resource. While the resource remains blocked to further access attempts, no further messages are displayed by *Ivanti Secure Access Client* until after 2 minutes has elapsed. You can force *Ivanti Secure Access Client* to continue hiding *blocked resource* messages indefinitely by right-clicking the connection in the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* dialog and selecting **Disable Block Messages**. To re-enable showing *blocked resource* messages, select **Enable Block Messages**.

#### Using Application Discovery with Ivanti Secure Access Client

*nZTA* directs requests for a specific application towards the *nZTA Gateway* that is defined in the secure access policy for the application. All other applications use any available communications channels on the device, which may not be secure.

*nZTA* includes a built-in *application discovery* secure access policy on the *Controller*. This feature enables requests from any application that is not covered by a defined secure access policy to be handled by a default *nZTA Gateway*. This also enables packet analysis to be conducted from the *nZTA Gateway* to assess the validity of the requests.

To learn more about configuring default *nZTA Gateways* and application discovery, see <u>Configuring a</u> <u>Default Gateway for Application Discovery</u>.

Client version 21.1 is required to work with application discovery and a default Gateway.

0

Currently, a default Gateway can only be utilized by requests from applications on macOS and Windows desktop devices.

To use application discovery on an enrolled macOS/Windows desktop device:

- 1. Start the Ivanti Secure Access Client app on the device.
- 2. Confirm the update of policy definitions if required.
- 3. Ensure that there are no other VPN connections running on the client.



Simultaneous dual VPN connections are supported by *nZTA*, but this scenario does not support the use of a default Gateway, see <u>On-Demand and Simultaneous Connection</u> <u>Handling</u>.

4. Start the *nZTA* connection and log in with your credentials.

If another VPN connection is already in operation when the user connects to *nZTA* from the client, the default gateway configuration is ignored, and application discovery is not supported on the device. The existing VPN will handle all unassigned application requests from the client device. When a second VPN handling unassigned requests is subsequently closed on a desktop client device, use of the default gateway is enabled automatically to support application discovery on the client device. The default gateway will then handle all unassigned requests from the client device.

The *nZTA* connection starts, and available applications appear. Each listed application will use the gateway assigned by a secure access policy pushed from the *Controller*.

The default Gateway then handles all requests from applications on the macOS/Windows desktop device that are not referenced by any other secure access policy.

## Using an Existing Enterprise PKI

#### This feature is also known as Bring Your Own Certificate (BYOC)

The *Controller* typically generates device certificates based on a trusted Certificate Authority (CA) for your end-user devices at the point of enrollment. The certificate chain and CA is installed on the device at enrollment and then the certificate is submitted for validation upon each connection to your *nZTA* service. *Ivanti* assumes that by default a tenant deployment is going to use this validation infrastructure.

However, an enterprise may wish to use its own Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) with a *nZTA* deployment where, for example, a security policy may require the use of internally-generated certificates. In this scenario, *Ivanti* enables customers to issue and manage their own end-user device certificates (for example, through a Mobile Device Management type application), and to instruct the *Controller* to use an enterprise-provided CA when validating user sessions.

Use of BYOC is subject to the following limitations:

- Support is limited to Windows and macOS devices only, using *Ivanti Secure Access Client* version 9.1R13-12191 and later.
- Gateways are restricted to using only *nZTA*-generated certificates.
- Each end-user device must be provided with its own unique certificate. *nZTA* does not support certificate reuse across multiple devices.
- Browser-based enrollment is not supported in this scenario. Users must enroll devices by creating a new *nZTA* connection from within *Ivanti Secure Access Client*.
- If a certificate expires or is revoked, an affected client device must be un-enrolled and then reenrolled before a replacement certificate can be used.
- If you plan to add a custom domain to your subscription (see <u>Specifying a Custom Domain</u>), make sure you add all required certificates before you configure the custom domain.

To use your own PKI with *nZTA*, you must:

- 1. Request a BYOC subscription from Ivanti.
- 2. Share the required CA certificates with the *lvanti* DevOps organization, to allow them to configure your tenants accordingly.
- 3. Publish your device and CA certificates to your end-user devices.

For more information, contact your support representative.

# **Upgrading** *Ivanti* Secure Access Client

- Introduction
- Working with Client Packages
- Working with ESAP Packages

# Introduction

After a desktop/mobile client device is enrolled on *Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access (nZTA*), the following upgrade operations are supported:

- A client update package can be downloaded to each enrolled device to add new features and to resolve issues in previous versions. See <u>Working with Client Packages</u>.
- An Endpoint Security Assessment Plug-In (ESAP) update can be downloaded to each enrolled device. An ESAP package is included in every system software package. However, *Ivanti* releases ESAP update packages more frequently than system software versions. You may choose to upgrade the ESAP package more regularly than client software. See <u>Enabling Minimum</u> <u>Supported Client Version</u>.

All packages are automatically uploaded to the *Controller*. No manual intervention is required to achieve this. You can choose to either the latest updates to be automatically made available to your end-user client devices, or to manually control the roll out of a selected package version.



When you select a newly-available update package for your end-users, or where you have elected to enable automatic updates and a new version becomes available, allow up to 30 minutes before the new package download is triggered on your end user client devices.

# **Working with Client Packages**

After a client device is enrolled, you can upgrade its client software with a newer *Ivanti Secure Access Client* package from the *Controller*.

• To upgrade *Ivanti Secure Access Client* automatically, see <u>Upgrading Ivanti Secure Access Client</u> <u>Automatically</u>.



Automatic client upgrades are not currently supported on *Ivanti Secure Access Client* Linux variants.

• To enable manual upgrade of *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, see Enabling Manual Update of Ivanti Secure Access Client.

Client upgrade packages are automatically uploaded to the *Controller*. No manual intervention is required to achieve this.

## Upgrading Ivanti Secure Access Client Automatically



Automatic client upgrades are not currently supported on *Ivanti Secure Access Client* Linux variants.

To upgrade all Ivanti Secure Access Client to the latest client package automatically:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Administration icon, then select Upgrade > Installation Packages.

The Installation Packages page appears.

3. Click the Ivanti Secure Access Client tab.

A list of available Ivanti Secure Access Client packages appears.

4. Enable the Auto update to latest version control.

The most recent *Ivanti Secure Access Client* package is selected automatically. For example:

Insta	llation Packages	í						
Ivanti	Secure Access Client	ESAP	Gateways					
Deskto	p Client Versions							
				Search	✓ of	on	Always auto update to latest vers	lion
	BUILD VERSION 1			RELEASE DATE 个				
۲	22.8R2-33497			07-05-2025 11:2	20:20 AM GMT			
0	22.8R1-31437			13-02-2025 11:2	20:20 AM GMT			
0	22.7R4-30859			05-10-2024 11:1	18:12 AM GMT			
0	22.7R3-30227			16-07-2024 11:1	8:12 AM GMT			

Automatic Ivanti Secure Access Client Update

As each user next logs into *Ivanti Secure Access Client* on their device, if their software is at an earlier version than the latest version in the *Controller, Ivanti Secure Access Client* provides an automatic update to the selected version.

#### Enabling Manual Update of Ivanti Secure Access Client

To enable users to manually update to a specified version of Ivanti Secure Access Client:

- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Administration icon, then select Upgrade > Installation Packages.

The Installation Packages page appears.

3. Click the Ivanti Secure Access Client tab.

A list of available Ivanti Secure Access Client packages appears.

- 4. Disable the Auto update to latest version control.
- 5. Select any of the listed *Ivanti Secure Access Client* packages. This is the version of the *Ivanti Secure Access Client* software that you want users to have on their device. For example:

Installation Packages (i)	
Ivanti Secure Access Client ESAP Gateways	
Desktop Client Versions	Always auto update to latest version
4 IVANTI SECURE ACCESS CLIENT PACKAGE(S)	SEARCH OT OT O
BUILD VERSION 1	RELEASE DATE 1
O 22.7R2-29103	03-05-2024 04:48:12 PM IST
22.7R1-28369	03-01-2024 04:48:12 PM IST
O 22.6R1-26825	25-09-2023 04:48:12 PM IST
O 22.5R1-25375	21-07-2023 04:48:12 PM IST

Manual Ivanti Secure Access Client Update

As each user next logs into *Ivanti Secure Access Client* on their device, if their software is at a different version, *Ivanti Secure Access Client* provides a prompt to the user to change to the version you selected in the *Controller*.

*Ivanti Secure Access Client* for Desktops does not support a downgrade path. If the version you select in the *Controller* is earlier than the client version currently installed on a user's desktop device, the user must first uninstall the current *Ivanti Secure Access Client* software. To trigger installation of the required version, the user must then re-perform the *nZTA* enrollment procedure through a web browser.

#### **Enabling Minimum Supported Client Version**

This feature provides an option for the admin to force upgrade the client version when Minimum Client Version is configured.

To enable this feature:

i.

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- 2. From the *nZTA* menu, click the **Administration** icon, then select **Upgrade > Installations**.

Installation Packages 🥡							
Ivanti Secure Access Client ESAP Gateways							
@: 22.7R2-29103	03-05-2024 04:48:12 PM IST						
() 22.7R1-28369	03-01-2024 04:48:12 PM IST						
() 22.6R1-26825	25-09-2023 04:48:12 PM IST						
() 22.5R1-25375	21-07-2023 04:48:12 PM IST						
To enable this feature make sure all the clients are upgraded to 22.3  Enforce minimum supported client version The lvanti Secure Access Client Desktop versions listed below DESKTOP	<ul> <li>o enable this feature make sure all the clients are upgraded to 22.3R1</li> <li>Enforce minimum supported client version</li> <li>The Ivanti Secure Access Client Desktop versions listed below are the supported versions to use with Ivanti Connect Secure.</li> <li>DESKTOP</li> </ul>						
Select minimum client version $\checkmark$							
ANDROID							
Enter minimum version details Example: 7.4.2							
IOS							
Enter minimum version details Example: 7.4.2							

Enforce Minimum Client Version

3. Select the Enforce minimum client version check box.

The following options appear.

- Desktop
- Android
- iOS



If Force update is selected, Client will auto-upgrade once you enroll with older client.

4. Specify the minimum client version to be enforced on Ivanti Secure Access Client. For example, 22.3R1.

If the minimum client version is not specified for any specific type of client, any version of the client is allowed to connect to Ivanti Connect Secure without any minimum client version enforcement for that specific client.

5. Click Save.

# **Working with ESAP Packages**

ESAP (Endpoint Security Assessment Plug-in) is a *Ivanti Secure Access Client* plug-in through which you can upload the latest security assessment definitions independently of a full client software upgrade. After a user device is enrolled and *Ivanti Secure Access Client* has been installed, you can upgrade ESAP with newer versions from the *Controller*.

- To update ESAP definitions on *Ivanti Secure Access Client* automatically, see <u>Updating ESAP</u> <u>Definitions on Clients Automatically</u>.
- To enable the manual update of ESAP definitions on *Ivanti Secure Access Client*, see <u>Enabling</u> Manual Update of ESAP Definitions on Clients.



ESAP upgrade packages are automatically uploaded to the *Controller*. When each user next logs into *Ivanti Secure Access Client* on their device, if their ESAP definition is at an earlier version, the ESAP definition updates automatically from the most recent ESAP package.

## **Updating ESAP Definitions on Clients Automatically**

To view all available ESAP packages:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nZTA* menu, click the Administration icon, then select Upgrade > Installation Packages.

The Installation Packages page appears.

3. Click the **ESAP** tab.

A list of available ESAP packages appears.

Installation Packages 🛈								
lvanti (	Secure Access Client ESAP Gateways							
ESAF	is platform independent. So, please choose your version.	off <b>O</b> on Always auto update to latest version						
		Search V						
	BUILD VERSION 1	RELEASE DATE 个						
۲	4.6.1	11-03-2025 11:18:12 AM GMT						
	4.5.4	16-11-2024 11:18:12 AM GMT						
0	4.5.1	24-09-2024 11:18:12 AM GMT						
	4.3.8	05-03-2024 11:18:12 AM GMT						
	4.3.1	16-11-2023 11:18:12 AM GMT						

This feature is permanently enabled. When each user logs into *Ivanti Secure Access Client* on their device, if their ESAP definition is at an earlier version, the ESAP definition updates automatically from the most recent ESAP package.

## **Enabling Manual Update of ESAP Definitions on Clients**



I)

This feature is not currently supported.

# **nZTA Administration**

This chapter covers the following topics:

- "Viewing Licensing/Subscription Usage" below
- "Creating Admin Roles" on the next page
- "Associating Geographical Locations to IP Addresses" on the next page
- "Synchronizing the Configuration" on page 706

## Viewing Licensing/Subscription Usage

Licenses and subscriptions are added to the Controller by Ivanti.

The **Subscriptions** page displays your licenses and subscriptions that are active on the *Controller*. To access this page, select **Administration > Subscriptions**.

The **Summary** tab displays for each subscription or license:

- License/Subscription high-level details, including dates and usage metrics.
- One or more descriptions of the features in the license or subscription. Where there are multiple features, use **Previous** and **Next** to navigate.

When any defined limit on the license or subscription is met, a message appears:

- At 75% utilization of seats, an information message appears at the bottom of the screen. You can optionally select **Close**.
- At 90% utilization of seats, a modal message appears at login. Select **Dismiss** to clear the message.
- When 25% of the duration of the license or subscription remains, a modal message appears at login. Select **Dismiss** to clear the message.

Named Users lists users and their devices registered on the Controller.

Summary information for *Controller* licenses and subscriptions is displayed at the top of the page:

- The total number of seats from all licenses or subscriptions.
- The number of named users on the Controller. Each of these is listed in the table below the

summary.

• The percentage of seats consumed.

For each named user, the following information is displayed:

- The name of the user.
- The number of devices enrolled for that user.
- The elapsed time since the most recent session on a device enrolled for that user. If this is greater than 3 weeks, this is displayed in orange.
- The timestamp for the start of the most recent login session.

For details about upgrading the client packages, see "Upgrading Ivanti Secure Access Client" on page 695 and "Working with ESAP Packages" on page 702.

## **Creating Admin Roles**

With Role-based access control (RBAC), organizations can easily add admins and assign them specific roles, with differing levels of access to the nSA Admin Portal. In addition to an existing set of default roles, Administrators can now create custom granular roles for specific functions within the nSA admin portal.

For details about creating roles, see "Role-based Access Control for Admin Users" on page 440

## Associating Geographical Locations to IP Addresses

*nZTA* provides the mapping of Gateway geographic location to IP address.

Before you start, make sure that you have the following information:

- The public IP address/range for the Gateway. This is the IP address at which clients can externally reach the Gateway.
- The Gateway geographic location information such as country, state/province and city.

To add a new location:

1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.

The My Home page appears by default.

2. From the nZTA menu, click the Administration icon, then select Custom Geo IP.

The *Custom Geo IP* page appears. This page lists all defined geographical associations to IP addresses.

3. Click "+" at the top of the page.

Add Custom Geo II	P						
IP ADDRESS/RANGE							
Location Details							
COUNTRY	~	STATE/COUNTY/REGION	~	CITY		~	
Tag							
					CAI	NCEL	SAVE

- 4. Enter the IP Address/range.
- 5. Select the Country.
- 6. Select the **State/Province**.
- 7. Select the **City**.
- 8. Enter a Tag for this IP Address/range.
- 9. Click Save.

## Synchronizing the Configuration

When admin modifies or updates a device policy or a secure access policy and applies the changes, the synchronization might fail due to any wrong values in the configuration. The Alerts page shows the error log.

Based on the error log information, analyze and fix the configuration. Then use the Sync Now option to initiate the configuration synchronization.

Alerts (i)					
					(Ti
A Configuration	on out of sync				
The configuration is	out of sync and is not	applied. Your s	ystem may not work as expecte	d.	
Please follow these	steps:				
1. Check which	configuration has fai	led in the table	e below. Refer to the description	on column.	
2. Fix the config	guration in the respe	ctive page.			
3. Goto Admini	stration > Config Sta	tus page and o	click on Sync Now button.		
100 ALERTS					
SEVERITY T	DATE 个	TIME 个	TYPE 🛧	GATEWAY NAME	MESSAGE 🛧
Error	Apr 24, 2024	15:18	AAAJJournal Update Faile	ed	aaa None journal.failure
Information	Apr 22, 2024	19:13	AAA Config Pull Success		AAA pulled new configuration successful, chan

To synchronize configuration:

1. From the *nZTA* menu, select **Administration** > **Config Status**.

The Config Status page shows the status of the config sync, the last updated dated and time, and a brief description of config sync.

#### 2. Click Sync Now.

The **Status** column displays **Success** when the configuration synchronization is successful, and the **Sync Now** button is disabled.

ivanti Ivanti Neuro	ONS FOR	ZTA					
	0	Config Status					
<ul> <li>Insights</li> <li>Secure Access</li> </ul>	~	Configuration Synchronization	onfiguration Synchronization Status				
ুৰ্জ Integrations	~	Status	Last Updated Time	Description			
Administration	^	• In Frogress	wed, 24 Apr 2024 09:40:10 AM GMT	Configuration apply failed			
Upgrade	^						
Installation Packages							
Admin Roles							
Subscriptions							
Custom Geo IP							
Config Status							

# **Integrating nZTA**

This chapter covers the following topics:

- "Configuring CASB/SWG" on the next page
- "Integrating Ivanti Neurons for MDM with nZTA" on page 711
- "Using Enterprise Integration to Export Your Logs for External Analysis" on page 726

# **Configuring CASB/SWG**

Proxy auto-configuration (PAC) file instructs a browser to forward traffic to a proxy server, instead of directly to the destination server. You can obtain the PAC URL for the Lookout tenant by clicking the PAC file icon from the Secure Cloud Workspace menu.

To get the PAC file URL from Lookout Tenant:

1. From the nZTA menu, select Integrations > CASB/SWG.

Proxy Auto-configuration (PAC) files allow web traffic are connected to the destination websites or applica	to be forwarded t tions.	o the Lookout proxy for ir	spection and protec	ction before u
SELECT PAC FILE URL TYPE CASB HTTPS PAC	~ Ø	ENTER PAC FILE URL https://{FQDN}/public	/proxy-casb-https	рас
Choose your option CASB HTTPS PAC		IMPORT	DETAILS	DELET
CASB + SWG HTTPS PAC			VALID D	ATES
6	🛆 No certifica	te available		
	5			

Configuring CASB/SWG

- 2. Click the PAC file icon located at the upper-right corner of the page.
- 3. Hover over the PAC file to apply to your system configuration and click its clipboard copy icon to copy PAC URL.

- 4. Select PAC file URL type and paste the copied PAC URL in the "Enter PAC file URL" field.
- 5. Click Save.

Trusted CA certificate from Lookout Tenant is required to establish a secured connection. Download the certificate in the .pem format from the Trusted CAs tab (Administration > Certificate Management).

To get the Trusted CA cert from Lookout Tenant and import to the user device:

- 1. In the Administration > Certificate Management page, click the **Trusted CAs** tab.
- 2. Download the certificate and save it in the .pem format.
- 3. In the nZTA tenant SWG/CASB page, click Import to import the .pem file.
- 4. Click Save.

For more details about Lookout SWG/CASB Forward Proxy integration, refer https://help.ivanti.com/ps/help/en_US/nSA/22.x/lookout-dep/landingpage.htm.

# Integrating Ivanti Neurons for MDM with nZTA

- "Introduction" below
- "Configuring Ivanti NMDM Cloud" below
- "Integrating Ivanti NMDM with nZTA" on page 718
- "End User Experience" on page 723

## Introduction

Ivanti Neurons for MDM enables to securely access and protect data. It validates the device to ensure that only authorized users, devices, apps, and services can access business resources.

Ivanti NMDM is an independent entity which has a tenant running on the cloud and the same will be used to communicate to the nZTA by adding the details of the NMDM in the nZTA, see "Integrating Ivanti NMDM with nZTA" on page 718.

Neurons for MDM integration with Neurons for ZTA achieves the below goals:

• Supports compliance check for mobile devices during login and application access.

This section explains steps involved in setting up NMDM cloud and configuring NMDM in nZTA.

#### **Prerequisites**

"Configuring Ivanti NMDM Cloud" below

## **Configuring Ivanti NMDM Cloud**

As a prerequisite, an admin needs to configure Ivanti NMDM cloud configuration.

To configure Ivanti NMDM cloud:

- 1. Log in to Ivanti NMDM server.
- 2. In the Ivanti Neurons for MDM menu, select **Apps > App Catalog**.

ivanti neurons MDM Formerly MobileIron Cloud			Apps
e	Dashboard	>	App Catalog
-	Users	>	Categories
Ē	Devices	>	Reviews
	Apps	>	Catalog Settings
	Content	>	Distribution Filters
			Apple Apps and Books
	Configurations		Desktop Apps
	Policies		Office 365 App Protection
×	Admin	>	

3. Search for *Ivanti Secure Access Client iOS* app. Select the app and click **Next**.

p Cancel	Image: Stress     Image: Stress
noose	7 Apps
iscribe	Curre Access Client Jose Curre Access Client Jre LLC Windows Store Windows Store
stribute	tanti Docs@Work Ivanti Email+ Mobileiron Ivanti Email+
onfigure	CAPTOR for MobileIron Inkscreen
	Funnel (iOS 9+)         Secure per-App VPN for business apps and data from anywhere.         Mobile apps can access protected corporate data and content behind a firewall.         For IOS             Email+ (iOS)         A secure and containerised email client that allows you to easily and securely gain access to your organisation's email, calendar, and contact on your IPhone, IPad or iPod Touch.             For IOS             Business Apps             Email+ (iOS)             A secure and containerised email client that allows you to easily and securely gain access to your organisation's email, calendar, and contact on your IPhone, IPad or iPod Touch.             For IOS
	<ul> <li>Web@Work</li> <li>Secure browser that lets users access web content within the corporate intranet without requiring the user to use complex, device-wide VPN.</li> <li>For IOS</li> </ul> Email+ (Android AppConnect) Secure email for Android which gives end-users a native user experience and IT admins the security they need to avoid corporate data leakage and app configuration. For Android Enterprise) Secure email for Android which gives end-users a native user experience and IT admins the security they need to avoid corporate data leakage and app configuration. For Android Enterprise) Secure email for Android which gives end-users a native user experience and IT admins the security they need to avoid corporate data leakage and app configuration. For Android Enterprise (Android For Work)

4. In the App Information page, specify Launch URL and click Next.

Apps / App Catalog			
Add App	Cancel	Pulse Secure LLC	
2 Describe		App Information	
<ol> <li>Belegate</li> <li>Distribute</li> <li>Configure</li> </ol>		Size: 47.44 MB     Category:       Source: Public     Business ×       Cost: FREE     Compatibility: Compatible with IPhone, IPod touch, and IPad.       Minimum OS Version Required: 11.0     Compatibility: Compatible with IPhone, IPod touch, and IPad.	
		Launch URL: (?) What's New	
		General Improvements and Bug Fixes ZTA: Errol to ZTA: Allow users to add ZTA profile from Add connection screen. Classic: Supporting HMAC on to address Host Checker by-pass vulnerability IOS. [Note: HMAC for IOS will be supported in ICS Server Release 22.5R2 and onwards] Derived Credentials Support IOS Classic with MI as MDM and Entrust as Cert Provider.	
		Optional Comments to End User It is recommended to deploy Ivanti Secure Access Client through MDM solutions. This helps the administrator to control the Ivanti Secure Access Client deployed on the endpoints. Ivanti Secure Access Client, formally Pulse Secure Client, for IOS enables secure connectivity over SSL VPN to corporate applications and data from anywhere, at any time. Using Ivanti Secure Access Client, user can connect. More	$\odot$
		(+ Back	Next +

5. In the App Delegation page, select the **Do not delegate the app** option and click **Next**.

Apps / App Catalog	9	
Add App	Cancel Ivanti Secure Access Client	
Choose		
Describe	App Delegation (2)	
3 Delegate	Define whether this app should be inherited by newly created spaces.	
4 Distribute	<ul> <li>Delegate this approximation and prove and p</li></ul>	
5 Configure		
		$\bigcirc$
		_
	(+ Back	Next +

- 6. Choose a distribution level for this configuration of the app and click **Next**.
  - To Everyone with App The app is added to all the user compatible devices.
  - To No One The app is staged for distribution at a later date.
  - Custom distribution Select one of the options from "User/User Groups" or "Device/Device Groups".

Apps / App Catalog		
Add App Cano	Pulse Secure LLC	
Describe	Choose one of these options	
Delegate     Distribute     S Configure		
	Everyone         No One         Custom           All users with compatible devices will see this spp in the App Catalog         No user will receive this app. (Stage for later distribution).         This app will be available in the App Catalog to specified Users/User Groups or Devices/Device Groups	
	Distribution Filter (2) Other Distribution Filter Options Search Existing Distribution Filters OR	
	+ Add Distribution Filter	$\odot$
	( + Back	Next +

7. In the Configuration Setup page, create a new configuration using plistfile/device attribute \${deviceGUID} of type string. Click **Next**.

Apps / App Catalog						
Add App Carcel	Pulse Secure LLC	Access Client				
Describe	Configuration Setu	D				
Delegate	Name					
	UDID config					
Distribute	+ Add Description					
5 Configure	Configuration Source Source Type None Apple Managed App Se	v tings	Time			
	UDID	\${deviceGUID}	STRING			
	+ Add   Use plat Array type values should be separat Distribute this App Conf	ed by comma (example: 2.33,44) and d	ate value should be in milliseconds (example: 14	37496170000).		
	Everyone with App	No One	Custom			$\bigcirc$
	( + Back	0073			_	Next +

8. In the App Configuration page, select **Apple Application Management Configuration Settings** and click **Done**.



The app is listed in the Apps/App Catalog.

ivant	MDM		Apps	App Catalog									
Formerly	Mobileiron Cloud		Ap	pp Catalog C Refresh Available Catalogs (2)								e	ctions ~ + Add
•	Dashboard Users	>	Filter	illers V (wanti secure ) Advanced Search 2 / 18 apps					(**) 88				
_				APP NAME	*	PLATFORM	AVG. RATING	USER DISTRIBUTION	GROUP DISTRIBUTION	SOURCE	COST	SIZE	PROVISIONING PROFILE
-0	Devices	>		Ivanti Secure A	ccess Client	205	*****	0		Public	EDEE	47.44 MB	N/A
	Apps					100				Public	THEE	47.44 MD	
	Content	>		22.5.1 (r884629.	iccess Client .9)	Android	*****	4	0	Public	FREE	N/A	N/A
*	Configurations												
	Policies												
×	Admin	>											

#### Integrating Ivanti NMDM with nZTA

To link Ivanti NMDM with nZTA:

1. From the nZTA menu, select **Integrations > MDM**.

The MDM Configuration page appears.

MDM (i)					
MDM Configuration					
Nume* MobileMDM		re vanti			
Server					
IVanti Neurons for MDM(formally Mobileiro	on Cloud)	~			
server.ur.+ https://apl.mobileiron.com	ve ht	enex uni itps://ap1.mobileiron.com	٥		
REQUEST TIMEOUT 15	0				
Administrator					
USERNAME *	© PA	S2NORD *			
BEVICE UND 3e979205-78d7-41de-a114-f4ac3427fa00	0				
Test Connection					
Device Identifier					
Universal Unique Identifier					
				Cancel	update

- 2. Specify a unique name for the MDM configuration.
- 3. Select Type as Ivanti (default).
- 4. Select **Server Type** as *lvanti Neurons for MDM* (default), and enter its URL for connecting to the server.
- 5. Specify the URL for the MDM report viewer.
- 6. Specify a timeout period (0-60 seconds) for queries to the MDM server.
- 7. Specify the Administrator user name and corresponding password that has privileges to access MDM RESTful Web API.

8. Enter your **Device UUID**, and click **Test Connection**. A pop up shows the supported device attributes.

Attributes details		
Connection OK.	^	
Below are the attributes: IMEI : 35 293011 375369 5 UDID : 00008030-0016710E1146802E UUID : 3a979205-78d7-41de-a114-f4ac3427fa00 deviceId : 900072 deviceName : Bhavik's iPhone isBlocked : false isCompliant : true isCompromised : false isEnrolled : true isQuarantined : false lastSeen : 1699594426 macAddress : b8:90:47:75:24:8c model : iPhone12,1 osVersion : 20H115		
phoneNumber : null platform : IOS		
	Close	

- 9. The **Device Identifier Type** for MDM certificate configuration is set as *Universal Unique Identifier*.
- 10. Click Create.

#### **Creating Device Policy**

You can create Device policies and then create / associate one or more Device Rules as required.

To configure device policy:

- 1. Select **Secure Access**, and then select **Manage Devices > Device Policies**.
- 2. Click Create Device Policy.
- 3. Enter policy name and description.

#### 4. Click Create Device Rule.

The Create Device Rule dialog appears.

Create Device Rule	
Rule Details	
RULE TYPE MDM V Rule 1	(
DESCRIPTION	
Enter a description	
PLATFORM IOS	
AUTHENTICATION SERVER MobileMDM	
Choose your option	Add
Allow	
	Cancel Create Rule

- 5. Select **MDM** as Rule Type.
- 6. Enter rule name and description.
- 7. Select **iOS** from the **Platform** drop-down list.



The 22.6R1.2 release supports only iOS platform.

8. Select **MobileMDM** as Authentication Server.
9. Select a device attribute from the drop-down list, then enter a matching value for the selected attribute, and then click **Add**.

Repeat the step to add more device attributes. The list of supported device attributes:

deviceId	deviceName	isBlocked	isCompliant	isCompromised
isEnrolled	isQuarantined	IMEI	lastSeen	macAddress
model	osVersion	ownership	phoneNumber	platform
serialNumber	UDID	UUID	userld	userEmail

userName

PLATFORM V IOS	
AUTHENTICATION SERVER MobileMDM	
Choose your option	Add
Allow V	
UDID 000080 X deviceId 900 X deviceName i X isBlocked 0 X isCompliant 1 X isCompromise X	
IsEnrolled 1 X IsQuarantined 0 X macAddress 7 X model IPad11,6 X osVersion 21B74 X platform IOS X	
serialNumber X userId udid-io X userName udi X userEmail boo X UUID 3575826 X	



- The lastSeen attribue is supported with the unix timestamp.

- The isBlocked/isEnrolled/isCompliant/isQuarantined/isCompromised attributes support only 0(false) and 1(true) values in the configuration.

To learn more about creating device rules, see "Creating Device Policy Rules" on page 586.

- 10. Select Mode and select one of the following from the drop-down list.
  - Allow: Enforces the policy rule.
  - **Deny**: Denies the policy rule.
- 11. Click Create Rule.
- 12. In the Device Policies page, click Create Device Policy.

#### **Creating User Policy**

To create a user policy:

- 1. From the *nZTA* menu, select **Secure Access** and then select **Manage Users > User Policies**.
- 2. Click **Create User Policy**. For details, see "Configuring Default Device Policy for Users" on page 583.

Manage Us	ers (i)						
User Group	s User Rules User Po	licies Authe	ntication Servers				Create User Polic
To cre	eate a User Policy, you need a Policies which are <b>default</b> OR	a prerequisite en t linked to any <b>U</b> t	tity - Authentication ser Group will be di	a Servers. sabled from selection.			
9 TOTAL - 0 SEI	LECTED				0	SEARCH	Q Dele
	NAME 1	DEFAULT	POLICY USER	ACCESS URL	SERVER	SERVER TYPE	DEVICE POLICY
0	Admin Signin	$\odot$	admin	*/login/admin/	Admin Auth	Local	
0	Enrollment Signin	$\odot$	enroll	*/login/enroll/	User Auth	Local	
0	MDMAuth		user	*/login/mdmauth/	User Auth	Local	PlatformMDMAllow
0	MDMAuthE		user	*/login/mdmauthe/	User Auth	Local	PlatformMDMAllow
0	MDMAuthEnroll		enroll	*/login/mdmrenroll/	User Auth	Local	DenyMDM
0	MDMDeny		user	*/login/mdmdeny/	User Auth	Local	DenyMDM
0	MDMEnroll		enroll	*/login/mdmenroll/	User Auth	Local	
0	Mobile		admin	*/login/madmin/	Mobile	Local	
0	User Signin	$\oslash$	user	*/login/	User Auth	Local	

Manage User Policy

#### **Creating Secure Access Policy**

To create a secure access policy:

1. From the *nZTA* menu, select **Secure Access > Secure Access Policies**.

The Secure Access Policies page appears. This lists all current secure access policies.

Secure Acce	ecure Access Policies (i)						
7 POLICIES - 0 SE	LECTED			③ SEARCH	Q 🛛 🛱 🗟 Batch		
STATUS	APPLICATION / APPLICATION GRO	UP 1 GATEWAY / GATEWAY GROUP (	SATEWAY USER GROUP	DEVICE POLICY	ENABLED		
	Amazon	azure-debug	MDMAllow	PlatformMDMAllow	on on		
0	O Application discovered	ry			Ø on		
	Google	azure-debug	MDMAllow		on		
	Ivanti	azure-debug	MDMAllow	DenyMDM	on		
	O NDTV	azure-debug	MDMAuthE		on on		
	Salesforce	azure-debug	MDMAllow	DenyMDM	on on		
	O Yahoo	azure-debug	MDMDeny		on on		

Creating Secure Access Policies page

2. Click Create. For details, see "Creating a Secure Access Policy" on page 617.

### **End User Experience**

Ivanti Neurons for MDM provides compliance check and simplified onboarding experience for nZTA end users connecting via mobile.

• When MDM policies are not enforced, both Enrollment and Authentication are successful.



• If MDM policy is Deny for Enrollment, then Enrollment fails.

÷	Enroll with ZTA						
iva	ivanti incurons for secure access						
Ci co Pi	an not proceed with login. This device is not mpliant with your organization's security policies. asse contact the system administrator.						
0	Username						
	Password						
	Sign In						

• If MDM policy is Allow for Enrollment, but Deny for Authentication, then Enrollment is successful but Authentication fails.

ull 🔅	9:41 AM	98% 🔳
	https:// pzt-31901.e.pamplona.pzt.c	Cancel
iv	antiivanti neurons for secure acce	ESS
	Can not proceed with login. This device is not compliant with your organization's security policie Please contact the system administrator.	es.
	Username	
	Sign In	

• If MDM policy for a certain application is Deny application access, then access to that application is blocked.

Safari 📶 🗢 🕬	9:41 AM	99% 🔲
		Cancel
Blocked access to Sales	sforce	
Blocked access to *.salesfo	erce.com:*	
Instructions: No instructions are	available.	
Reasons:     MDM attributes of device d	oesn't match with MDM n	ale configured

# Using Enterprise Integration to Export Your Logs for External Analysis

- Introduction and Prerequisites
- Importing a Trusted Server CA Certificate
- Adding a Client Certificate to the Controller
- Adding a Public Syslog Server to the Controller
- Adding a On-Prem Syslog Server for nZTA Gateways

### **Introduction and Prerequisites**

*Ivanti Neurons for Zero Trust Access (nZTA)* gathers data for events that occur on your *nZTA Gateways* and from the *Controller*'s Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA) service. These events are categorized and stored in the following log files:

- Access Logs
- Admin Logs
- Event Logs

You can view and obtain these logs at any time through the *nZTATenant Admin Portal* (for details, see <u>Checking the Logs</u>).

*nZTA* enables you to automatically export log data for analysis in an external third-party enterprise analytics or visualizer tool through *Enterprise Integration*. This enables enhanced visibility into the health and efficiency of the services running in your *nZTA* deployment, or to facilitate debugging in the event of unexpected service behavior.



Exporting log data to an external analytics endpoint

To receive the log data exported from *nZTA*, your analytics endpoint should employ a *syslog* service that supports ingestion of data in JSON or WELF format. Syslog is a protocol defined through RFC 5424, and *nZTA* supports exporting log data to any Security Information and Event Management (SIEM) system that can accept and parse syslog messages. Supported configurations are:

- A publicly-reachable syslog server for your *Controller*. This requires you to configure *nZTA* with the hostname or IP address and port on which the analytics service is listening, and with the client certificate to use to authenticate *nZTA* to the syslog service.
- An *on-prem* syslog server for your *nZTA Gateway*(s). This requires you to configure *nZTA* with the hostname or IP address and port on which the analytics service is listening, and with the required protocol for the syslog service.



nSA exports log data at 30 minutes intervals.

To use this facility, you must:

- Obtain and import a trusted Server Certificate Authority (CA) certificate suitable for the analytics service, see Importing a Trusted Server CA Certificate.
- Obtain and import a client authentication certificate for *nZTA*, see <u>Adding a Client Certificate to</u> <u>the Controller</u>.



A client certificate is not required for an on-prem syslog server.

- Configure the *Controller* with the details of either:
  - Your publicly-reachable syslog server, see <u>Adding a Public Syslog Server to the</u> <u>Controller</u>.
  - Your on-prem Gateway syslog server, see <u>Adding an On-Prem Syslog Server for</u> <u>nZTA Gateways</u>.

### **Importing a Trusted Server CA Certificate**

To export your logs to an analytics service, you first need to add a certificate for a Trusted Server Certificate Authority (Server CA).

Make sure you have a suitable certificate file, in PEM (Base64 ASCII encoded) format, stored on your local workstation before starting this procedure.



*nSA* supports certificate files in PEM format only. Other formats, such as PFX, are not currently supported.

To import a certificate for a trusted server CA:

- 1. Log into the *Controller* as a Tenant Admin, see <u>Logging in as a Tenant Administrator</u>.
- From the *nSA* menu, click the Administration icon, then select Enterprise Integration > Trusted Server CA.

The Trusted Server CAs page appears.

HOME/ ENTERPRIS	rver CAs	RUSTED SERVER CAS		
Your Trusted	Server CA(s). If y	ou don't have one y	et, you can import below.	
IMPORT	DETAILS	DELETE	1 CERTIFICATES	:=
TRUSTED SE	ERVER CA		VALID DATES	
QACert	Mgr		Wed, 23 Dec 2020 16:14:12 GMT to Mon, 23 Dec 2030 17:14:12 GMT	

Viewing Trusted Server CA certificates

3. To import a Server CA certificate, click Import.

The Import Server CA page appears.

HOME/ ENTERPRISE II	er CA	R CAS			
Select a truested	server CA certificate belo	ow to import.			
Note: The certificates	which are in PEM (Base64 ASC	ll encoded) format can only	be imported.		
Certificate File	<i>©</i> -				
				۹	
Cancel	Import Certificate				

Importing a Trusted Server CA certificate

- 4. Click **Certificate File** and use the subsequent dialog to locate the certificate file from your local workstation file system.
- 5. To import the selected certificate, click **Import Certificate**.

The Trusted Server CAs page appears showing the successfully imported certificate.

- 6. (Optional) To view the details stored in a certificate, select the certificate checkbox and click **Details**.
- 7. (Optional) To delete a certificate, select the certificate checkbox and click Delete.



You can import more than one trusted server CA certificate.

After you have imported your trusted server CA certificate to the *Controller*, proceed to add your client certificate (see Adding a Client Certificate to the Controller).

## Adding a Client Certificate to the Controller

Before you can export your logs to an analytics service, you must add a client certificate to verify the identity of the *Controller* to the external service.



A client certificate is not required for an on-prem syslog server.

Make sure you have a suitable client certificate file, in PEM (Base64 ASCII encoded) format, stored on your local workstation before starting this procedure.



*nSA* supports certificate files in PEM format only. Other formats, such as PFX, are not currently supported.

To import a client certificate:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- 2. From the *nSA* menu, click the **Administration** icon, then select **Enterprise Integration > Client Authentication**.

The Client Authentication page appears.

HOME/ ENTERPRISE INTEGR	Home/ Enterprese Integrations/ client Authentication						
Your Client Authentic	ation Certificate(s). If yo	u don't have a certificate yet, you can import one	below.				
IMPORT DET.	AILS DELETE	1 CERTIFICATES	:=				
CERTIFICATE ISSUED TO		ISSUED BY	VALID DATES				
pulsesecure.qa		QACertMgr	Wed, 23 Dec 2020 16:17:03 GMT to Sun, 23 Jan 2022 17:				

Viewing Client Authentication Certificates

3. To import a client certificate, click Import.

The Import Certificate page appears.

HOME/ ENTERPRISE INTEGRATIONS/ CLIENT AUTHENTICATION	
Select the type of certficate to import an existing certificate an Note: The certificates which are in PEM (Base64 ASCII encoded) format can ou	nd its corresponding private key. If the files are encrypted, you will also need to specify the inly be imported.
CERTIFICATE TYPE Choose your option	×
	۹
Cancel Import Certificate	

Importing a Client certificate

- 4. Click Certificate Type and select one of the following options:
  - **Client Certificate with embedded private key**: Use this option if you are importing a certificate file with an embedded private key.
  - **Client Certificate with separate private key**: Use this option if you are importing a certificate file with a separate private key file.

nSA updates the page to show the relevant import fields based on your selected option.

- Click Certificate File and use the subsequent dialog to locate the certificate file from your local workstation file system.
- 6. (Optional) If you selected to use a separate private key, click **Private Key File** and use the subsequent dialog to locate the private key file from your local workstation file system.
- 7. (Optional) For **Password Key**, enter your private key passphrase.
- 8. To import the selected client certificate, click Import Certificate.

The Client Authentication page appears showing the successfully imported client certificate.

- 9. (Optional) To view the details stored in a certificate, select the certificate checkbox and click **Details**.
- 10. (Optional) To delete a certificate, select the certificate checkbox and click Delete.



You can import more than one client certificate.

After you have imported your Trusted Server CA certificate and Client certificate to the *Controller*, proceed to add the details of your external analytics service (see <u>Adding a Public Syslog Server to the</u> Controller).

# Adding a Public Syslog Server to the *Controller*

Before you configure a publicly-reachable syslog server on the Controller, ensure that:

- Your syslog server is publicly-reachable, and that you know the hostname or IP address and port of the service.
- You have already added suitable Server CA and Client certificates.

To configure a syslog server in the Controller:

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nSA* menu, click the Administration icon, then select Enterprise Integration > Syslog Servers.

The Enterprise Integrations page appears.

HOME/ EN	nterprise integratic	ions (i)					
ADD	EDIT	DUPLICATE	DELETE	1 SERVER CO	ONFIGURATIONS		
SE SE	ERVER NAME 1	HOSTNAME/I	IP 个	PROTOCOL 个	FILTER 个	LOGS 个	LAST UPDATED 1
e:	2e-syslog-server	w0-10-1	017-08uem	TLS	JSON	Access, Admin, Events	2021-03-08 11:23:56

Viewing Enterprise Integration Syslog Servers

3. Click Add.

The Add New Configuration page appears, on the Configuration tab.

4. For **Type**, select *Syslog via Controller*.

						_
HOME/ ENTERPRISE INTEGRATIONS						
Configuration Selected Logs						
Syslog via Controller 🗸 🔅						
Server Name	Choose your option	$\sim$ $\triangle$				
Hostname or IP	PORT 6514	OL 🗸				
Client Certificate						
CLIENT CERTIFICATE Choose your option						
Custom Filters						
2 CUSTOM FILTERS			ADD	EDIT	DELETE	:=
FILTER NAME	START DATE	END DATE	FORMAT 🛧	EXPRESSION		
ISON	Earliest	Latest	{"message_id":"%id%","date			
O WELF	Earliest	Latest	date="%date%" timestamp="%			

Add a new Syslog Server configuration

- 5. Enter data for the following fields:
  - Server Name: An identifying name for this syslog server configuration.
  - Facility: The syslog facility level nSA should use while exporting log data.
  - **Hostname or IP**: The hostname or IP address of the syslog server. This must match the value contained in the *Subject Alternative Name* specified in the Server CA certificate applicable to this configuration.
  - Port: The port on which the syslog server is listening.
  - **Protocol**: *This field is read-only.nZTA* supports only the TLS protocol in this instance.
  - Client Certificate: The client certificate you want to use with this syslog server.

- 6. Specify or create a **Custom Filter** to select the log data sent to the syslog server. Choose from:
  - Use either of the predefined "JSON" or "WELF" filters. These do not place restrictions on the log data and forward all logs to the external syslog server, using the respective data format.
  - Create your own filter, based on log parameter rules you define yourself, see <u>Setting a</u>
     <u>Custom Syslog Filter</u>.



The predefined JSON and WELF filters are fixed and cannot be updated or deleted.

7. Click Next to select the required log files.

The Selected Logs tab appears.

Configuration Selected Logs			
Available Logs 3	Selected Logs 0		
Select All	Select All	圃	
Admin     Access		A	
Events	>		

Select the logs to be exported

8. From the list of *Available Logs*, select the check box adjacent to the desired log and click the arrow to move it to the the *Selected Logs* list.

Repeat this step for each log you want to include. Use the reverse process to remove included logs.

9. To create a syslog server configuration with the current settings, click Save Changes.

Optionally:

• To edit an existing syslog server configuration, select the check box adjacent to the configuration entry and click **Edit**.

- To duplicate an existing syslog server configuration, select the check box adjacent to the configuration entry and click **Duplicate**. This creates a complete copy of the chosen configuration using the same server name appended with "-copy".
- To delete an existing syslog server configuration, select the check box adjacent to the configuration entry and click **Delete**.

# Adding an On-Prem Syslog Server for *nZTA Gateways*

Before you configure an on-prem syslog server for *nZTA Gateways* to *Controller*, make sure you have added a suitable Server CA certificate. To learn more, see <u>Importing a Trusted Server CA Certificate</u>.



Ensure that know the hostname or IP address and port of the service.

To configure an on-prem syslog server for *nZTA Gateways* in the *Controller*.

- 1. Log into the Controller as a Tenant Admin, see Logging in as a Tenant Administrator.
- From the *nSA* menu, click the Administration icon, then select Enterprise Integration > Syslog Servers.

The Enterprise Integrations page appears.

HOME/	enterprise integration	ions (i)						
ADD	EDIT	DUPLICATE	DELETE	1 SERVER CONF	IGURATIONS			:=
	SERVER NAME 1	HOSTNAME/	р ф	PROTOCOL 个	FILTER 个	LOGS 个	LAST UPDATED 1	
	e2e-syslog-server	m0.101	omotives.	TLS	JSON	Access, Admin, Events	2021-03-08 11:23:56	

Viewing Enterprise Integration Syslog Servers

3. Click Add.

The Add New Configuration page appears, on the Configuration tab.

4. For **Type**, select *Syslog from Gateways*.

HOME/ ENTERPRISE INTEGRATIONS						
Configuration Selected Gatew	ays Selected Logs					
Syslog from Gateways						
Server Name	Choose your option	$\sim$ $\triangle$				
Hostname or IP	Source State	ol 🗸 🤇				
Client Certificate						
CLIENT CERTIFICATE Choose your option	. •					
Custom Filters						
2 CUSTOM FILTERS			ADD	EDIT	DELETE	:=
FILTER NAME	START DATE	END DATE	FORMAT 个	EXPRESSION		
<ul> <li>JSON</li> </ul>	Earliest	Latest	{"message_id":"%id%","date			
O WELF	Earliest	Latest	date="%date%" timestamp="%			

Add a new Syslog Server configuration

- 5. Enter data for the following fields:
  - Server Name: An identifying name for this syslog server configuration.
  - Facility: The syslog facility level nSA should use while exporting log data.
  - **Hostname or IP**: The hostname or IP address of the syslog server. This must match the value contained in the *Subject Alternative Name* specified in the Server CA certificate applicable to this configuration.
  - Port: The port on which the syslog server is listening.
  - **Protocol**: the required protocol for communicating with your on-prem syslog server. Both *TCP* and *UDP* are supported.
  - Client Certificate: This field is unavailable.

- 6. Specify or create a **Custom Filter** to select the log data sent to the syslog server. Choose from:
  - Use either of the predefined "JSON" or "WELF" filters. These do not place restrictions on the log data and forward all logs to the external syslog server, using the respective data format.
  - Create your own filter, based on log parameter rules you define yourself, see <u>Setting a</u>
     <u>Custom Syslog Filter</u>.



The predefined JSON and WELF filters are fixed and cannot be updated or deleted.

7. Click **Next** to select the required gateways.

The Selected Gateways tab appears.

	-			
Available Gateways 4	Selec	cted Gateways 0		
Select All		Select All	団	
c esxgw111 c gcp195 kvm195 vsphere01	>	🗥 No Items	<u>^</u>	

Select the gateways

8. From the list of *Available Gateways*, select the checkbox adjacent to the desired Gateway and click the arrow to move it to the the *Selected Logs* list.

Repeat this step for each Gateway you want to include. Use the reverse process to remove included *nZTA Gateways*.

9. Click **Next** to select the required log files.

The Selected Logs tab appears.

Configuration Selected Gateways Se	lected Logs	
Available Logs 3	Selected Logs 0	
Select All	Select All	۵
Admin	*	*
Access		
Events	$\rightarrow$	

Select the logs to be exported

10. From the list of *Available Logs*, select the checkbox adjacent to the desired log and click the arrow to move it to the the *Selected Logs* list.

Repeat this step for each log you want to include. Use the reverse process to remove included logs.

11. To create a syslog server configuration with the current settings, click Save Changes.

Optionally:

- To edit an existing syslog server configuration, select the checkbox adjacent to the configuration entry and click **Edit**.
- To duplicate an existing syslog server configuration, select the checkbox adjacent to the configuration entry and click **Duplicate**. This creates a complete copy of the chosen configuration using the same server name appended with "-copy".
- To delete an existing syslog server configuration, select the checkbox adjacent to the configuration entry and click **Delete**.

### Setting a Custom Syslog Filter

*nSA* enables you to create a custom filter that builds a query to specify the data items exported to your syslog server. You can specify criteria based on matching log data fields, date selection, and log output format.



This procedure assumes you are in the process of creating or editing a syslog server configuration. To learn more, see <u>Adding a Public Syslog Server to the</u> Controller.

To add a custom syslog filter:

1. From the Add New Configuration page, locate the Custom Filters section and click Add.

The Custom Filter dialog appears.

SELECT EXISTING OR CREATE NEW FILTER	~	Start Date	End Date	
Create new Filter	•	<ul> <li>Earliest</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Latest (moving)</li> </ul>	
Filter Name	Default Filter	O CUSTOM START DATE	O CUSTOM END DATE 06/09/2021	
VARIABLES		Expression		
) id	í			
O gatewayld	i			
🔿 gatewayName	í			
<ul> <li>severitycode</li> </ul>	í			
∩ severitv	(i) •			
Operator V	\dd Variable →			
^{FORMAT} Choose your option	$\sim$ $\triangle$	Format String		

Setting a custom syslog filter

- 2. Use Select existing or create new filter to either:
  - Create a new filter from scratch.
  - Select an existing filter as a template. This option pre-populates the Expression and Format String fields with values used in the selected filter, which you can then use to create your new filter.
- 3. Enter a Filter Name.

4. Select a **Start Date** and **End Date** for the log data to be included. Use the default *Earliest* and *Latest* values to include all data, or select custom start and end dates, or a combination.



nZTA stores log data for the previous 30 days.

- (Optional) To use this filter as the default for your Syslog Server configurations, select **Default** Filter.
- (Optional) Select from the list of available log data Variables, select an Operator, and then click Add Variable to add a filter based on the chosen value.

*nSA* populates the **Expression** field with an expression matching your selection. An example *value* is added to the right of the operator, but this can be freely edited to your required value.

VARIABLES			EXPRESSION
<ul> <li>severitycode</li> </ul>		(i)	<pre>id = "ADM20573" localip=192.0.2.0 protocol NOT "http"</pre>
<ul> <li>sessionId</li> </ul>		(i)	
⊖ sourceip		á	
<ul> <li>srcport</li> </ul>		á	
🔘 syslog		(i)	19/
OPERATOR =	~	Add Variable →	
FORMAT		~	FORMAT STRING
			<pre>"message_id":"%id%","date":"%date%","timest amp":"%rawtime%","us_timestamp":"%microTime stamp%","opaque_id":"%opaque_id%","gateway_ id":"%gatewayId%","gateway name":"%gatewayn ame%","unique_id":"%uid%","sev num":"%seve ritycode%","sev_string":"%severity%","sourc ci."."""""""""""""""""""""""""""""""""</pre>

Building a custom syslog filter expression based on the log fields: message ID, local IP address, and protocol.



Hover your pointer over the (i) icon to the right of each variable to view a tooltip showing example usage.

- 7. (Optional) Repeat the previous step as required for each log data variable you want to include in the syslog filter.
- 8. Select an output **Format** for the log line. Choose from JSON or WELF. The resultant formatted string is shown in the box provided.
- 9. To save your filter settings, click Save Changes.\

The Add New Configuration screen appears, showing your new filter as selected. Continue to create your syslog server configuration.

### **Frequently Asked Questions**

This section covers frequently asked questions related to ZTA and its configurations.

- "Can a same DNS server be configured for ZTA Gateway and ICS Gateway?" below
- "User is unable to access any resource from ZTA Gateway." below

# Can a same DNS server be configured for ZTA Gateway and ICS Gateway?

No, ZTA Gateway and ICS Gateway cannot coexist on the same DNS server. Configure different DNS server IPs for ZTA Gateway and ICS Gateway.

#### User is unable to access any resource from ZTA Gateway.

- Check you have right Device policies running in client end like AV, OS etc.
- Upgrade process might have blocked the resource access. Wait for the upgrade to complete, and then access the resource.
- Check your account has permissions to access.

# **APPENDIX: Applications Supported by** *nSA*

Cloud/SaaS/On-Premises Applications

Applications
Office 365 with On-Premises AD
Salesforce
Box
G-Suite
Zoom
SAP-Analytics Cloud
Zendesk
WebEx
Slack
JIRA
Confluence
BambooHR
GitHub
PagerDuty
Yammer
Okta